Errata 01 for MIPI M-PHY Specification

Specification Version 4.1

Specification Dated 01 December 2016

Specification MIPI Board Adopted 28 Mar 2017

Errata 01 Dated 14 May 2018

Errata MIPI Board Approved 17 May 2018

* IMPORTANT NOTE TO IMPLEMENTERS *

- The issue(s) listed in this Errata document will be corrected in the next edition of this MIPI Specification.
- Implementations should observe all Corrections listed here.
- The location of each Correction is also marked in the attached copy of the MIPI Specification. To reduce the risk of incorrect implementations, we suggest you consider discarding any previous copies of this MIPI Specification not so marked.
- This MIPI Specification as modified by the corrections listed in this Errata document is also a MIPI Specification, as the MIPI Bylaws defines the term.
- **MIPI member companies' rights and obligations apply to the modified MIPI Specification as defined in the MIPI Membership Agreement and MIPI Bylaws.**

The PHY Working Group would like to ensure a unique understanding of the ADAPT sequence.

Item	Spec Page Number	PDF Page Number	Correction
1	203	221	**Editorial or Technical:** Editorial **Location:** After line 1130 **Correction:** Insert Section F.4 as shown on the following page. **Reason:** Clarifies the definition of the ADAPT sequence. This is not considered a technical change. **Technical Impact:** None.

F.4 ADAPT Sequence

This section provides additional guidance for the ADAPT sequence specified in ***Section 4.7.2.3***. The ADAPT sequence is defined as an 8b10b encoded pattern of MK0, followed by a PRBS9 sequence 511 bits in length, beginning with 9 b1 bits and ending with a single b0 bit. This is shown in ***Figure 79***.

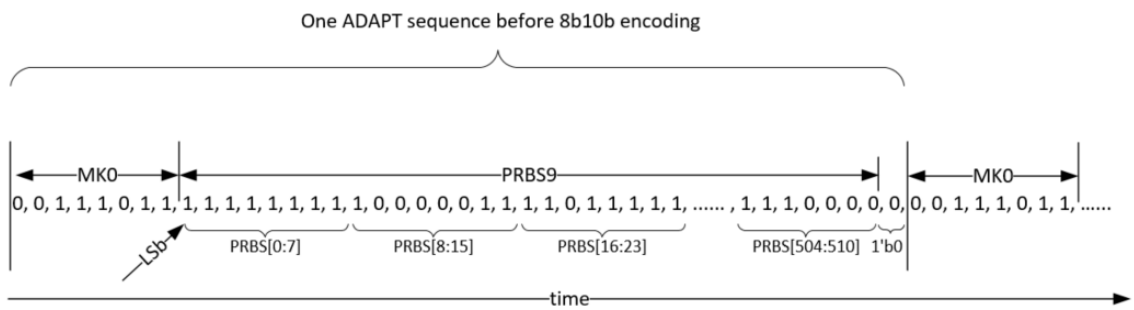


Figure 79 One ADAPT Sequence before 8b10b Encoding

The line coding is defined in ***Section 4.5***, which also specifies that the LSb of an 8b10b encoded symbol is transmitted first. The ADAPT sequence before and after 8b10b encoding is shown in ***Figure 80***, based on the definitions in ***Section 4.5***.

	Data Byte	Encoded symbol	[a,b,c,d,e, i, f,g ,h, j], note „a“ is transmitted first
MK0[7:0]	= 8'hBC	MK0' RD- [9:0]	= [0,0,1,1,1,1,1,0,1,0]
PRBS9[7:0]	= 8'hFF	D31.7' RD+ [9:0]	= [0,1,0,1,0,0,1,1,1,0]
PRBS9[15:8]	= 8'hC1	D1.6' RD- [9:0]	= [1,0,0,0,1,0,0,1,1,0]
....			
PRBS9[503:496]	= 8'hB8	D24.5' RD+ [9:0]	= [0,0,1,1,0,0,1,0,1,0]
{1'b0,PRBS9[510:504]}	= 8'h07	D7.0' RD- [9:0]	= [1,1,1,0,0,0,1,0,1,1]

time

Figure 80 Symbol Encoding within ADAPT Sequence (before Encoding -> Data Byte)

The start and end fragments of the serialized 8b10b encoded ADAPT sequence are shown in ***Figure 81***.

0011111010_0101001110_1000100110_ .... _0011001010_1110001011

time

Figure 81 Start and End of Serialized 8b10b Encoded ADAPT Sequence

This page intentionally left blank.

Specification for M-PHY®

Version 4.1 – 01 December 2016

MIPI Board Adopted 28-Mar-2016

CAUTION TO IMPLEMENTERS

This document is a Specification. MIPI member companies' rights and obligations apply to this Specification as defined in the MIPI Membership Agreement and MIPI Bylaws.

This release represents the fourth in a series of major releases of the Specification for M-PHY, each supporting additional high speed GEARs.

All GEAR names and related parameters are reserved for exclusive use by the PHY WG. Implementers should provide support, such as allowing software to select different GEARs, in their designs.

This page intentionally left blank.

Specification for M-PHY®

Version 4.1

01 December 2016

MIPI Board Adopted 28-Mar-2016

Further technical changes to this document are expected as work continues in the PHY Working Group.

NOTICE OF DISCLAIMER

MIPI Alliance, Inc.
c/o IEEE-ISTO
445 Hoes Lane
Piscataway, NJ 08854
Attn: Board Secretary

Contents

Figures

Tables

Release History

Date	Release	Description
2008-08-29	v0.10.00	Initial release
2010-08-13	v0.80.00	Board approved release.
2011-05-03	v1.00.00	Board-approved release.
2012-07-09	v2.0	Board-approved release.
2013-09-30	v3.0	Board-approved release.
2014-06-17	v3.1	Board-approved release.
2015-08-03	v4.0	Board-approved release.
2017-03-28	v4.1	Board-approved release.

1 Introduction

1 This document describes a serial interface technology with high bandwidth capabilities, which is particularly developed for mobile applications to obtain low pin count combined with very good power efficiency. It is targeted to be suitable for multiple protocols, including UniPro℠ and DigRF℠ v4, and for a wide range of applications.

2 The M-PHY Specification features the following aspects:

3 • BURST mode operation for improved power efficiency

4 • Multiple transmission modes with different bit-signaling and clocking schemes intended for different bandwidth ranges to enable better power efficiency over a huge range of data rates

5 • Multiple transmission speed ranges and rates per BURST mode to further scale bandwidth to application needs, and for mitigation of interference problems. Rates for high-speed mode are fixed, for low-speed modes they are flexible within ranges

6 • Multiple power saving modes, where power consumption can be traded-off against recovery time

7 • Symbol coding (8b10b) for spectral conditioning, clock recovery, and in-band control options for both PHY and Protocol Layer.

8 • Clocking flexibility: designed to be able to operate with independent local reference clocks at each side, but suitable to exploit the benefits of a shared reference clock

9 • Optical friendly: enables low-complexity electro-optical signal conversion and optical data transport inside the interconnect between MODULEs

10 • Distance: optimized for short interconnect (<10 cm) but extendable to a meter with good quality interconnect or even further with optical converters and optical waveguides.

11 • Configurability: differences in supported functionality (to reduce cost) and tune for best performance (implementation) without hampering interoperability

1.1 Scope

12 This document specifies unidirectional LANEs and its individual parts, as building blocks for composition of a dual-simplex LINK by application protocols. An M-PHY implementation allows one or more LANEs in each direction, allows differences in optional funtionality between LANEs, allows different momentary operating modes between LANEs, and allows asymmetry in amount of LANEs and LANE properties for the two directions of the dual-simplex LINK. Protocols applying M-PHY technology may have different LANE constraints, and choose different operation control, or data striping and merging solutions. Therefore, this document provides the features to enable LINK composition, but does not specify how multiple transmitters and receivers are combined into a PHY-unit for a certain LINK composition. Each LANE has its own interface to the Protocol Layer.

13 A MODULE can disclose its capabilities, and contains several configurable parameters in order to allow differentiation on supported functionality and tune for best performance without hampering interoperability. Therefore, protocols need to support some configuration mechanism to determine and define the operational settings. Most flexible is an auto-discovery negotiation protocol to determine the commonly-supported settings of the Physical Layer which are most desirable for running the application. M-PHY supports this, but does not include the configuration protocol itself. Alternatively, the protocol may directly program the required settings if there is predetermined higher system knowledge about which MODULEs are present at both ends of that LINK.

14 The M-PHY specification shall always be used in combination with a higher layer MIPI specification that references this specification. Any other use of the M-PHY specification is strictly prohibited, unless approved in advance by the MIPI Board of Directors.

1.2 Purpose

Mobile devices face increasing bandwidth demands for each of its functions as well as an increase of the number of functions integrated into the system. This requires wide bandwidth, low-pin count (serial) and highly power-efficient (network) interfaces that provides sufficient flexibility to be attractive for multiple applications, but which can also be covered with one physical layer technology. M-PHY is the successor of D-PHY, requiring less pins and providing more bandwidth per pin (pair) with improved power efficiency.

2 Terminology

16 The MIPI Alliance has adopted Section 13.1 of the IEEE Specifications Style Manual, which dictates use of the words “shall”, “should”, “may”, and “can” in the development of documentation, as follows:

> 17 The word *shall* is used to indicate mandatory requirements strictly to be followed in order to conform to the Specification and from which no deviation is permitted (*shall* equals *is required to*).
>
> 18 The use of the word *must* is deprecated and shall not be used when stating mandatory requirements; *must* is used only to describe unavoidable situations.
>
> 19 The use of the word *will* is deprecated and shall not be used when stating mandatory requirements; *will* is only used in statements of fact.
>
> 20 The word *should* is used to indicate that among several possibilities one is recommended as particularly suitable, without mentioning or excluding others; or that a certain course of action is preferred but not necessarily required; or that (in the negative form) a certain course of action is deprecated but not prohibited (*should* equals *is recommended that*).
>
> 21 The word *may* is used to indicate a course of action permissible within the limits of the Specification (*may* equals *is permitted*).
>
> 22 The word *can* is used for statements of possibility and capability, whether material, physical, or causal (*can* equals *is able to*).

23 All sections are normative, unless they are explicitly indicated to be informative.

2.1 Definitions

24 ACTIVATED The combined states within HS-MODE or LS-MODE.

25 BURST Sequence of 8b10b encoded data transmission delimited by and including a HEAD-OF-BURST and TAIL-OF-BURST.

26 COMMA Non-data symbol which can not be found at any bit position within any combination of other valid symbols.

27 CRPAT Compliant Random Pattern, see ***[CTS01]***.

28 CJTPAT Compliant Jitter Tolerance Pattern, see ***[CTS01]***.

29 DIF-N Logical LINE state, driven by the M-TX, corresponding with a negative differential LINE voltage. Voltage levels and signal transition timing specifications for the M-TX as well as detection requirements for the M-RX are defined in ***Section 5***.

30 DIF-P Logical LINE state, driven by the M-TX, corresponding with a positive differential LINE voltage. Voltage levels and signal transition timing specifications for the M-TX as well as detection requirement for the M-RX are defined in ***Section 5***.

31 DIF-Q LINE state when the M-RX can be high-impedance resulting in undriven lines with an undefined LINE state.

32 DIF-X Indication that LINE state can be either DIF-P or DIF-N, but nothing else.

33 DIF-Z Logical LINE state, driven by the M-RX, corresponding with almost zero differential LINE voltage. Voltage levels and signal transition timing specifications for M-TX and M-RX are defined in ***Section 5***.

34 DISABLED MODULE state when the MODULE is powered, but not enabled.

35 FILLER Non-data symbol(s) inserted when no data is provided by the protocol during a BURST.

36 FLAG Control signal that indicates the occurrence of a certain event.

37 FRAME Series of symbols separated by MARKERs.

38 GEAR Speed range (PWM) or fixed RATEs (HS) of communication in LS or HS mode. Each HS GEAR includes two RATEs which differ about 15% for mitigation of EMI.

39 HEAD-OF-BURST Period between exiting STALL state or SLEEP state and the first MARKER0 in a BURST, indicating start of PAYLOAD data.

40 HIBERN8 Deepest low-power state without loss of configuration information.

41 HS-BURST High speed state including PREPARE, SYNC, MARKERs, and data.

42 HS-GEAR GEAR in HS-MODE.

43 HS-MODE High-Speed operation loop consisting of STALL and HS-BURST.

44 LANE A LANE is a unidirectional, point-to-point, differential serial connection, consisting of an M-PHY transmit MODULE (M-TX), an M-PHY receive MODULE (M-RX), and a LINE.

45 LINE Differential point-to-point interconnect between the PINs of M-TX and M-RX. The interconnect may include optical media converters and optical waveguide.

46 LINE-CFG Sub-state machine to exchange configuration parameters with Media Converters

47 LINE-INIT LINE-CFG sub-state before transmission of an LCC.

48 LINE-RESET Reset via the LINE by means of the exceptional signal condition of a long DIF-P.

49 LINK One or more PHY LANEs in each direction plus an additional LANE management layer that provides a bidirectional data transport means, agnostic to the actual LANE composition.

50 LS-BURST Low speed state including PREPARE, MARKERs, and data.

51 LS-MODE Type-I: Combination of SLEEP, PWM-BURST, INIT, and LINE-CFG states.
Type-II: Combination of SLEEP and SYS-BURST states.

52 MARKER Non-data symbol, used for protocol related control purposes.

53 MODE Indicates either HS-MODE or LS-MODE.

54 MODULE Indication for either an M-TX or M-RX.

55 M-PORT Combination of MODULEs at one side of a LINK.

56 PAYLOAD BURST without HOB and TOB. PAYLOAD may consist of multiple FRAMEs.

57 PIN A point of external physical electrical connection for a component. Examples of a “PIN” may include (but are not limited to) a BGA ball, QFP lead, or solder pad.

58 POWERED Any LANE or MODULE state when power supply is available.

59 PREPARE First part of the HOB after exiting STALL or SLEEP up to but not including the SYNC sequence.

60 PWM Bit modulation scheme carrying the data information in the duty-cycle, and explicit clock information in the period.

61 PWM-BURST Transmission of an LS-BURST in pulse-width modulated bit format and using 8b10b coding.

62 RATE Exact speed of communication in a certain mode in kbps, Mbps, or Gbps.

63 SAVE Set of power saving states STALL, SLEEP, HIBERN8, DISABLED, and UNPOWERED.

64 SLEEP Power saving state used between LS-BURSTs.

65 STALL Power saving state between HS-BURSTs with fast recovery time.

66 SUB-LINK All LANEs in the same direction as a fraction of a LINK.

67 SYMBOL-INTERVAL 10-bit period for the transmission of one symbol. SYMBOL-INTERVAL scales with data rate.

68 SYNC An 8b10b symbol sequence with high edge-density intended for fast phase alignment.

69 SYS-BURST Transmission of an LS-BURST synchronous at the SysClk rate. Only possible for shared SysClk applications.

70 TAIL-OF-BURST Run-length violating constant bit sequence used to return a MODULE to a SAVE state, or a LINE-CFG state when applicable.

71 UNIT-INTERVAL Nominal length of one bit.

72 UNPOWERED MODULE state when the power supply is removed.

2.2 Abbreviations

73 e.g. For example (Latin: exempli gratia)

74 i.e. That is (Latin: id est)

2.3 Acronyms

75 b0, b1 Bit with logical value "0" or "1", respectively. The signaling format depends on operating MODE. A prefix indicating the MODE is occasionally used for clarification, e.g. PWM-b0.

76 CFG Configuration

77 EMI Electromagnetic Interference

78 FLR FILLER symbol

79 FSM Finite State Machine

80 HOB HEAD-OF-BURST

81 HS High-Speed

82 LCC LINE Control Command

83 LS Low-Speed

84 LSb Least Significant bit

85 MC Media Converter

86 MC-RX Media Converter Receiver

87 MC-TX Media Converter Transmitter

88 MIB Management Information Base

89 MK# Short indicator for MARKER symbols

90 MSb Most Significant bit

91 M-RX M-PHY electrical Receiver

92 M-TX M-PHY electrical Transmitter

93 NRZ Non-Return-to-Zero

O-RX	Optical Receiver
O-TX	Optical Transmitter
PIF	Protocol InterFace
PWM	Pulse-Width-Modulation
RCT	Re-Configuration Trigger
RD	Running Disparity
RMMI	Reference M-PHY MODULE Interface
SAP	Service Access Point (defining interactions with Protocol Layer)
SECDED	Single Error Correction, Double Error Detection
SI	Symbol Interval
SYS	System-clock Synchronous
TOB	TAIL-OF-BURST
UI	Unit Interval

3 References

107 [IBM01] Widmer, A. X.; Franaszek, P. A., “A DC-Balanced, Partitioned-Block, 8B/ 10B Transmission Code”, *IBM Journal of Research. Development*, VOL. 27, NO. 5, September 1983.

108 [INC01] INCITS/TR-35:2004, *Fibre Channel – Methodologies for Jitter and Signal Quality Specification – MJSQ*, Working Draft, T11.2/ Project 1316-DT/ Rev 14.1, <http://www.t11.org>, InterNational Committee for Information Technology Standards, 5 June 2005.

109 [ITUT01] ITU-T Recommendation O.150, *Specifications of measuring equipment - Equipment for the measurement of digital and analogue/digital parameters - General requirements for instrumentation for performance measurements on digital transmission equipment*, <http://www.itu.int/rec/T-REC-O/en>, International Telecommunication Union, 5 October 1992.

110 [MIPI01] *MIPI Alliance Specification for Device Descriptor Block (DDB)*, version 1.0, MIPI Alliance, Inc., 30 October 2008.

111 [CTS01] *M-PHY Physical Layer Conformance Test Suite*, Version 1.00, MIPI Alliance, Inc., 14 May 2013.

This page intentionally left blank.

4 Architecture and Operation

112 This section specifies the concept, communication principles, signaling schemes, interface structure and operation of M-PHY interfaces.

4.1 PIN, LINE, LANE, SUB-LINK, LINK, and M-PORT

113 A LANE is a unidirectional, single-signal, physical transmission channel used to transport information from point A to point B. A LANE consists of an M-PHY transmit MODULE (M-TX), an M-PHY receive MODULE (M-RX), and a LINE, which is the point-to-point interconnect between the M-TX and M-RX. An M-TX or M-RX has only one differential electrical output or input LINE interface, respectively, which corresponds with two signaling PINs for each MODULE. The PINs are individually denoted as DP and DN, where DP is defined as the positive node of the differential signal. An optional prefix, TX or RX, can be used to indicate the M-TX or M-RX PINs, respectively. Specifications in this document are defined at the PINs of the M-TX and M-RX, and PINs-to-PINs through the LINE. ***Figure 1*** illustrates the relationship between different parts of an M-PHY LINK.

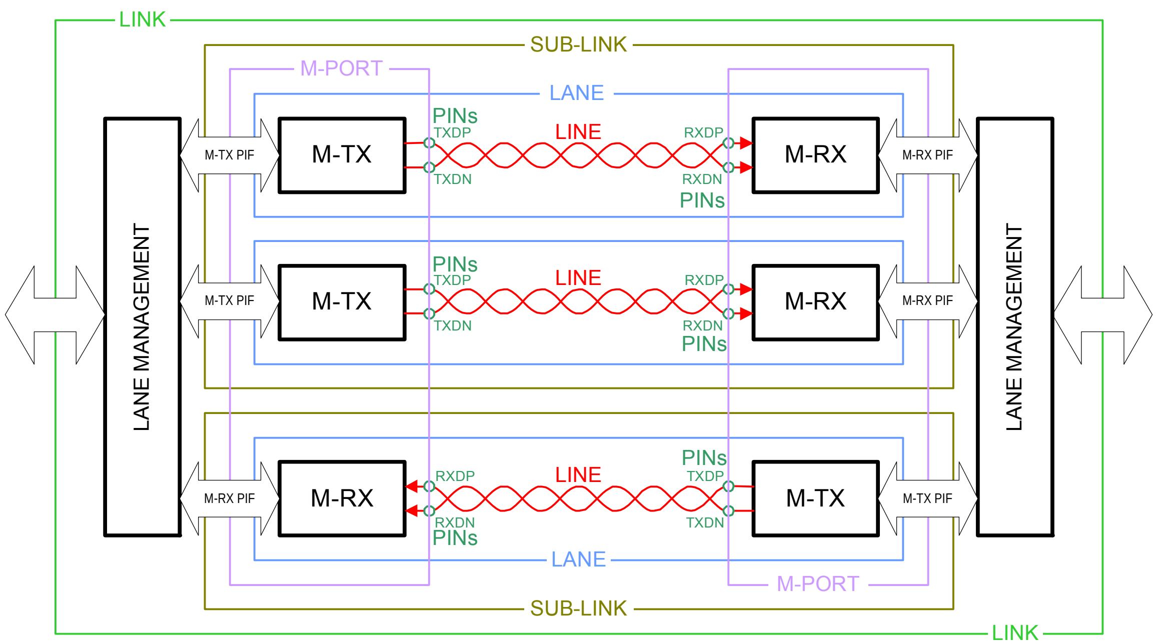


Figure 1 M-PHY Lane Example

114 In the case of a galvanic interconnect, the LINE consists of two differentially-routed wires connecting the LINE interface PINs of the M-TX and M-RX. Typically, these wires are transmission lines. Guidelines for LINE characteristics are described in ***Section 6***. A LINE may contain converters to other transmission media, such as optical fiber. For data transfer purposes, such a LINE might be considered as a black box with end-to-end signal transfer requirements defined at the PINs. Additionally, for advanced configuration functions interaction between MODULEs and Media Converters is supported. ***Figure 2*** shows the setup of a LANE with Media-Converters (MC-TX and MC-RX) in the LINE.

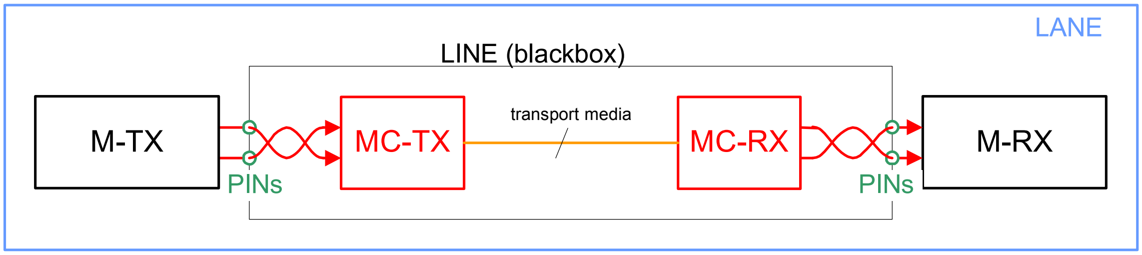


Figure 2 Example LANE Configuration with Media Converter

115 An interface based on M-PHY technology shall contain at least one LANE in each direction. There are no symmetry requirements from an M-PHY perspective for the number of LANEs in each direction.

116 All LANEs in the same direction within a LINK are denoted as a SUB-LINK. Two SUB-LINKs with opposite directions plus additional LANE management, which provides bidirectional data transport functionality agnostic to the actual LANE composition, is called a LINK. A set of M-TXs and M-RXs in a device that compose one interface port is denoted as an M-PORT.

117 This document specifies LANEs and their individual parts including M-TX, M-RX, interconnect, and optionally Media Converters. Furthermore, this specification sets some boundary conditions for M-TX and M-RX inside a single M-PORT, which puts some constraints for the usage of LANEs within SUB-LINKs. This document does not specify the LANE management function in order to allow maximum flexibility of LANE exploitation by protocols. Therefore, the composition of LANEs in the two SUB-LINKs and the specification of LANE management, which completes the LINK, is left to protocols applying M-PHY technology.

4.2 LINE States

118 M-PHY technology exploits only differential signaling. a LINE can show the following states:

119 • A positive differential voltage, driven by the M-TX, which is denoted by LINE state DIF-P

120 • A negative differential voltage, driven by the M-TX, which is denoted by LINE state DIF-N

121 • A weak zero differential voltage, maintained by M-RX, which is denoted by LINE state DIF-Z

122 • An unknown, floating LINE voltage, or no LINE drive, which is denoted by LINE state DIF-Q

123 ***Table 1*** list all possible LINE conditions with the resulting LINE state

Table 1 LINE Conditions and Resulting LINE States

Differential LINE Voltage	M-TX Output Impedance	M-RX Input Impedance	LINE State Set by	LINE State Name
Positive	Low	Any	M-TX	DIF-P
Negative	Low	Any	M-TX	DIF-N
Zero	High	Medium	M-RX	DIF-Z
Unknown or floating	High	High	None	DIF-Q

124 For data transmission, only DIF-P and DIF-N are exploited. DIF-Z can only occur during power-up and power-saving states.

125 The transition point between DIF-Z and DIF-N is defined by the squelch threshold level, which is positioned between the DIF-N and DIF-Z electrical LINE levels (***Section 5.2.5***).The transition point between DIF-P and DIF-N is defined at the zero crossing of the differential signal.

4.2.1 Termination Scheme

126 An M-TX shall terminate both wires in the LINE with a characteristic impedance R_{SE_TX} during any DIF-P or DIF-N state, both differentially as well as common-mode with respect to ground. The M-TX can have a larger resistance during SLEEP and STALL as described in ***Section 5.1.1.3*** as $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$.

127 An M-RX does not always terminate the LINE, but certain options such as HS-MODE require support for terminated operation. Therefore, an M-RX including these options shall include a switchable differential LINE termination.

128 The M-RX termination condition are optionally indicated in the electrical parameter and LINE state name by a subscript RT (Resistively Terminated) or NT (Not Terminated). For example, DIF-P_{RT} is a DIF-P state with receiver termination enabled.

129 ***Figure 3*** shows an example of a LINE termination scheme. The electrical characteristics of LINE states and terminations are specified in ***Section 5***.

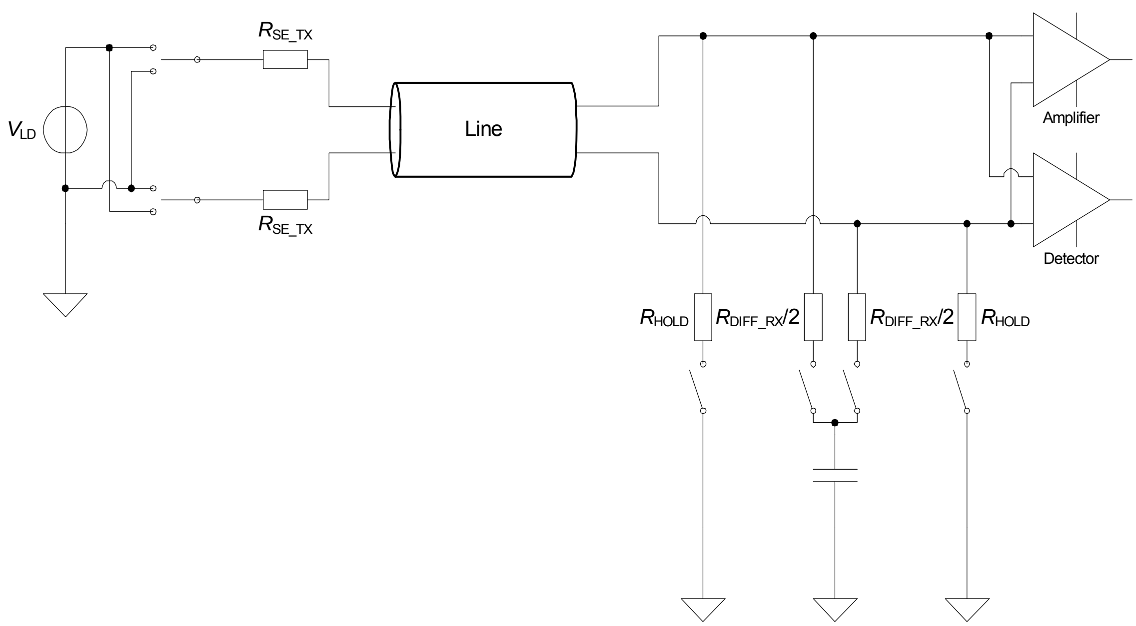


Figure 3 Example I/O Termination

4.2.2 Signal Amplitudes

130 All communication is based on low-swing, DC-coupled, differential signaling. The LINE driver in an M-TX may support two drive strengths, Large Amplitude (LA) and Small Amplitude (SA), resulting in different signal amplitudes. Detailed electrical level specifications are provided in ***Section 5***. Drivers can support either one of these two, or both, amplitudes. If both amplitudes are supported, Large Amplitude shall be the default configuration setting. An M-RX is able to receive both amplitudes if an appropriate interconnect is used according to the guidelines in ***Section 6***. Signal amplitudes are optionally indicated in parameter names by an “LA” or an “SA” subscript.

4.3 Signaling Schemes

131 M-PHY technology exploits two different signaling schemes for transmission of bits, which are conceptually described in the following sections. Detailed parameter value specifications are provided in ***Section 5***.

4.3.1 Non-Return-to-Zero (NRZ)

132 For NRZ, each bit is represented by a period of either DIF-P or DIF-N, corresponding to a binary one or a binary zero, respectively. All bits are directly concatenated and have equal length.

4.3.2 Pulse Width Modulation

133 The Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) scheme has self-clocking properties. Each bit consists of a combination of two sub-phases, a DIF-N followed by a DIF-P. One of the two sub-phases is longer than the other: $T_{PWM\_MAJOR} > T_{PWM\_MINOR}$, depending upon whether a binary one, or binary zero is being sent. The binary information is in the ratio of the duration of the DIF-N and DIF-P states. If the LINE state is DIF-P for the majority of the bit period, the bit is a binary one (PWM-b1). If the LINE state is DIF-N for the majority of the bit period, the bit is a binary zero (PWM-b0).

134 Each bit period contains two edges, where the falling edge is at a fixed position and the rising edge position is modulated. This means that the PWM bit stream explicitly contains a bit clock with period T_{PWM}, which equals the duration of one bit. T_{PWM} may vary from bit to bit during a transmission within the limits specified in ***Section 5***. The bit waveforms for this signaling technique are shown in ***Figure 4***.

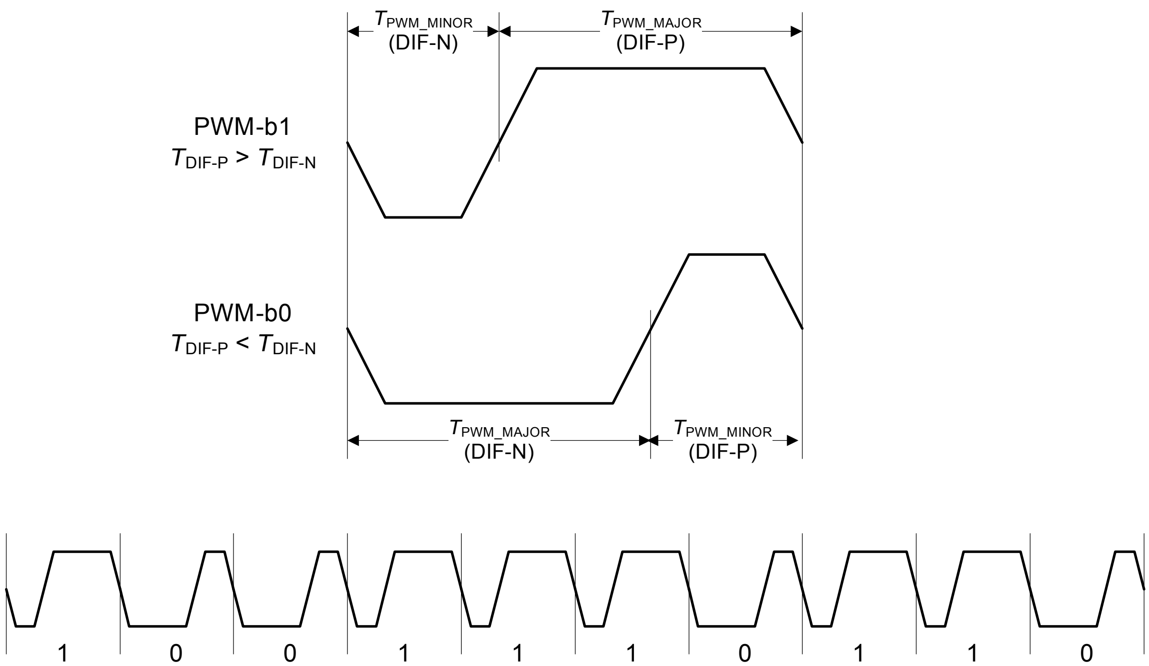


Figure 4 PWM Bit Waveforms and Bit Stream Example

135 M-PHY technology utilizes PWM signaling with FIXED-RATIO and FIXED-MINOR format. For the FIXED-RATIO format, the durations of T_{PWM_MAJOR} and T_{PWM_MINOR} are ideally two-thirds and one-third of the bit period, respectively. For the FIXED-MINOR format, the duration of T_{PWM_MINOR} is specified as an absolute time duration, while T_{PWM_MAJOR} scales with the bit period. The latter format is utilized for very low data rates (PWM-G0).

4.4 Overview of Concept, Features, and Options

136 This document encompasses the full specification of LANEs, including transmitters (M-TX) and receivers (M-RX), and interconnect (LINE), to support the required set of data transmission, power saving, and control states. Furthermore, this document defines some constraints on options and operation between transmitter and receiver MODULEs within a single M-PORT.

137 A MODULE is specified by the characteristics that can be observed on its PINs. Therefore, M-TX and M-RX operation is fully characterized by the sequence of LINE states. All allowed sequences of LINE states are structured into MODULE states and modes, which are specified by means of state machines in subsequent sections. Detailed electrical characteristics of a MODULE are covered in ***Section 5***.

138 Data transfer occurs in BURSTs, which can be either in High-Speed mode (HS-MODE) or Low-Speed mode (LS-MODE).

139 There are two fundamentally different types of MODULEs, denoted as Type-I and Type-II, depending on the signaling scheme used in LS-MODE. A Type-I MODULE employs PWM signaling, while a Type-II MODULE uses system-clock synchronous, NRZ signaling (denoted by “SYS”). This implies differences in the sequence of LINE states and state machines for an M-TX and an M-RX, as well as in the LINE performance constraints. Therefore, PWM and SYS signaling are mutually exclusive, and only one of the two signaling schemes shall be selected for an application. Note that a Type-II MODULE requires a shared reference clock between the two ends of the LINE. A Type-I MODULE shall be able to operate with independent local clock references on each side of the LINK (plesiochronous operation). Although a Type-I MODULE does not require a shared clock reference, it may exploit the benefits of a shared reference clock if available. A LANE with Type-I MODULEs allows for media converters in the LINE. Note that Type-I and Type-II MODULEs are not interoperable. However, implementations may support both types of MODULEs in order to enable hardware reuse.

140 All MODULEs in an M-PORT shall support LS-MODE, utilizing either the PWM or SYS signaling scheme depending on the M-PORT type. For PWM signaling (Type-I), there are multiple GEARs to cover different speed ranges. The default (mandatory) GEAR for Type-I is PWM-G1, ranging from 3 to 9 Mbps. There are six GEARs with incremental 2x higher speed ranges (PWM-G2 to G7), and one GEAR below the default speed range (PWM-G0).

141 MODULE functionality can be optionally expanded with HS-MODE. HS-MODE includes a default GEAR (HS-G1) and three optional GEARs (HS-G2, HS-G3 and HS-G4) at incremental 2x higher rates. Each GEAR includes two data rates for EMI mitigation reasons, e.g. HS-G1 supports 1.25 Gbps and 1.45 Gbps. For the two M-PORT types, HS-MODEs are functionally equal, and very similar regarding signal specifications. However, they might need to operate with different reference clock conditions (shared-clock versus plesiochronous).

142 The HS unit interval is defined as $UI_{HS} = \frac{1}{DR_{HS}}$, where UI_{HS} is the HS unit interval and DR_{HS} is the high speed data rate.

143 Support for an optional GEAR in either HS-MODE or LS-MODE requires support for all GEARs below it, down to the default GEAR of that mode. PWM-G0 is independently optional for a Type-I MODULE.

144 In the default configuration, M-RX shall terminate the LINE in HS-BURST and in all other states shall leave the LINE unterminated. Optionally, HS-BURST may be operated without termination for selected GEARs, while LS-BURST may be operated with termination for selected GEARs. Capabilities and settings for each GEAR are handled by configuration, which is specified in ***Section 4.8***. During power-saving states the M-RX shall leave the LINE unterminated.

145 An M-TX can have two different drive strengths, which implies a large amplitude or a small amplitude on the PINs. An M-TX shall support at least one of the two possible drive strengths. The drive strength setting holds for all operating states simultaneously, so changing it adapts the signaling levels of all LINE states. An M-TX that supports both drive strengths shall use Large Amplitude as the default setting.

146 The different options are depicted in ***Figure 5***, where the selected set of options of every M-TX and M-RX shall map onto a contingent part of the figure. The different types result in two option diagrams (and two state machines) intended for different applications.

147 The functional options like supported modes, GEARs, and I/O settings shall be available for read-out in a capability registry for configuration purposes. In combination with a configuration protocol of a higher level specification, this enables interoperability between M-PORTs of the same type, while allowing operation up

to the highest commonly supported GEAR and the most optimal commonly supported settings. This configuration process is conceptually specified in ***Section 4.8.1***.

148 Besides functional options, there are also a number of programmable parameters. These parameters shall not be mandated or defined at a fixed value by the protocol or application specifications. They are meant only for design and performance optimizations. Examples of this are programmable Slew-Rate-Control for HS-MODE and programmable timer intervals to optimize timing for actual LINE length, Media Converters, and PHY hardware capabilities. The complete list of options and programmable parameters can be found in ***Section 8.4***.

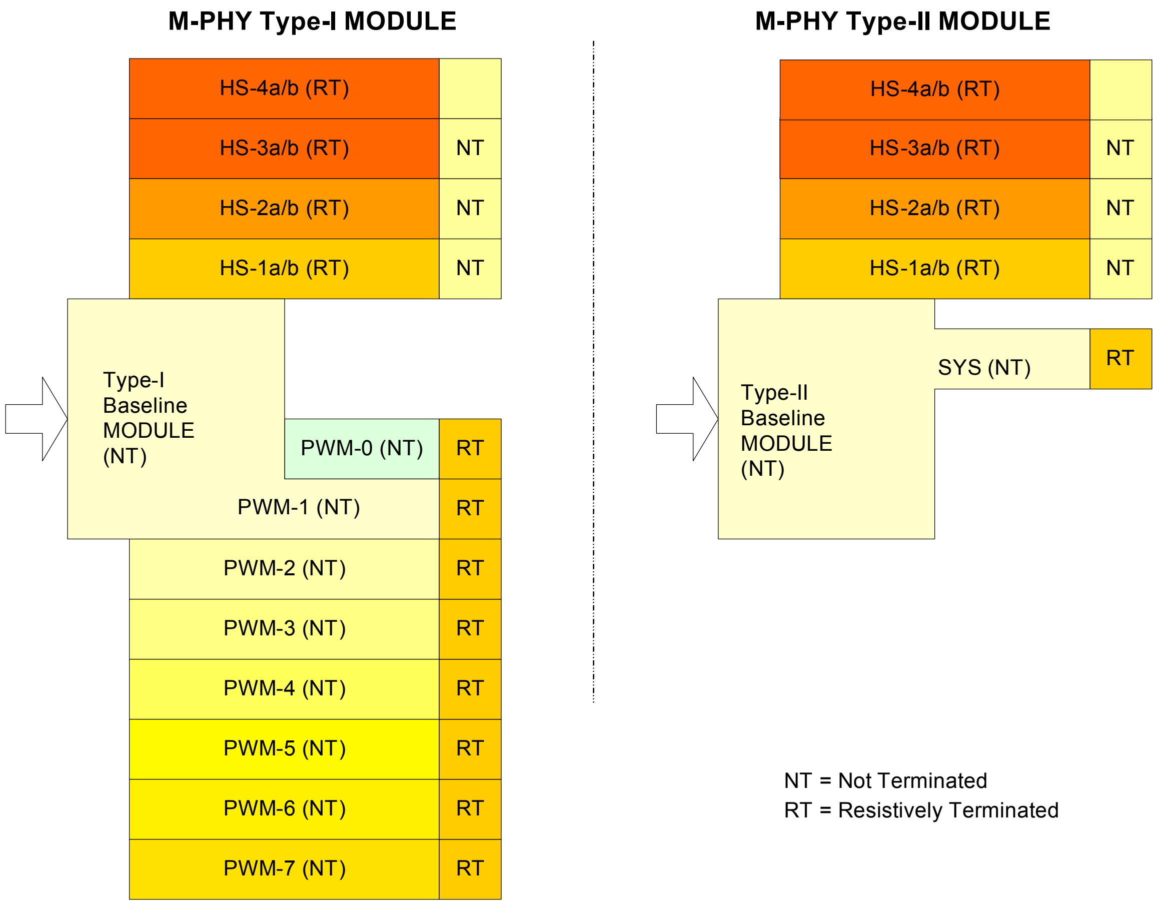


Figure 5 Functional Options for MODULEs in Type-I and Type-II M-PORTs

4.5 Line Coding

149 All information communicated inside BURST states shall be 8b10b encoded ***[IBM01]*** according to the data and control symbols assignments prescribed in this section.

4.5.1 Data Symbols

150 The coding of each byte consist of a 5b6b and a 3b4b sub-block encoding. The bits in a data byte are indicated by the capital letters HGFEDCBA. The five data bits “EDCBA” shall encode into a 6-bit sub-block “abcdei”, according to ***Table 2***. The three data bits “HGF” shall encode into the 4-bit sub-block “fghj”, according to ***Table 3***. For D.x.7 there is a Primary (D.x.P7) and an Alternate (D.x.A7) coding as shown in the table. The Alternate encoding shall be selected if the Primary coding combined with the preceding 5b/6b code results in five or more consecutive zeroes or ones. This implies that D.x.A7 shall only be used for x=17, x=18, and

x=20 when RD=-1 and for x=11, x=13, and x=14 when RD=+1. With x=23, x=27, x=29, and x=30, the Alternate code represents the control symbol K.x.7. Any other x.A7 code cannot be used as it would result in chances for misaligned comma sequences.

151 Several 5b and 3b sub-blocks have two complimentary encoded representations with opposite disparity. The representation with the disparity sign opposite to the running disparity shall be applied for DC balance. For more information on disparity control, see ***Section 4.5.3.1***. For selection of the correct 3b4b sub-block representation, the RD shall be evaluated including the preceding 5b6b sub-block, which is part of the same symbol.

Table 2 5b6b Sub-Block Data Encoding

Input Data		RD = -1	RD = +1	Input Data		RD = -1	RD = +1
Symbol	EDCBA	abcdei		Symbol	EDCBA	abcdei	
D.00	00000	100111	011000	D.16	10000	011011	100100
D.01	00001	011101	100010	D.17	10001	100011	
D.02	00010	101101	010010	D.18	10010	010011	
D.03	00011	110001		D.19	10011	110010	
D.04	00100	110101	001010	D.20	10100	001011	
D.05	00101	101001		D.21	10101	101010	
D.06	00110	011001		D.22	10110	011010	
D.07	00111	111000	000111	D/K.23	10111	111010	000101
D.08	01000	111001	000110	D.24	11000	110011	001100
D.09	01001	100101		D.25	11001	100110	
D.10	01010	010101		D.26	11010	010110	
D.11	01011	110100		D/K.27	11011	110110	001001
D.12	01100	001101		D.28	11100	001110	
D.13	01101	101100		K.28	11100	001111	110000
D.14	01110	011100		D/K.29	11101	101110	010001
D.15	01111	010111	101000	D/K.30	11110	011110	100001
				D.31	11111	101011	010100

Table 3 3b4b Sub-Block Data Encoding

Input		RD = -1	RD = +1	Input		RD = -1	RD = +1
Symbol	HGF	fghj		Symbol	HGF	fghj	
D.x.0	000	1011	0100	K.x.0	000	1011	0100
D.x.1	001	1001		K.x.1[1]	001	0110	1001
D.x.2	010	0101		K.x.2[1]	010	1010	0101
D.x.3	011	1100	0011	K.x.3	011	1100	0011
D.x.4	100	1101	0010	K.x.4	100	1101	0010

Table 3 3b4b Sub-Block Data Encoding (continued)

Input		RD = -1	RD = +1	Input		RD = -1	RD = +1
Symbol	**HGF**	**fghj**		**Symbol**	**HGF**	**fghj**	
D.x.5	101	1010		K.x.5[1]	101	0101	1010
D.x.6	110	0110		K.x.6[1]	110	1001	0110
D.x.P7	111	1110	0001				
D.x.A7	111	0111	1000	K.x.7[1]	111	0111	1000

1. *The alternate encoding for the K.x.y codes with disparity 0 allow for K.28.1, K.28.5, and K.28.7 to be “comma” codes that contain a bit sequence that can't be found elsewhere in the data stream.*

4.5.2 Control Symbols

152 Control symbols are special symbols that do not occur in the data symbol set, that can be used for embedded control features during BURSTs. ***Table 4*** lists all control symbols of the 8b10b code set. M-PHY technology exploits four control symbols, namely K28.1, K28.3, K28.5, and K28.6. Their functions are briefly mentioned in the table. Symbol K28.5 has comma properties, and shall be detected anywhere in the bitstream for symbol alignment. Details on usage of symbols can be found in ***Section 4.7***. An M-PORT shall not use a reserved control symbol.

Table 4 Control Symbols

Input		RD = -1	RD = +1	Name	Function
Symbol	**HGF EDCBA**	**abcdei fghj**	**abcdei fghj**		
K.28.0	000 11100	001111 0100	110000 1011	Reserved	
K.28.1[1]	001 11100	001111 1001	110000 0110	FILLER	NOP
K.28.2	010 11100	001111 0101	110000 1010	Reserved	
K.28.3	011 11100	001111 0011	110000 1100	MARKER1	Protocol Separator
K.28.4	100 11100	001111 0010	110000 1101	Reserved	
K.28.5[1]	101 11100	001111 1010	110000 0101	MARKER0	HEAD-OF-BURST; Start-of-FRAME; Symbol Alignment
K.28.6	110 11100	001111 0110	110000 1001	MARKER2	Protocol Separator
K.28.7[2]	111 11100	001111 1000	110000 0111	Reserved	
K.23.7	111 10111	111010 1000	000101 0111	MARKER3	Defined in protocol specification
K.27.7	111 11011	110110 1000	001001 0111	MARKER4	Defined in protocol specification
K.29.7	111 11101	101110 1000	010001 0111	MARKER5	Defined in protocol specification
K.30.7	111 11110	011110 1000	100001 0111	MARKER6	Defined in protocol specification

1. *Within the control symbols, K.28.1, K.28.5 are comma symbols. Comma symbols are used for synchronization (finding the alignment of the 8b and 10b codes within a bit-stream). K28.7 has also comma properties, but sets constraints on the symbols around it. Because K.28.7 is not used, the unique comma sequences 0011111 or 1100000 cannot be found at any bit position within any combination of normal codes.*
2. *See note **1** for **Table 3**.*

4.5.3 Running Disparity

153 The applied 8b10b transmission coding is a DC-balanced coding scheme. The Running-Disparity (RD) is the disparity between the number of ones and zeroes in the proceeding part of the BURST, where each one is counted as +1 and each zero is counted as -1. RD tracking is necessary for correct encoding in the M-TX and error checking in the M-RX.

4.5.3.1 RD Characteristics and M-TX Coding Rules

154 In the absence of transmission errors, the RD stays within -3 and +3, while it always equals -1 or +1 at any of the 6b and 4b sub-block boundaries. All sub-blocks have a disparity of 0, -2, or +2. Sub-blocks with non-zero disparity have complementary representations with positive and negative disparity. In these cases, the representation with the disparity polarity opposite to the RD shall be used such that RD changes from -1 to +1 or vice versa at sub-block boundaries, and accumulation of disparity cannot occur. The starting value of the RD may be +1 or -1 for any BURST. The M-TX shall follow the RD rules for a BURST, from the first SYNC symbol up to, and including, the last 8b10b symbol preceding TAIL-OF-BURST.

4.5.3.2 M-RX Disparity Handling

155 Although decoding 8b10b does not require RD information, it is useful for error checking purposes. Therefore, the M-RX shall track the RD and flag per symbol to the protocol if an |RD|>1 condition is observed at any sub-block boundary. An erroneous RD shall be clipped immediately to +1 or -1, which in most cases corresponds to the correct value, such that the RD tracking is immediately capable of detecting further RD errors in subsequent symbols (see ***Figure 6***).

156 Normally, bit errors occur during bit synchronization, and the M-RX is not symbol synchronized until the first MARKER0. Therefore, the M-RX shall not report RD errors during the HEAD-OF-BURST to the protocol. The M-RX shall begin a new RD tracking sequence after receipt of a MARKER0 inside a BURST

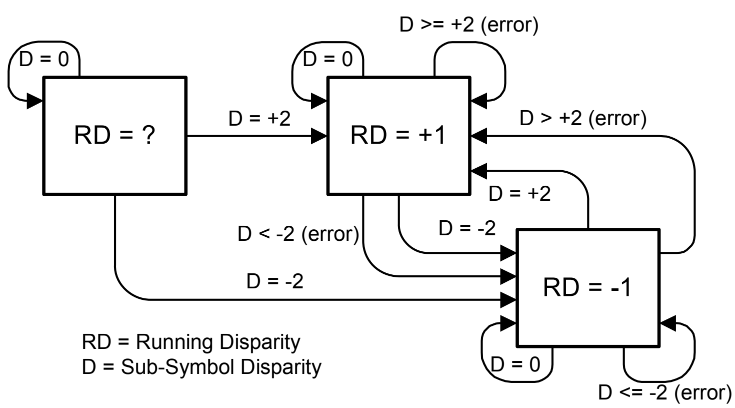


Figure 6 Running Disparity (RD) State Diagram

4.5.4 Bit Order and Binary Value

157 Throughout this document, the chronology for serial binary sequences and timing diagrams is from left (first in time) to right (last in time). Therefore, the notation for 8b10b symbols is “abcdeifghj”, where the “a” bit is transmitted first. When 8b10b encoding is bypassed, the “j” bit is transmitted first.

158 The notation of binary data values is MSb to LSb when reading from left to right. Data bytes are therefore indicated by "HGFEDCBA" where "H" is the MSb and "A" is the LSb. This notation is used for PAYLOAD data bytes as well as for configuration parameter values. When 8b10b encoding is bypassed, LSb of DataValue in M-LANE-SYMBOL.request is transmitted first.

159 Protocol shall enable 8b10b encoding/decoding for normal protocol operation. The protocol may bypass 8b10b encoding/decoding for testing purposes. The behavior of a MODULE whether to include PREPARE, SYNC, TOB, or PIF is implementation specific when 8b10b encoding/decoding is bypassed.

4.6 State Machines

160 The two types of MODULEs result in two alternate state machines intended for different applications with different application boundary conditions. M-PORTs of different type are not interoperable.

161 Both state machines allow for LS-MODE and HS-MODE operation, each including a BURST data transmission and power saving state. Performance scalability can be achieved by use of these modes combined with GEARs within modes.

162 The main differences between the two state machines are the following:

163 • Signaling scheme for LS-BURST (PWM versus SYS)
164 • Support for Media Converters (MC) in the LINE
165 • Assumptions about availability of auxiliary signals (e.g. reference clock, reset)

166 High level commonalities between the two state-machines are the following:

167 • LS-MODE for transmission in the Mbps speed range
168 • HS-MODE for transmission at Gbps rates
169 • Individual power saving states SLEEP and STALL in LS-MODE and HS-MODE, respectively
170 • Ultra-low power state HIBERN8
171 • LINE controlled state switching between BURSTs and its power saving state
172 • Protocol assisted configuration mechanism

173 Despite the high-level commonalities these aspects are not identical for the two MODULE types, and sometimes not even similar, e.g. LS-MODE with PWM (Type-I) versus SYS (Type-II) signaling.

174 The state-machines in a LANE are similar for M-TX and M-RX, however the state transition conditions are different from both perspectives. Therefore, separate state machines are provided for M-TX and M-RX.

4.6.1 State Machine for a Type-I MODULE

175 Specific features of a Type-I MODULE include the following:

176 • PWM self-clocked LS signaling
177 • Operation with independent local reference clocks; might benefit from shared reference clock if available
178 • Fully embedded control within the LANE (additional auxiliary signals are not required)
179 • Support for Media Converters in the LINE

180 State machines for Type-I M-TX and M-RX are shown in ***Figure 7*** and ***Figure 8***, respectively, and explained in the sections that follow.

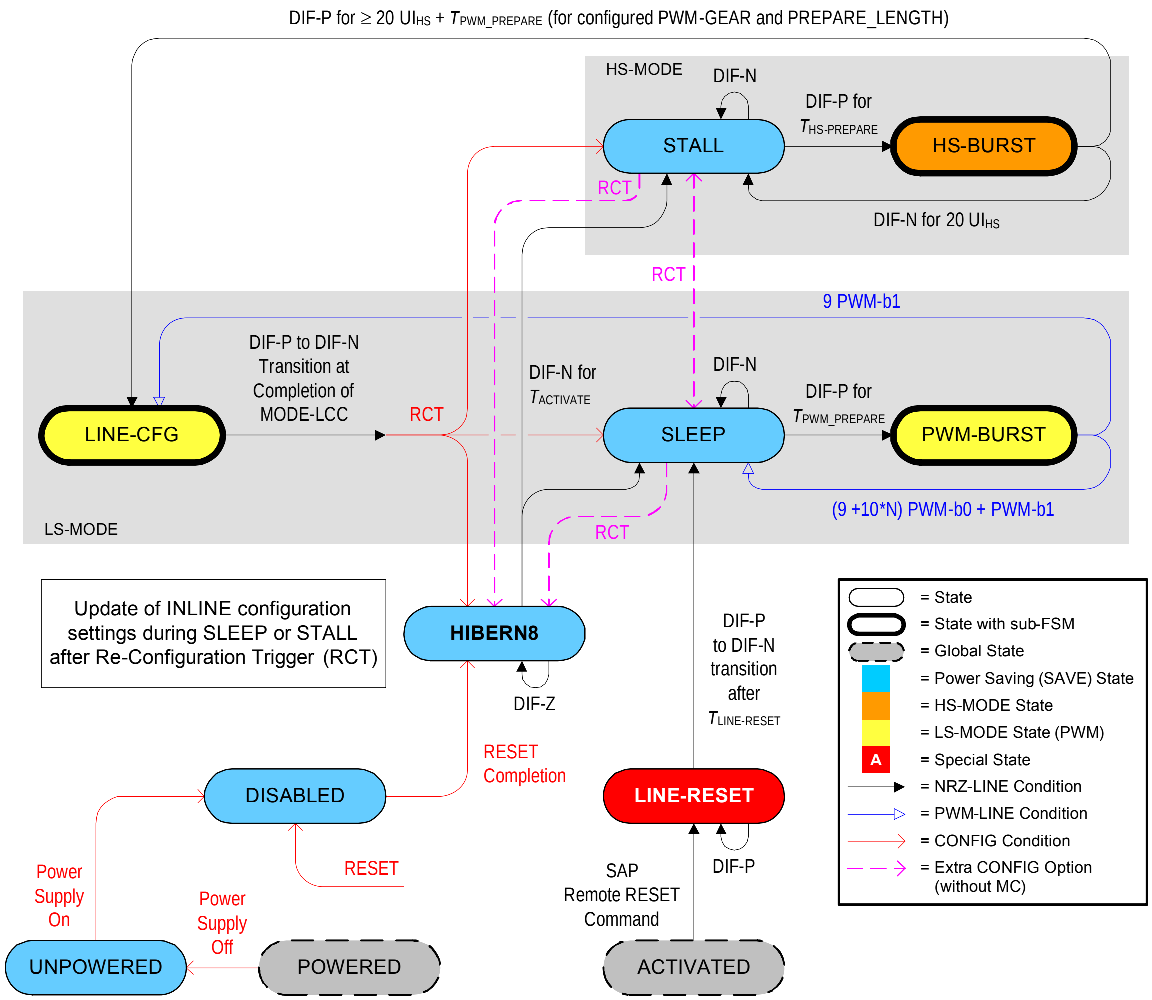


Figure 7 State Diagram for Type-I M-TX

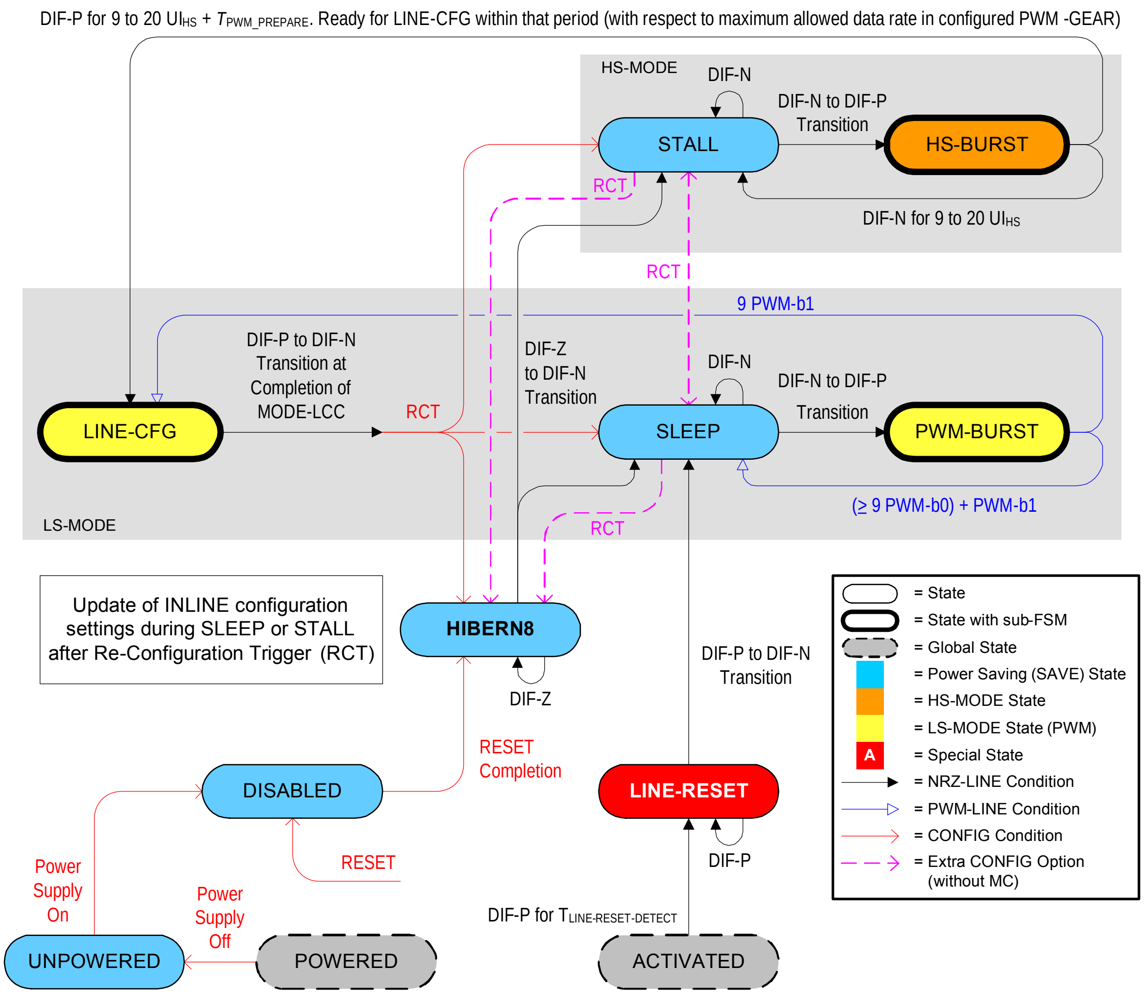


Figure 8 State Diagram for Type-I M-RX

4.6.2 State Machine for a Type-II MODULE

181 Specific features of a Type-II MODULE include the following:

182 • System-Clock-Synchronous LS signaling (SYS)

183 • Requires availability of a shared reference clock

184 • Partially embedded control within the LANE (some state transitions require additional auxiliary control signals)

185 State machines for Type-II M-TX and M-RX are shown in ***Figure 9*** and ***Figure 10***, respectively, and explained in the sections that follow.

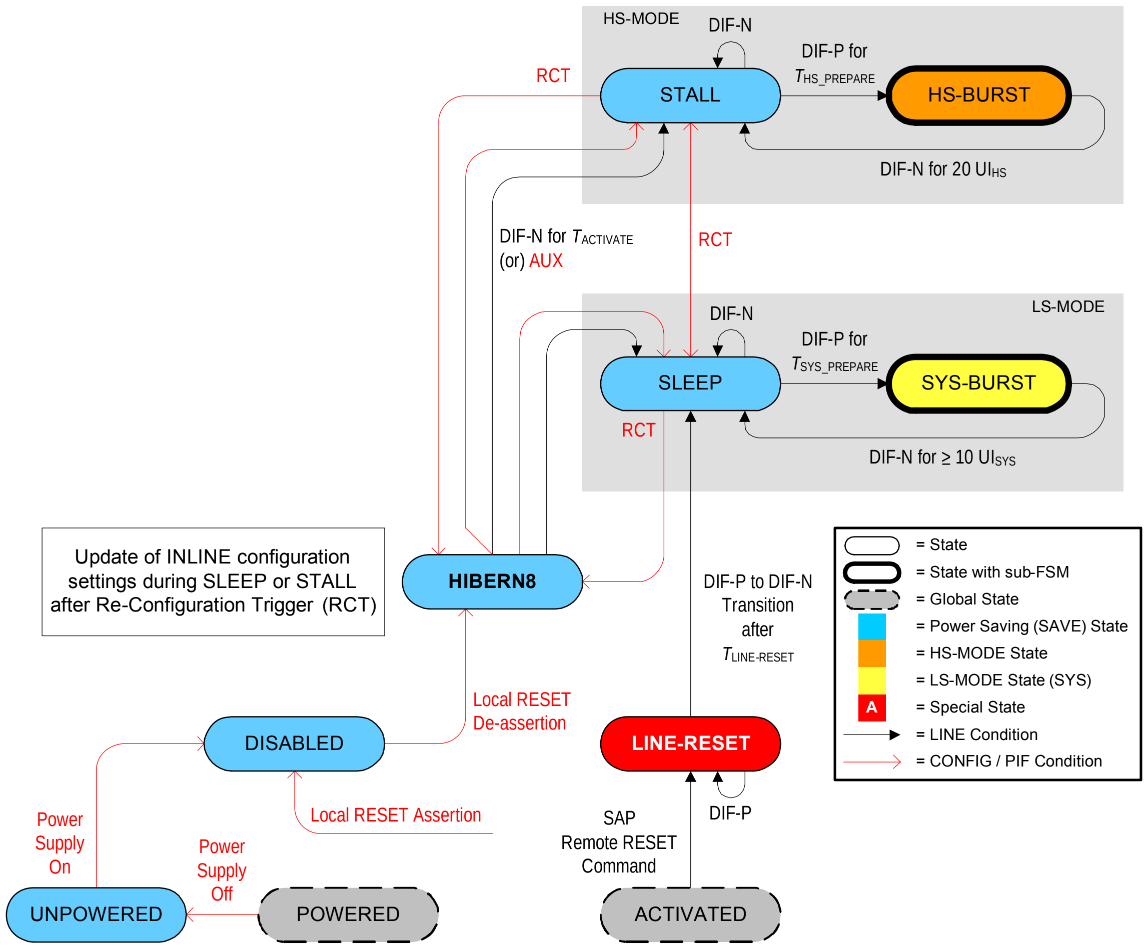


Figure 9 State Diagram for Type-II M-TX

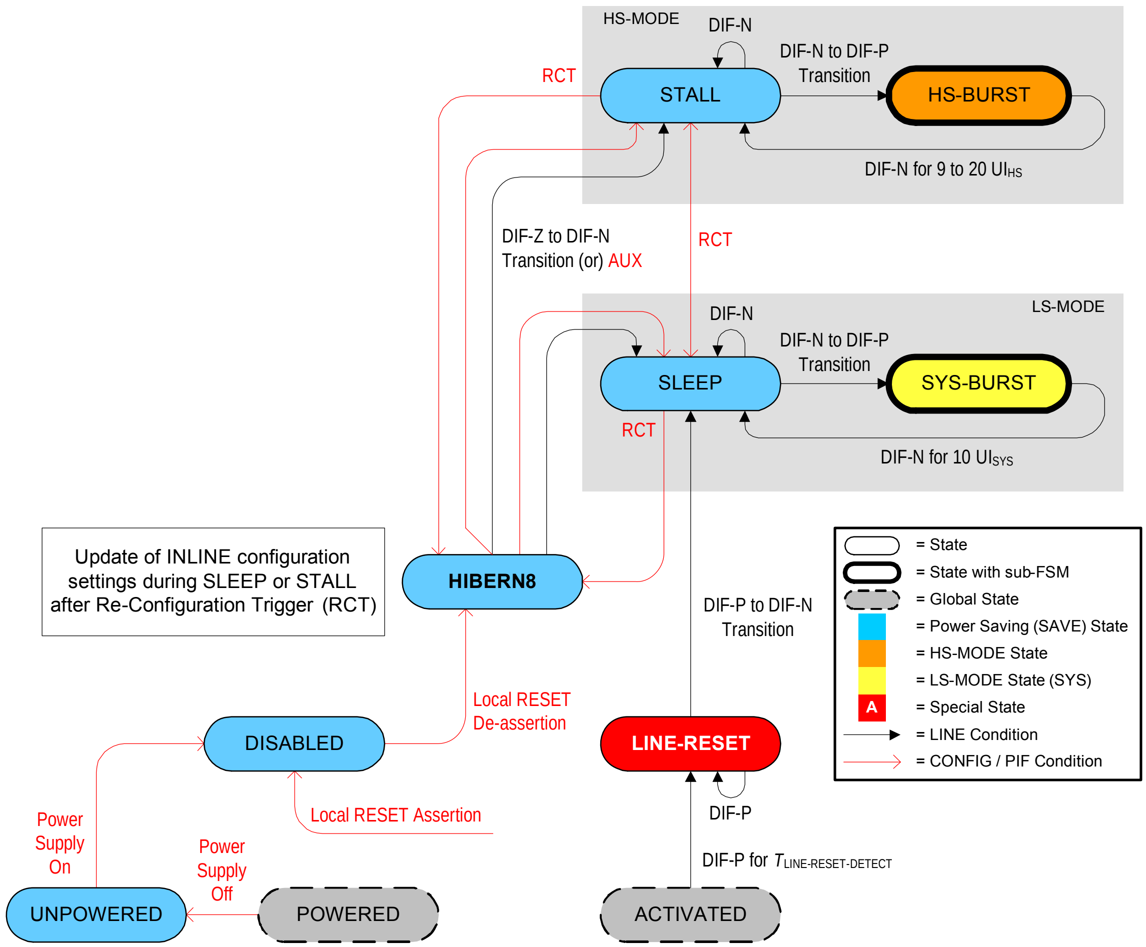


Figure 10 State Diagram for Type-II M-RX

4.6.3 State Machine Structure and State Categories

186 Each state machine encompasses two operating modes, HS-MODE and LS-MODE, that include a data transmission (BURST) state and a MODE-specific power saving (SAVE) state.

187 STALL is the SAVE state of HS-MODE, and SLEEP of LS-MODE. The BURST state of LS-MODE is denoted as PWM-BURST for a Type-I MODULE, and SYS-BURST for a Type-II MODULE, in alignment with the signaling scheme. LINE-CFG is an LS-MODE state for a Type-I MODULE only. Each mode has the following states:

188 • HS-MODE: STALL, HS-BURST

189 • LS-MODE (Type-I MODULE): SLEEP, PWM-BURST, LINE-CFG

190 • LS-MODE (Type-II MODULE): SLEEP, SYS-BURST

191 Therefore, each state machine includes only two BURST states. A MODULE may support LS-MODE only. BURST states for each MODULE type are as follows:

192 • PWM-BURST (Type-I MODULE only)

193 • SYS-BURST (Type-II MODULE only)

194 • HS-BURST (Type-I and Type-II MODULEs, optional)

195 BURST states and LINE-CFG contain sub-FSMs, which are specified in ***Section 4.7.2*** and ***Section 4.7.4.2***, respectively.

196 Each state machine contains five SAVE states with a stationary LINE state. There is a specific SAVE state for each operating MODE, an ultra-low power state (HIBERN8), and two system-controlled power saving states for which the interface is no longer functional.

197 • STALL(HS-MODE)

198 • SLEEP(LS-MODE)

199 • HIBERN8(Ultra-low power state where configuration is retained)

200 • DISABLED(POWERED, but not enabled due to a Power-on Reset, or a local RESET via the Protocol Interface (Type-II MODULE only))

201 • UNPOWERED(No power supply)

202 Furthermore, the following states are special purposes BREAK states:

203 • LINE-RESET(Embedded remote reset via the LINE)

204 • LINE-CFG(Configuration for Media Converters; Type-I MODULE only)

205 Finally, there are some global state names that are not additional unique states, but are aliases for a subset of the states according to common characteristics.

206 The following names are global state names:

207 • POWERED (any state in the state machine, except UNPOWERED)

208 • ACTIVATED (all states within HS-MODE or LS-MODE taken together)

209 An M-RX state transition is triggered by either a LINE or Protocol Interface (PIF) event. A LINE event is either a LINE state transition, LINE state sequence or a bit sequence in the applied signaling format. Some trigger events are also conditional on configuration settings.

4.7 FSM State Descriptions

210 This section specifies the purpose and operation for each of the SAVE, BURST, and BREAK states.

4.7.1 SAVE States

211 This section specifies the five power-saving states, STALL, SLEEP, HIBERN8, DISABLED, and UNPOWERED.

4.7.1.1 STALL

212 STALL is the power saving state in HS-MODE. STALL is mandatory for a MODULE that supports HS-MODE. In this state, the M-RX shall not be terminated, while the M-TX shall drive DIF-N. This ACTIVATED state is intended for power savings without a severe penalty on HS-BURST start-up time, in order to enable fast and efficient BURST cycles. This state is exited to HS-BURST by a LINE transition to DIF-P. Entering STALL can occur from HIBERN8, LINE-CFG, or SLEEP. The latter can only occur with an RCT in the absence of Media Converters. See ***Section 4.7.1.3***, ***Section 4.7.4.2***, and ***Section 4.7.1.2***, respectively. A MODULE shall disclose, via a capability attribute, the minimum time it requires in STALL prior to starting a new BURST. See ***Section 8.4***.

213 The output resistance of the M-TX shall be R_{SE_TX} until the end of the M-RX termination disable time. Afterwards, the M-TX output resistance can be switched from R_{SE_TX} to $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$. Leaving STALL state, the M-TX output resistance shall be R_{SE_TX} before the transition to DIF-P. See ***Section 5.1.1.3***.

4.7.1.2 SLEEP

214 SLEEP is the power saving state of LS-MODE. SLEEP is mandatory for a MODULE. The M-RX shall not be terminated, and the M-TX shall drive DIF-N. This state allows the lowest power consumption of all ACTIVATED states. This state is exited to LS-BURST by a LINE transition to DIF-P. Entering SLEEP can occur from HIBERN8, LINE-CFG, LINE-RESET, or STALL. The latter can only occur with an RCT in the absence of Media Converters. See ***Section 4.7.1.3***, ***Section 4.7.4.2***, ***Section 4.7.4.1***, and ***Section 4.7.1.1***,

respectively. A MODULE shall disclose to the protocol, via a capability attribute, the minimum time it requires in SLEEP prior to starting a new BURST. See ***Section 8.4***.

215 The output resistance of the M-TX shall be R_{SE_TX} until the end of the M-RX termination disable time. Afterwards, the M-TX output resistance can be switched from R_{SE_TX} to $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$ by evaluation of the optional TX_Min_SLEEP_NoConfig_Time or TX_Min_STALL_NoConfig_Time configuration attributes. Leaving SLEEP state, the M-TX output resistance shall be R_{SE_TX} before the transition to DIF-P. See ***Section 5.1.1.3***.

4.7.1.3 HIBERN8

216 HIBERN8 state enables ultra-low power consumption, while maintaining the configuration settings. A MODULE shall support HIBERN8. The M-TX shall be high-impedance in HIBERN8, while the M-RX shall hold the LINE at DIF-Z. Under these conditions, the M-RX is considered to be in squelch. When entering HIBERN8 from LS-MODE or HS-MODE, the Protocol Layer shall not request a MODULE exit HIBERN8 before a minimum period in HIBERN8 of $T_{HIBERN8}$, which is defined as the larger of local TX_Hibern8Time_Capability and remote RX_Hibern8Time_Capability. If the local M-TX supports the Advanced Granularity Capability, then $T_{HIBERN8}$ shall be calculated as described in ***Table 5***. If the remote M-RX supports for the Advanced Granularity Capability and the RX_Advanced_Hibern8Time_Capability is smaller than the RX_Hibern8Time Capability, it shall be used for the calculation of $T_{HIBERN8}$ as shown in ***Table 5***.

217 Upon state transition from SLEEP/STALL to HIBERN8, the LINE state(s) before observing DIF-Z shall not be interpreted as a HIBERN8 exit condition. For each LANE entering HIBERN8 from ACTIVATED, the protocol shall ensure M-RX enters HIBERN8 before M-TX.

218 The local M-TX shall drive DIF-N for a period of $T_{ACTIVATE}$ on exit of HIBERN8 with de-emphasis disabled. The output resistance of the M-TX shall be R_{SE_TX} during this period. $T_{ACTIVATE}$ shall conform to RX_Min_ActivateTime_Capability of the remote M-RX, if the Advanced Granularity Capability is not supported. If the remote M-RX supports for the Advanced Granularity Capability and the RX_Advanced_Min_ActivateTime_Capability is smaller than the RX_Min_ActivateTime_Capability, it shall be used for the calculation of $T_{ACTIVATE}$as shown in ***Table 5***. For embedded HIBERN8 exit control, the M-RX needs to detect a non-squelch state for a LINE transition to DIF-N. A Type-I MODULE shall use embedded HIBERN8 exit control. For a Type-II MODULE, HIBERN8 exit control can be embedded or, alternatively, by use of auxiliary control signals. Note that squelch detection is only utilized in HIBERN8, so this function can be disabled for all other states. A LANE MODULE becomes ACTIVATED on exit of HIBERN8, and shall return to the power saving state of the configured operating mode and be ready for a BURST within $T_{ACTIVATE}$.

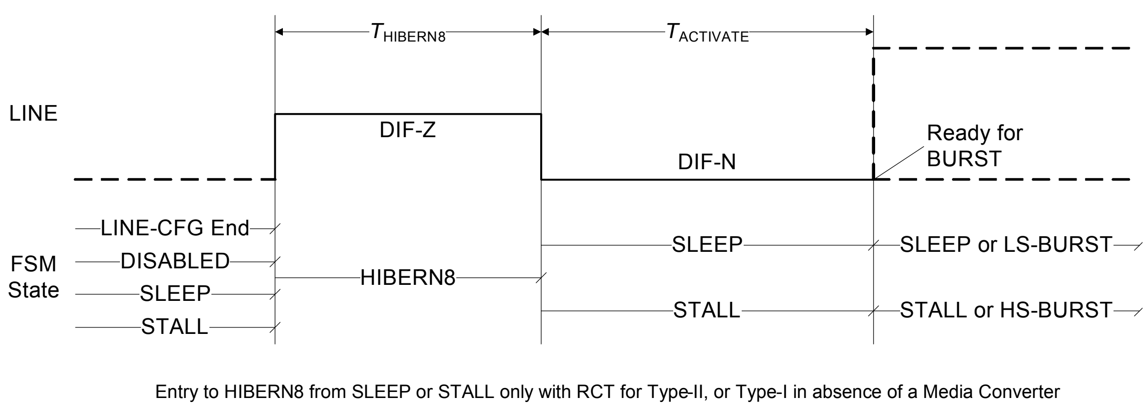


Figure 11 Entry and Exit of HIBERN8

219 Entering HIBERN8 can occur from LINE-CFG, STALL, SLEEP, and DISABLED states. Entry of HIBERN8 from LINE-CFG, STALL or SLEEP state is controlled via configuration (see ***Table 51***). The mechanism is specified in ***Section 4.7.4.2.4***. Note that when requesting HIBERN8 from LINE-CFG, the LINE signal first switches from DIF-P to DIF-N, which ends LINE-CFG and causes a Re-Configuration Trigger (RCT). An RCT is an internally driven event that occurs after the end of LINE-CFG and initiates a transition to HIBERN8 due to a previous configuration within the same BURST causing the LINE signal to switch from DIF-N to DIF-Z. Therefore, HIBERN8 is always entered from a DIF-N LINE state. Entering HIBERN8 from DISABLED does not typically happen simultaneously for the M-TX and the M-RX in a LANE because it depends on independent timings of RESET signals on each side of the LANE. Signals and states before, during, and after HIBERN8 state are illustrated in ***Figure 11***.

220 When entering HIBERN8 is requested by an RCT immediately following a transition from a BURST state to a SAVE state, additional timings apply. After issuing TOB, the M-TX shall drive the LINE with DIF-N for $T_{HIBERN8\_ENTER\_TX}$. The M-RX shall begin driving the LINE to DIF-Z within $T_{HIBERN8\_ENTER\_RX}$ after detection of TOB.

Table 5 $T_{HIBERN8}$ and $T_{ACTIVATE}$ Capabilities and Parameters

Attribute or Parameter	Value	Units
RX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability	4, 8, 16, 32	μs
RX_Advanced_Hibern8Time_Capability	1 to 128	n/a
RX_Advanced_Min_ActivateTime_Capability	1 to 14	n/a
RX_Min_ActivateTime_Capability	1 to 9	100 μs
TX_Advanced_Granularity	1 to 15	n/a
TX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability	4, 8, 16, 32	μs
TX_Advanced_Hibern8Time_Capability	1 to 128	n/a
TX_Min_ActivateTime	1 to 15	100 μs

Table 5 $T_{HIBERN8}$ and $T_{ACTIVATE}$ Capabilities and Parameters

Attribute or Parameter	Value	Units

$T_{ACTIVATE}$	IF (RX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability[0] = 1)
	$T_{ACTIVATE\_RX}$ =
	MIN(RX_Min_ActivateTime_Capability * 100,
	RX_Advanced_Min_ActivateTime_Capability * $2^{(2'b10\ +\ \text{RX\_Advanced\_Granularity\_Capability}[2:1])}$)
	ELSE
	$T_{ACTIVATE\_RX}$ =
	RX_Min_ActivateTime_Capability * 100
	END
	IF (OMC is not present)
	$T_{ACTIVATE} >= T_{ACTIVATE\_RX}$
	ELSE
	$T_{ACTIVATE} >= T_{ACTIVATE\_RX} + 100$
	END
	Set TX_Min_ActivateTime or TX_Advanced_Granularity such that $T_{ACTIVATE}$ condition holds true:
	IF (TX_Advanced_Granularity_Step[0] = 1)
	$T_{ACTIVATE}$ = TX_Advanced_Granularity * $2^{(2'b10\ +\ \text{TX\_Advanced\_Granularity\_Step}[2:1])}$
	ELSE
	$T_{ACTIVATE}$ = TX_Min_ActivateTime * 100
	END
		µs

$T_{HIBERN8}$	IF (RX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability[0] = 1)
	$T_{HIBERN8\_RX}$ =
	MIN(RX_Hibern8Time_Capability * 100,
	RX_Advanced_Hibern8Time_Capability * $2^{(2'b10\ +\ \text{RX\_Advanced\_Granularity\_Capability}[2:1])}$)
	ELSE
	$T_{HIBERN8\_RX}$ = RX_Hibern8Time_Capability * 100
	END
	IF (TX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability[0] = 1)
	$T_{HIBERN8\_TX}$ =
	MIN(TX_Hibern8Time_Capability * 100,
	TX_Advanced_Hibern8Time_Capability * $2^{(2'b10\ +\ \text{TX\_Advanced\_Granularity\_Capability}[2:1])}$)
	ELSE
	$T_{HIBERN8\_TX}$ = TX_Hibern8Time_Capability * 100
	END
	$T_{HIBERN8} >= \text{MAX}(T_{HIBERN8\_RX}, T_{HIBERN8\_TX})$
		µs

4.7.1.4 DISABLED

221 DISABLED is a POWERED state, while MODULE operation is disabled by a RESET signal. When DISABLED, an M-TX shall be high impedance, and an M-RX shall keep the LINE at DIF-Z. All configuration settings shall be reset to default values. LANE operation cannot be (re-)established via LINE signaling. For a Type I state machine, entry into and exit from DISABLED state occurs with RESET, which is typically a Power-on Reset (POR). For a Type II MODULE, entry and exit of DISABLED state are controlled by asserting or de-asserting the local RESET with a POR signal or through the Protocol Interface.

4.7.1.5 UNPOWERED

222 UNPOWERED is the state of a MODULE when the power supply is withdrawn. Both M-TX and M-RX shall be high-impedance while UNPOWERED. During UNPOWERED state the LINE level is undefined, except that the LINE voltages shall not exceed the safe operation voltage window, V_{PIN}. All configuration settings are lost. During powering-up, a MODULE shall exit into DISABLED state on the assertion of a RESET signal. This is typically a Power-on Reset signal.

4.7.1.5.1 Power-Up Cycle

223 When the power supply comes up on a MODULE, the RESET signal shall drive the MODULE into DISABLED. This RESET is typically derived from the system POR. During power-up, until shortly after the assertion of RESET, an M-TX may temporarily expose a lower impedance. However, a Type-I M-TX shall not cause a differential level exceeding the squelch threshold until it drives a DIF-N to signal exit of HIBERN8.

224 The LINE state becomes defined when the M-RX is POWERED and enters DISABLED state. In DISABLED state the M-TX is high-impedance, while the M-RX pulls the LINE state to DIF-Z. A MODULE remains DISABLED while the RESET signal is asserted. When the RESET signal is de-asserted following power-up, the MODULE shall enter HIBERN8.

225 After Power On Reset, the M-TX enters HIBERN8. When the protocol changes the TX_HIBERN8_Control value to “EXIT” and issues a M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request to validate the newly set value of TX_HIBERN8_Control, the M-TX exits HIBERN8.

226 For a Type II MODULE, using a local RESET through the Protocol InterFace, the local RESET shall not be de-asserted before the complementary LANE MODULE at the other side of the LINE has been DISABLED.

227 The procedure for a Type I MODULE to exit from HIBERN8 following power-up is illustrated in ***Figure 12*** and ***Figure 13***. Before starting a data BURST, the M-TX initiating exit from HIBERN8 drives a DIF-N, and continues to drive DIF-N, until an M-RX of the same M-PORT detects DIF-N. Exit of HIBERN8 on the remote side remains a decision of the remote Protocol Layer, but is triggered by detection of HIBERN8 exit on the remote side M-RX. The remote M-RX in the initiating LANE shall not exit HIBERN8 until local RESET is de-asserted, and the M-RX has transitioned from DISABLED to HIBERN8. Note that the minimum $T_{HIBERN8}$ time does not apply for an M-RX following power-up. Detecting DIF-N on the local M-RX indicates that both ends of the LINK are operational, and have exited HIBERN8. Boundary conditions for multi-LANE behavior are provided in ***Section 4.9***.

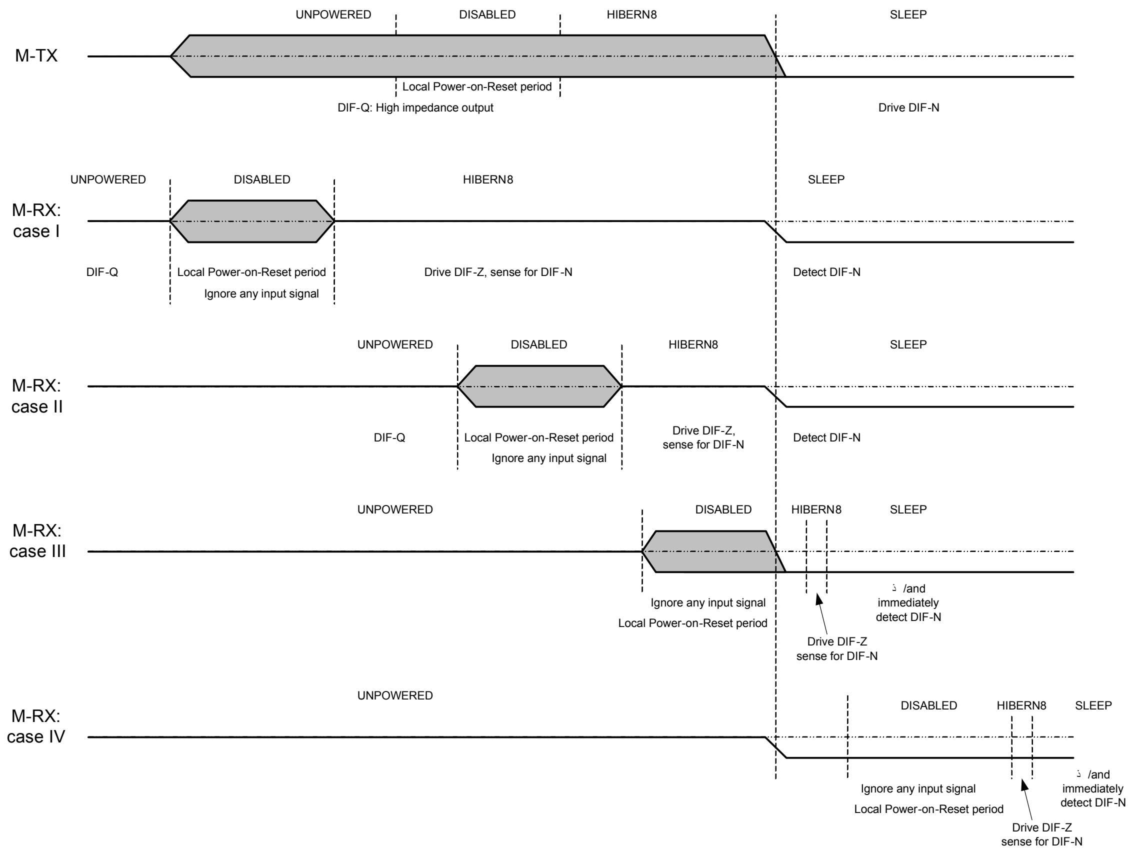


Figure 12 LANE Power-up Cycle

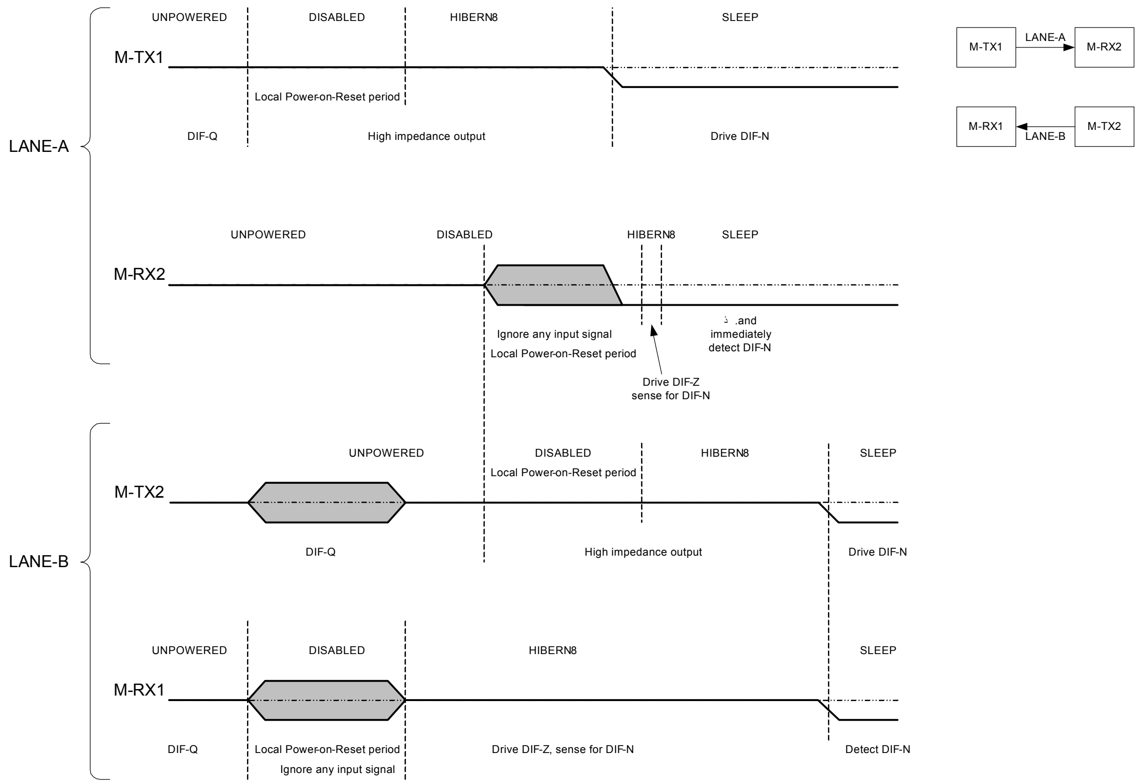


Figure 13 LINK Power-up Cycle

4.7.2 BURST States

228 Data transmission occurs in BURSTs with power saving states between BURSTs. BURSTs can be transferred in HS-MODE or LS-MODE, HS-BURST in HS-MODE, and LS-BURST in LS-MODE. There are two variants of LS-BURSTs depending on the applied signaling scheme, PWM-BURST for a Type-I MODULE, and SYS-BURST for a Type-II MODULE. This section specifies the sequence of events during BURST states.

229 The Min_SAVE_Config_Time_Capability attribute includes all implementation specific timings required to prepare for the reception of the next BURST after configuration during SAVE. Each BURST starts from the SAVE state for that operating mode, with a transition from DIF-N to DIF-P. After a period of DIF-P called PREPARE, a sequence of 8b10b encoded symbols follows as specified in ***Section 4.7.2.1***. After the last 8b10b SYMBOL of the BURST either a series of b0s or a series of b1s (TAIL-OF-BURST) is transmitted. A series of equal bits violate 8b10b code characteristics, and indicates whether the M-RX returns to the SAVE state of the current operating mode or enters LINE-CFG. In the case of PWM signaling, the last bit of the sequence is inverted to indicate the end of LINE activity.

230 Each BURST state contains a sub-state machine that specifies the sequence of events during a BURST, which is shown in ***Figure 14***. There is much similarity between individual BURST states, but there are also distinct differences due to the exploited signaling schemes, which are explained in the following sections.

231 The following sections specify the details of the BURST sub-state machine.

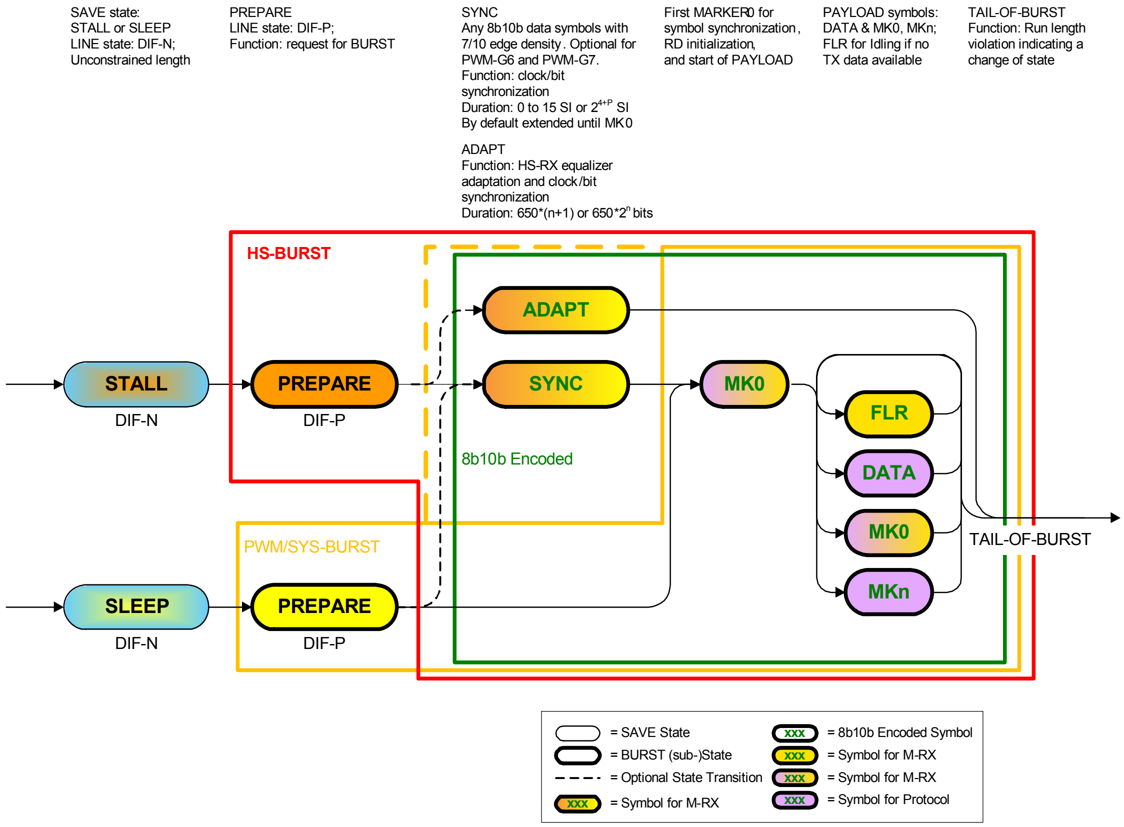


Figure 14 BURST-SAVE: Detailed Sub-FSM

4.7.2.1 PREPARE for BURST

232 PREPARE is the initial sub-state of BURST which allows settling of LINE levels and transceiver settings before the bitstream is started. LINE state during PREPARE is DIF-P. If an M-RX is configured to terminate the LINE during the BURST, the termination shall be enabled during PREPARE. Signal integrity shall be maintained during any change of termination status. At the end of PREPARE, the LINE signals shall be settled. The length of PREPARE is configurable and specified in ***Table 7***. The length of PREPARE in the local M-TX shall be greater than, or equal to the corresponding value of the remote M-RX parameters in the appropriate MODE, i.e., $T_{HS\_PREPARE}$ in HS-MODE, $T_{PWM\_PREPARE}$ in PWM-MODE and $T_{SYS\_PREPARE}$ in SYS-MODE. $T_{PWM\_PREPARE}$ of the local M-TX shall not exceed the minimum value of $T_{LINE\text{-}RESET\text{-}DETECT}$.

233 The PREPARE capabilities of the remote M-RX and the OMC in the LINE are used to configure the PREPARE duration of the local M-TX using the following method:

```
234 IF (OMC is present)
235     M-TX LS_PREPARE_LENGTH >= MAX(RX_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH_capability,
236     MC_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH)
237 ELSE
238     M-TX LS_PREPARE_LENGTH >= RX_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH_capability
```

4.7.2.2 SYNC

239 For HS-MODE, the PREPARE sub-state period shall be followed by a SYNC sequence. For PWM-G6 and PWM-G7 in LS-MODE, the PREPARE sub-state period may be followed by a SYNC sequence. The SYNC sequence is intended for bit synchronization of the M-RX to the embedded clock data stream. The SYNC

sequence shall be a serialized subset of 8b10b data symbols with a high edge density for fast synchronization. Therefore, only symbols with at least seven transitions inside the symbol (out of nine possible transitions) shall be used for the SYNC sequence. Data symbols fulfilling this condition are listed in ***Table 6***.

240 The SYNC sequence shall, by default, be generated by M-TX (TX_SYNC_Source = INTERNAL_SYNC), but can be optionally configured to be provided by the protocol (TX_SYNC_Source = EXTERNAL_SYNC). The default SYNC sequence shall be an alternating D10.5 and D26.5 pattern that may start with either of the two symbols. A SYNC pattern provided by the protocol shall only contain data symbols listed in ***Table 6***. The SYNC sequence may start with RD of +1 or -1. However, for DC-balance, the SYNC sequence shall be encoded according to Running Disparity rules.

Table 6 Valid Data Symbols for SYNC Sequence

Symbol Name	HGFEDCBA	RD = +1	RD = -1	Number of Transitions
		abcdeifghj	abcdeifghj	
D10.2	01001010	0101010101	0101010101	9
D21.5	10110101	1010101010	1010101010	9
D2.2	01000010	0100100101	1011010101	8
D4.2	01000100	0010100101	1101010101	8
D21.0	00010101	1010100100	1010101011	8
D21.4	10010101	1010100010	1010101101	8
D31.2	01011111	0101000101	1010110101	8
D5.2	01000101	1010010101	1010010101	8
D9.2	01001001	1001010101	1001010101	8
D10.5	10101010	0101011010	0101011010	8
D10.6	11001010	0101010110	0101010110	8
D21.1	00110101	1010101001	1010101001	8
D21.2	01010101	1010100101	1010100101	8
D22.5	10110110	0110101010	0110101010	8
D26.5	10111010	0101101010	0101101010	8
D1.2	01000001	1000100101	0111010101	7
D2.5	10100010	0100101010	1011011010	7
D2.6	11000010	0100100110	1011010110	7
D4.5	10100100	0010101010	1101011010	7
D4.6	11000100	0010100110	1101010110	7
D10.0	00001010	0101010100	0101011011	7
D10.4	10001010	0101010010	0101011101	7
D15.2	01001111	1010000101	0101110101	7
D16.2	01010000	1001000101	0110110101	7
D21.7	11110101	1010100001	1010101110	7
D22.0	00010110	0110100100	0110101011	7

Table 6 Valid Data Symbols for SYNC Sequence (continued)

Symbol Name	HGFEDCBA	RD = +1 abcdeifghj	RD = -1 abcdeifghj	Number of Transitions
D22.4	10010110	0110100010	0110101101	7
D23.5	10110111	0001011010	1110101010	7
D26.0	00011010	0101100100	0101101011	7
D26.4	10011010	0101100010	0101101101	7
D27.5	10111011	0010011010	1101101010	7
D29.5	10111101	0100011010	1011101010	7
D31.5	10111111	0101001010	1010111010	7
D31.6	11011111	0101000110	1010110110	7
D2.0	00000010	0100101011	1011010100	7
D2.4	10000010	0100101101	1011010010	7
D4.0	00000100	0010101011	1101010100	7
D4.4	10000100	0010101101	1101010010	7
D5.5	10100101	1010011010	1010011010	7
D5.6	11000101	1010010110	1010010110	7
D6.2	01000110	0110010101	0110010101	7
D9.5	10101001	1001011010	1001011010	7
D9.6	11001001	1001010110	1001010110	7
D10.1	00101010	0101011001	0101011001	7
D11.5	10101011	1101001010	1101001010	7
D12.2	01001100	0011010101	0011010101	7
D13.5	10101101	1011001010	1011001010	7
D18.2	01010010	0100110101	0100110101	7
D19.5	10110011	1100101010	1100101010	7
D20.2	01010100	0010110101	0010110101	7
D21.3	01110101	1010100011	1010101100	7
D21.6	11010101	1010100110	1010100110	7
D22.1	00110110	0110101001	0110101001	7
D22.2	01010110	0110100101	0110100101	7
D25.5	10111001	1001101010	1001101010	7
D26.1	00111010	0101101001	0101101001	7
D26.2	01011010	0101100101	0101100101	7
D31.0	00011111	0101001011	1010110100	7
D31.4	10011111	0101001101	1010110010	7

241 The SYNC sequence has a minimum duration, T_{SYNC}, that is configurable in order to accommodate different application conditions as shown in ***Table 7***.

242 The T_{SYNC} attributes of the remote M-RX and OMC are added to configure the SYNC duration of the local M-TX using the following method:

243 IF (OMC is present)
244 Calculate T_{SYNC} for M-RX (called T_{SYNC_M-RX}) as shown in ***Table 7*** by replacing SYNC_range with
245 M-RX SYNC_range, and SYNC_length with M-RX SYNC_length. Also calculate $T_{MC\_HS\_START\_TIME}$
246 as shown in ***Table 7***.
247 $T_{SYNC\_M-TX} = T_{SYNC\_M-RX} + T_{MC\_HS\_START\_TIME}$
248 IF $T_{SYNC\_M-TX} < 16$
249 M-TX SYNC_range = 0 (Fine)
250 M-TX SYNC_length = T_{SYNC_M-TX}
251 ELSE
252 M-TX SYNC_range = 1 (Coarse)
253 M-TX SYNC_length = CEILING(LOG2(T_{SYNC_M-TX}))
254 END
255 ELSE (If no OMC is present)
256 M-TX SYNC_range = M-RX SYNC_range
257 M-TX SYNC_length = M-RX SYNC_length
258 END

Table 7 PREPARE, SYNC, and ADAPT Attribute and Dependent Parameter Values

Attribute or Parameter	Value	Units
HS_PREPARE_LENGTH	0 to 15	n/a
$T_{HS\_PREPARE}$	HS_PREPARE_LENGTH*$2^{(GEAR – 1)}$	SI
LS_PREPARE_LENGTH	0 to 15	n/a
$T_{PWM\_PREPARE}$	TPWM_PREPARE_calc = MAX($2^{(M-TX\ LS\_PREPARE\_LENGTH + GEAR – 7)}$,1) $T_{PWM\_PREPARE}$ = MIN(TPWM_PREPARE_calc, MIN($T_{LINE-RESET-DETECT}$))	SI
$T_{SYS\_PREPARE}$	LS_PREPARE_LENGTH	SI
SYNC_length	0 to 15	n/a
SYNC_range	0 to 1	n/a

T_{SYNC}	IF (SYNC_range = FINE)
	T_{SYNC} = SYNC_length
	ELSE (IF SYNC_range = COARSE)
	IF(M-RX OR OMC)
	T_{SYNC} = MIN(2^{SYNC_length}, 2^{14})
	ELSE
	T_{SYNC} = 2^{SYNC_length}
	END
	END
		SI

ADAPT_length	0 to 127	n/a
ADAPT_type	0 to 1	n/a

Table 7 PREPARE, SYNC, and ADAPT Attribute and Dependent Parameter Values

Attribute or Parameter	Value	Units
T_{ADAPT}	IF (ADAPT_type = FINE) T_{ADAPT} = 650 * (ADAPT_length + 1) ELSE (IF ADAPT_type = COARSE) $T_{ADAPT} = 650 * 2^{ADAPT\_length}$, where ADAPT_length < 18 END	bit
$T_{MC\_HS\_START\_TIME}$	IF (MC_HS_START_TIME_Range_Capability = FINE) $T_{MC\_HS\_START\_TIME}$ = MC_HS_START_TIME_Var_Capability ELSE (IF MC_HS_START_TIME_Range_Capability = COARSE) $T_{MC\_HS\_START\_TIME} = MIN(2^{MC\_HS\_START\_TIME\_Var\_Capability}, 2^{14})$ END	SI

259 In HS-BURST or PWM-BURST for PWM-G6 and PWM-G7, the SYNC sequence is followed by PAYLOAD that shall start with a MARKER0 (MK0). The Protocol Layer can request transmission of MARKER0 if 8b10b encoding is enabled. If transmission of MARKER0 is not requested before the configured SYNC length expires, and 8b10b encoding is enabled, the SYNC sequence shall be extended until the Protocol Layer requests transmission of MARKER0. SYS-BURST, and PWM-BURST for PWM-G0 through PWM-G5, do not include SYNC.

4.7.2.3 ADAPT

260 If an M-RX supports ADAPT, the PREPARE sub-state may be followed by the ADAPT sub-state for HS-G4. The ADAPT sub-state is intended for the M-RX equalizer training to adapt to the channel characteristic, when receiving an HS data stream. The ADAPT sequence shall start with an MK0 followed by an 8b10b encoded PRBS9 pattern completed by one b0 bit. Adding this bit enables complete encoding of the ADAPT sequence. The PRBS9 pattern is generated in the M-TX by a linear feedback shift register with feedback on the 5th and 9th taps as described by ***[ITUT01]***. The 8b10b encoded ADAPT sequence repeats every 650 bits. The ADAPT sub-state ends with the transmission of a TAIL-OF-BURST, upon which the M-RX and M-TX shall return to the STALL state.

261 The ADAPT sequence has a duration, T_{ADAPT}, that is configurable to accommodate different application conditions, as shown in ***Table 7***. The ADAPT duration of an M-TX T_{ADAPT} is set according to the remote M-RX capabilities RX_HS_ADAPT_INITIAL_Capability and RX_HS_ADAPT_REFRESH_Capability. These capabilities describe the length for an Initial ADAPT after power-up and for a shorter Refresh ADAPT sequence during LINK operation, respectively. An M-RX shall store the equalizer settings in HIBERN8 and during Line Reset. A protocol can initiate ADAPT upon HIBERN8 exit or after Line Reset.

262 An M-RX shall complete its training in the ADAPT sub-state within an ADAPT duration of T_{ADAPT} signalled from the M-TX. An M-RX shall be able to detect the TOB at the end of ADAPT, but shall not interpret any part of the ADAPT sequence as TOB. The protocol shall set T_{ADAPT} of an M-TX to fulfil the remote M-RX requirements. A protocol should be able to set T_{ADAPT} of an M-TX also to larger values. The beginning of the M-TX and remote M-RX ADAPT sub-states can be misaligned. The M-TX and remote M-RX FSMs are aligned at STALL entry through TOB detection.

263 The ADAPT sub-state ends by returning to the STALL state. The remote M-RX can track RD but it shall not propagate errors during ADAPT. MODULEs can use T_{ADAPT} timers to time the end of ADAPT. When exiting the ADAPT sub-state to the STALL state, the TOB may be followed by an RCT[1].

264 ***Figure 15*** shows an example of an ADAPT operation. The duration of T_{ADAPT} is defined to start from the first MK0 up to the beginning of the TOB.

1. *A configuration change affecting the signalling may need to be followed by another ADAPT sequence.*

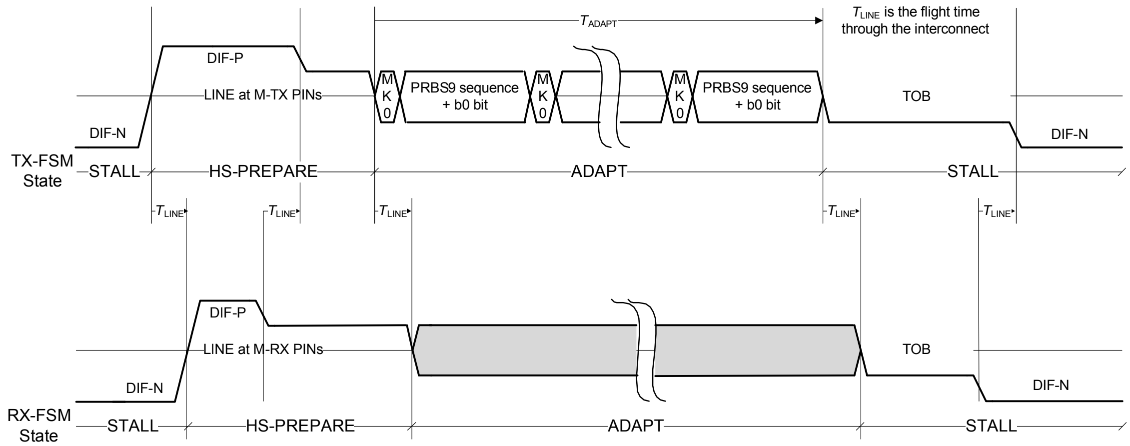


Figure 15 ADAPT Operation

265 During initial discovery, the local protocol requests and reads capabilities of MODULEs on both sides of the LINK. If HS-G4 equalizer capability is detected on both sides, the protocol transfers remote M-RX ADAPT length capability into local M-TX ADAPT length configuration. The local protocol shall configure the following setting for an Initial ADAPT:

266 • TX_HS_ADAPT_Length >= RX_HS_ADAPT_INITIAL_Capability

267 The local protocol shall configure the following setting for a Refresh ADAPT:

268 • TX_HS_ADAPT_Length >= RX_HS_ADAPT_REFRESH_Capability

269 When a HS-G4 BURST is initiated (through MLANE-AdaptStart.request) and ADAPT has been configured (through RX_ADAPT_Control), the M-TX transitions from PREPARE to the ADAPT sub-state instead of SYNC. The M-TX transitions from DIF-P to transmitting the ADAPT sequence. Both M-TX and M-RX remain in the ADAPT sub-state for the equalizer training for a duration of T_{ADAPT}, as configured in the local ADAPT length configuration (see ***Table 7***). The M-RX signals exit from the ADAPT sub-state by flipping the ADAPT_Control field of RX_ADAPT_Control from ADAPT to SYNC and returning to STALL.

270 The M-TX ADAPT length T_{ADAPT} can be calculated according to ***Table 7*** for configured TX_HS_ADAPT_LENGTH.

271 The protocol can initiate subsequent retrainings through an M-LANE-AdaptStart.request service primitive, synchronously staging an RCT at both ends of the LINK, reconfiguring T_{ADAPT} at the M-TX, and writing the ADAPT_control field of RX_ADAPT_Control from SYNC to ADAPT and setting the ADAPT_type field of RX_ADAPT_Control to either INITIAL or REFRESH. During the execution of ADAPT, starting from M-LANE-AdaptStart to M-LANE-AdaptComplete, the protocol shall not issue an M-LANE-PREPARE.request.

4.7.2.4 PAYLOAD of BURST

272 After SYNC or PREPARE period, PAYLOAD shall be transferred on request of the protocol. PAYLOAD starts with a MARKER0 and ends with the symbol before a TAIL-OF-BURST. Between the HEAD and TAIL symbols, any number of DATA0 to DATA255 or MARKER symbols can be transported in any order under protocol control via the PIF.

273 Note that the MARKER0 symbol has comma properties. This shall be utilized in the M-RX, to acquire, check and regain symbol alignment on any occurrence of MARKER0. If during a BURST at any time after the first MARKER0 the protocol does not provide the next symbol request on time, the M-TX will insert FILLER symbols (FLR) in order to prevent failure and corruption of the serial stream. The protocol layer may periodically provide MARKER0 for the purposes of self-healing or re-synchronization. For EMI reasons, protocols are strongly encouraged to limit consecutive repetitions of FILLER or any symbol.

4.7.2.5 Closure of BURST

274 With the transmission of TAIL-OF-BURST, the BURST ends and the M-RX and M-TX shall return to the appropriate SAVE state, or enter LINE-CFG state depending on the polarity of the TOB constant bit sequence; this constant bit sequence violates the 8b10b coding rules. The M-RX shall exit BURST mode on detection of the constant bit sequence.

4.7.2.5.1 Closure and Return to SAVE

275 If the BURST closure condition for exit to SAVE state is transmitted (see ***Table 8***), the M-RX shall become unterminated. The termination shall be disabled and the LINE state settled within the time defined by either RX_Min_STALL_NoConfig_Time_Capability (exit to STALL) or RX_Min_SLEEP_NoConfig_Time_Capability (exit to SLEEP). As shown in ***Table 8***, the number and format of bits differ for different BURST states depending on the signaling scheme. In the table, N is an integer number of symbols represented by TX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Extension of the local M-TX, and shall be greater than, or equal to, the value of RX_PWM_Burst_Closure_Length_Capability of the remote M-RX.

4.7.2.5.2 Closure and Return to LINE-CFG

276 In HS-MODE or LS-MODE, if the BURST closure condition for exit to LINE-CFG is transmitted, both M-RX and M-TX shall return to LINE-CFG state in LS-MODE. As shown in ***Table 8***, the number and format of bits differ for different BURST states depending on the signaling scheme. This state transition does not exist in the Type-II state machine. During exit from BURST to LINE-CFG, DIF-P for greater than or equal to 20 UI_{HS} plus $T_{PWM\_PREPARE}$ (for configured PWM-GEAR and PREPARE_LENGTH) of the local M-TX shall not exceed the minimum value of $T_{LINE\text{-}RESET\text{-}DETECT}$.

277 When the Protocol Layer issues M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request and LCC_Enable is TRUE, M-TX shall pass through LINE-CFG after TAIL-OF-BURST. M-TX shall remain in LINE-INIT state, when exited from PWM-BURST, for a number of SI equal to TX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Extension.

Table 8 Summary of BURST Closure Conditions (TAIL-OF-BURST)

MODE	MODULE	Return to SAVE		Return to LINE-CFG
		LINE Condition	State	LINE Condition
HS	M-TX	DIF-N for 20 UI_{HS}	STALL	DIF-P for ≥ 20 UI_{HS} + $T_{PWM\_PREPARE}$
HS	M-RX	DIF-N for 9 to 20 UI_{HS}	STALL	DIF-P for 9 to 20 UI_{HS} + $T_{PWM\_PREPARE}$
PWM	M-TX	(9 + 10*N) PWM-b0 + PWM-b1	SLEEP	9 PWM-b1
PWM	M-RX	(≥ 9 PWM-b0) + PWM-b1	SLEEP	9 PWM-b1
SYS	M-TX	DIF-N for ≥ 10 UI_{SYS}	SLEEP	n/a
SYS	M-RX	DIF-N for 10 UI_{SYS}	SLEEP	n/a

4.7.2.6 Example of an HS-BURST

278 A time domain illustration of HS-BURST operation is shown in ***Figure 16***. In this example the M-RX is (default) configured to provide LINE termination during HS-BURST, which can be noticed by the signal level changes during PREPARE and (exit-to-)STALL.

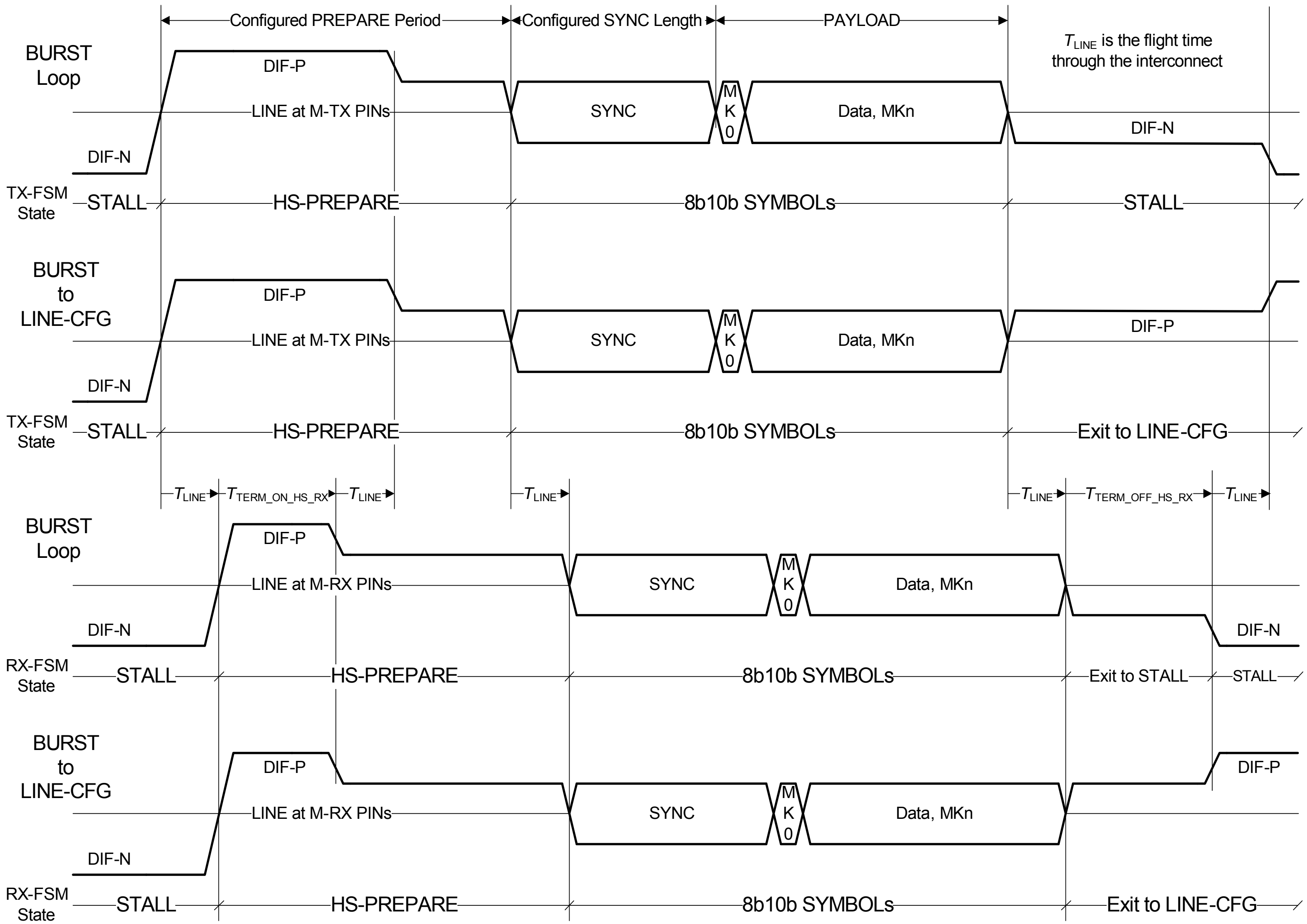


Figure 16 HS-BURST Operation

4.7.3 BURST MODEs and GEARs

4.7.3.1 HS-BURST

279 HS-BURST is the data transmission state of HS-MODE. HS-BURST starts from STALL on a transition to DIF-P. Data shall be 8b10b encoded in this mode and transmitted using NRZ signaling. After the last symbol of the BURST, a MODULE enters STALL state, or in the case of a Type-I MODULE, enters LINE-CFG state, depending on the exit condition on the LINE.

4.7.3.1.1 HS-GEARs

280 A MODULE in HS-BURST shall only operate at the defined data rate, DR_{HS}. There are two RATE series, A and B, where each step in the series scales by a factor of two, while the speed rate difference between the two RATE series is about 15%, as listed in ***Table 9***. If the data rates of the two RATE series are pair-wise coupled for closest rates (~15%), these individual couples are denoted as GEARs. A MODULE that includes HS-MODE shall support both RATEs of a GEAR. A MODULE supporting HS-MODE shall support HS-G1. If a higher GEAR is supported all lower GEARs shall be supported as well.

Table 9 HS-BURST: RATE Series and GEARs

RATE A-series (Mbps)	RATE B-series[1] (Mbps)	High-Speed GEARs
1248	1457.6	HS-G1 (A/B)
2496	2915.2	HS-G2 (A/B)
4992	5830.4	HS-G3 (A/B)
9984	11660.8	HS-G4 (A/B)

1. *The B-series rates shown are not integer multiples of common reference frequencies 19.20 MHz or 26.00 MHz, but are within the tolerance range of 2000 ppm.*

4.7.3.2 PWM-BURST

281 PWM-BURST is the data transmission state of LS-MODE of Type-I LINKs. PWM-BURST starts from SLEEP on the transition to DIF-P. Data shall be 8b10b encoded in this mode and transmitted using PWM signaling. After the last symbol of the BURST, a sequence of same-value PWM bits is added, which creates an 8b10b run-length violation on the LINE. For a sequence of PWM-b0 with a trailing PWM-b1, both M-RX and M-TX shall return to SLEEP state. For a sequence of PWM-b1, both M-RX and M-TX shall go to LINE-CFG state. See ***Table 8*** for more details.

4.7.3.2.1 PWM-GEARs

282 PWM-BURST has multiple GEARs, each with a limited speed range. ***Table 10*** lists all the PWM-GEARs. PWM-G1 is the default GEAR at start-up and after reset. Only PWM-G1 is mandatory. Except for PWM-G0, each GEAR spans a speed range of a factor of three, while subsequent PWM-GEARs scale with factors of two. This allows a continuum of possible rates. If a higher PWM-GEAR is supported all lower GEARs down to default GEAR shall be supported as well. PWM-G0 is optional independently. For PWM-G1 and all higher PWM-GEARs, FIXED-RATIO signaling shall be applied. The FIXED-MINOR signaling format shall be used for PWM-G0.

Table 10 PWM-BURST GEARs

PWM-GEARs	Min. (Mbps)	Max. (Mbps)
PWM-G0	0.01	3
PWM-G1	3	9
PWM-G2	6	18
PWM-G3	12	36
PWM-G4	24	72
PWM-G5	48	144
PWM-G6	96	288
PWM-G7	192	576

4.7.3.3 System-clock Synchronous BURST (SYS-BURST)

283 SYS-BURST is the data transmission state of LS-MODE of Type-II LINKs. SYS-BURST starts from SLEEP on the transition to DIF-P. Data shall be 8b10b encoded in this mode and transmitted using reference-clock synchronous NRZ signaling. After the last symbol of the BURST, the LINE is driven to DIF-N state. The long DIF-N creates an 8b10b run-length violation which ends SYS-BURST and moves both M-RX and M-TX to SLEEP state.

284 In this mode, MODULEs depend on a shared reference clock for transmission. The transmission rate in this mode shall be an integer division of the shared reference clock frequency, f_{SYS_REF}. The reference clock may originate from an independent system clock or from one of the two devices in the LINK. An example of the latter case is shown in ***Figure 17***, where the device providing the clock is located on the left hand side of the figure.

285 This document only partially specifies this mode, as it also relies on the specifications of the reference clock, the timing relationship between the clock pin on the devices and the reference clock input of the MODULEs (PIF), and the timing between reference clock input of the MODULEs and the LINE signals. ***Section 5*** contains an informative guideline for timing between reference clock and LINE signals. The overall timing specifications for this signaling scheme shall be covered by the protocol specification utilizing this mode.

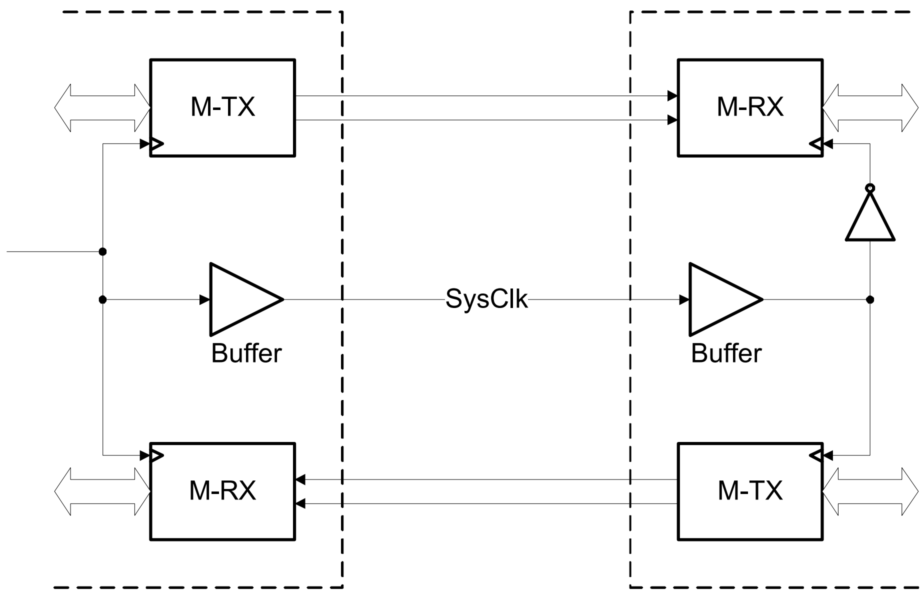


Figure 17 Bidirectional SYS-BURST Clocking Example

4.7.4 BREAK States

286 BREAK states have special functions, which are entered by exceptional LINE sequences that do not occur during normal operating modes.

4.7.4.1 LINE-RESET

287 This is the lowest level reset mechanism in order to reset the M-RX via the LINE during operation in case of malfunction. The LINE-RESET condition is a long DIF-P period, which can never occur during normal operation. LINE-RESET can be initiated by the Protocol Layer on the M-TX side of a LINK using the M-CTRL-LINERESET.request primitive (see ***Section 8.3.9***). A MODULE shall support LINE-RESET in all ACTIVATED states.

288 Before issuing M-CTRL-LINERESET.request with TActivateControl set to "ProtocolControlled", the Protocol Layer issues M-LANE-BurstEnd.request and waits for $T_{ACTIVATE}$ after the M-TX has generated M-LANE-SaveState.indication. This condition ensures the M-TX drives DIF-N for at least $T_{ACTIVATE}$ so that an M-RX, which might be in HIBERN8, is ACTIVATED before the LINE-RESET condition is driven. For LINE-RESET, the M-TX shall drive DIF-P for $T_{LINE\text{-}RESET}$.

289 After the Protocol Layer issues M-CTRL-LINERESET.request with TActivateControl set to "PhyControlled", the M-TX drives DIF-N for $T_{ACTIVATE}$ before driving the LINE-RESET condition. $T_{ACTIVATE}$ is calculated as described in ***Table 5***.

290 An M-RX shall be reset when DIF-P is observed on the LINE for $T_{LINE\text{-}RESET\text{-}DETECT}$. The LINE-RESET timer shall not rely on correct protocol operation. LINE-RESET exits to SLEEP on a transition to DIF-N. LINE-RESET shall reset all configuration settings to their respective default values as specified in ***Section 8.4***.

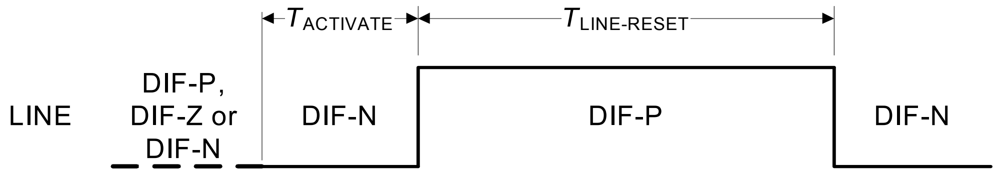


Figure 18 LINE-RESET Timing

Table 11 LINE-RESET and HIBERN8 Timer Values

Parameter	Min.	Max.	Unit	Descriptions and Notes
$T_{LINE\text{-}RESET}$	3.1		ms	A maximum value of 20ms may be set at the option of the protocol. (Informative)
$T_{LINE\text{-}RESET\text{-}DETECT}$	1	3	ms	
$T_{HIBERN8\_ENTER\_TX}$	50	1000	ns	
$T_{HIBERN8\_ENTER\_RX}$		25	ns	
T_{RCT_SAVE}	40		ns	Minimum duration in SAVE states following configuration.

4.7.4.2 LINE-CFG (Type-I MODULE Only)

291 LINE-CFG state enables low-level configuration features. This functionality shall be supported by a MODULE used for a LANE that may contain a Media Converter, as a Media Converter is configured by this mechanism. In the absence of a Media Converter, M-RX and M-TX are not obliged to support LINE-CFG. For backward compatibility with earlier versions of M-PHY, an M-RX not implementing LINE-CFG shall be able to absorb a LINE-CFG sequence, when transmitted by an M-TX, without processing it. Starting from TOB and ending with the last bit of the LCC-MODE, an M-RX shall ignore the LINE states and re-synchronize its state machine upon transition from LINE-CFG to DIF-N. LINE-CFG enables a MODULE to write and read configuration attributes to and from a Media Converter. A Media Converter typically contains only a subset of the physical layer functionality and no protocol stack and therefore cannot be directly accessed by the protocol.

292 The sub-state machines of the LINE-CFG state are shown in ***Figure 19*** and ***Figure 20*** for the M-TX and M-RX, respectively. These state machines consists of LINE Control Commands (LCC) with their corresponding parameter field, interleaved by LINE-INIT states. LINE-INIT state means nine or more b1 bits in a row, generated in case of M-TX or received in case of M-RX. This exception condition does not occur during any other state.

293 The M-TX state machine shall sequence the requested commands in a specified order, starting with WRITE-ATTRIBUTE, followed by READ-MFG-INFO, then READ-VEND-INFO, then READ-CAPABILITY, and ending with MODE. Note that during LINE-CFG sub-states, only commands that are requested shall be transmitted, not requested commands shall be skipped. The requested commands are controlled by protocols via the SAP.

294 The M-RX shall not be sensitive to the order of LCCs, except that the LCC-MODE command is always the last one. However, the M-RX will logically receive commands in the order as specified for the M-TX. M-RX may drive DIF-Z when LCC-MODE is detected. When RCT is triggered, if transition is not to HIBERN8, then M-RX should disable DIF-Z. Detailed specifications of these states are provided in the following sections. TX_LCC_Sequencer (see ***Table 51***) shall automatically be reset after LCC operation.

295 After leaving LINE-CFG, MODULEs and Media Converters conduct an RCT synchronizing their operation. The protocol shall ensure all attributes associated with LINE-CFG are set consistently at the end of the BURST that contains the reconfiguration trigger request. Note that these setting do not become effective for the MODULEs themselves until the RCT arrives. After the RCT request, the protocol shall not change attributes until entering SAVE state, see ***Section 8.2.11.3***. The end of LINE-CFG drives a DIF-N indicating a transition via RCT to the configured SAVE state, see ***Section 4.7.4.2.4***.

296 Application may confirm setting of TX_LCC_Sequencer and TX_LCC_Enable via M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request during BURST or SAVE state. In both cases, these M-TX settings shall become immediately effective upon receipt of M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request and affect the state transitions that follow the next M-LANE-BurstEnd.request after M-CTRL-CFGREADY.confirm. If the application opts to issue M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request during BURST state, it should keep the BURST open until the M-TX has processed effectuation of M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request.

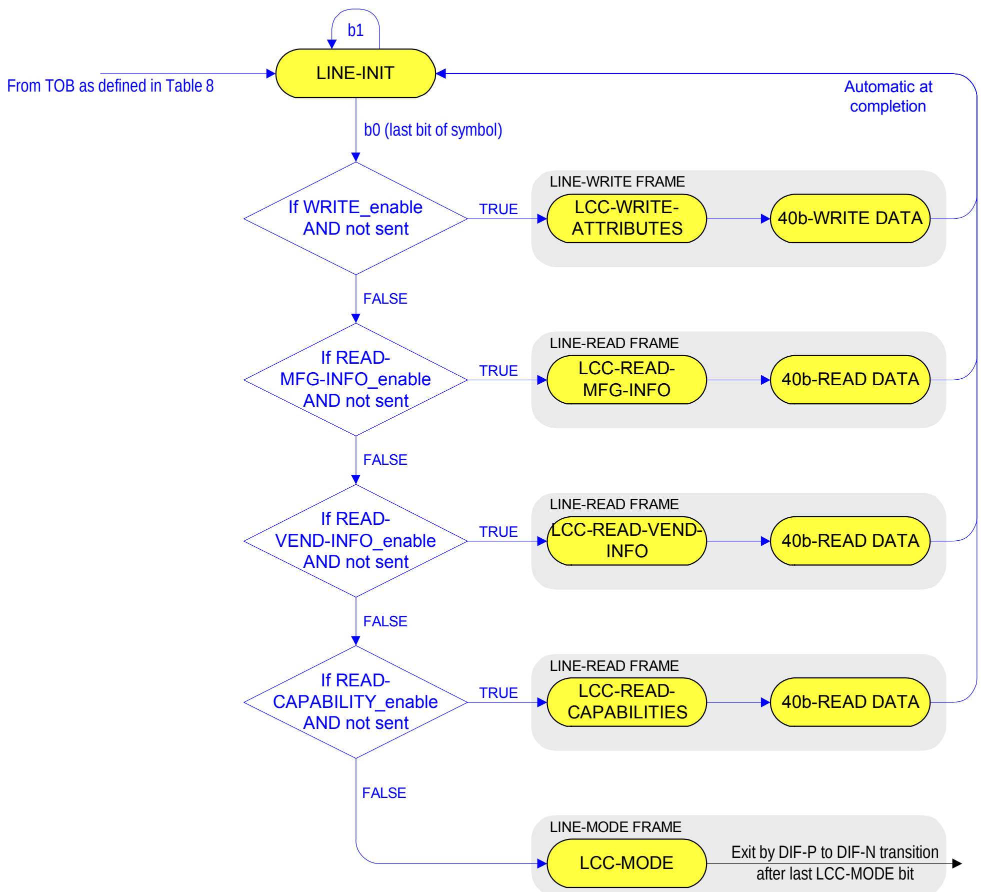


Figure 19 Sub-state Machine of M-TX for LINE-CFG

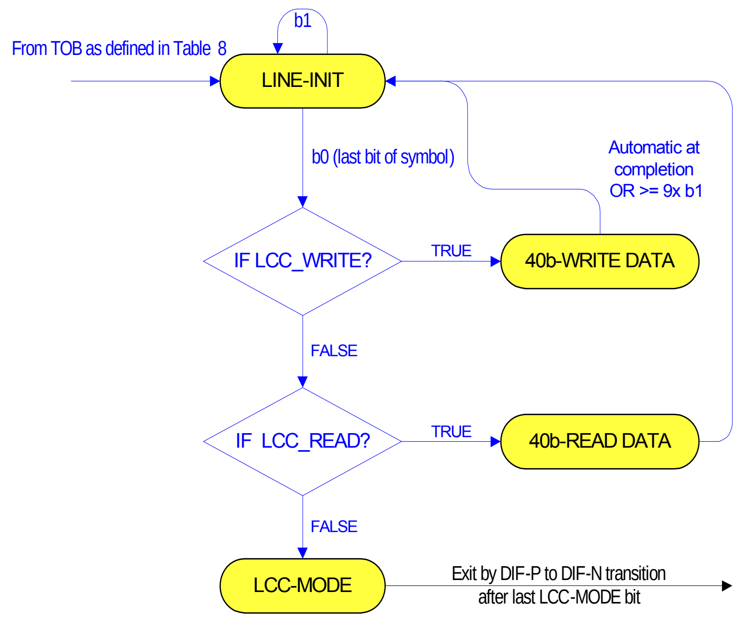


Figure 20 Sub-state Machine of the M-RX for LINE-CFG

4.7.4.2.1 LINE-INIT

297 LINE-CFG is entered in LINE-INIT. This can occur either from HS-BURST or from PWM-BURST if directed by a TOB as defined in ***Table 8***. Both M-RX and M-TX stay in LINE-INIT as long as PWM-b1 are transferred, which, when exited from PWM-BURST, shall be greater than, or equal to, a number of SI equal to the remote M-RX RX_PWM_Burst_Closure_Length_Capability attribute. LINE-INIT ends with a PWM-b0, immediately followed by a 10-bit LINE-Control-Command (LCC) which contains the requested action. LINE-INIT state between two commands shall be exactly ten bits long, consisting of nine b1 bits and one b0 bit. Possible b1 bits belonging to the preceding command shall not be counted, so precisely ten bits are inserted. $T_{\mathrm{PWM\_PREPARE}}$ is always calculated in LS-MODE SI.

4.7.4.2.2 LINE Control Command (LCC)

298 LCCs are 10-bit long and are always preceded by a PWM-b0, being part of, and completing, LINE-INIT. LCCs are not 8b10b encoded. ***Table 12*** lists the functions of the bits in the LCCs, which can be divided into four categories. MODE-LCCs (16; including MISC, PWM-MODE, and HS-MODE), WRITE-LCCs (1), READ-LCCs (3; which are READ-CAPABILITY, READ-MFG-INFO, and READ-VEND-INFO), and RESERVED-LCCs (12) for future usage. MODE-LCCs have no additional data field and are therefore just ten bits long and exit into DIF-N LINE state. The resulting Re-Configuration Trigger will move the state to STALL, SLEEP, or HIBERN8. See ***Section 4.7.4.2.4*** for more details. LCCs shall only be issued starting from LINE-INIT state.

299 LCCs contain five information bits (d[4:0]) which encode the requested action and are transmitted first. The remaining five bits are used to increase robustness. LCCs are protected against bit-errors by a SECDED Hamming code scheme with five parity bits (p1 to p5 = d5 to d9).

Table 12 LCC Definition[1]

d0	d1	LCC-Category	d2	d3	d4	Command	d5	d6	d7	d8	d9
							p1	p2	p3	p4	p5
0	0	MISC	0	0	0	RESERVED	1	1	1	1	1
			0	0	1	RESERVED	0	1	1	0	0
			0	1	0	RESERVED	0	0	0	1	1
			0	1	1	HIBERN8-SLEEP	1	0	0	0	0
			1	0	0	RESERVED	1	0	0	1	0
			1	0	1	RESERVED	0	0	0	0	1
			1	1	0	RESERVED	0	1	1	1	0
			1	1	1	HIBERN8-STALL	1	1	1	0	1
0	1	READ/ WRITE	0	0	0	READ-CAPABILITY	0	1	0	1	0
			0	0	1	RESERVED	1	1	0	0	1
			0	1	0	RESERVED	1	0	1	1	0
			0	1	1	READ-MFG-INFO	0	0	1	0	1
			1	0	0	READ-VEND-INFO	0	0	1	1	1
			1	0	1	WRITE-ATTRIBUTE	1	0	1	0	0
			1	1	0	RESERVED	1	1	0	1	1
			1	1	1	RESERVED	0	1	0	0	0
1	0	PWM-MODE	0	0	0	PWM-G0	0	0	1	1	0
			0	0	1	PWM-G1	1	0	1	0	1
			0	1	0	PWM-G2	1	1	0	1	0
			0	1	1	PWM-G3	0	1	0	0	1
			1	0	0	PWM-G4	0	1	0	1	1
			1	0	1	PWM-G5	1	1	0	0	0
			1	1	0	PWM-G6	1	0	1	1	1
			1	1	1	PWM-G7	0	0	1	0	0
1	1	HS-MODE	0	0	0	HS-G1A	1	0	0	1	1
			0	0	1	HS-G2A	0	0	0	0	0
			0	1	0	HS-G3A	0	1	1	1	1
			0	1	1	HS-G4A	1	1	1	0	0
			1	0	0	HS-G1B	1	1	1	1	0
			1	0	1	HS-G2B	0	1	1	0	1
			1	1	0	HS-G3B	0	0	0	1	0
			1	1	1	HS-G4B	1	0	0	0	1

1. *Columns for LCC data bits in this table are not intended to convey any information on bit-order transmission. Transmission of a 10-bit LCC should always begin with b0.*

4.7.4.2.3 LINE-READ and LINE-WRITE Frames

300 LINE-READ and LINE-WRITE frames contain four byte data fields (thirty-two bits) after the LCC. These four bytes are transmitted in a 4x10-bit format across the LINE. Each 10-bit block contains one byte of information in the center, which is sandwiched between two b0s. The data bits d[7:0] of each byte shall therefore be located in the second bit through the second-to-last bit of each ten bit block as illustrated in ***Figure 21***. The first and last bit of each 10-bit block shall be b0.

301 The transmitted bytes of a LINE-READ frame shall be all b1 (0xFF), while the data of a LINE-READ at the M-RX side contain the information, which is read from the Media Converter. There are two READ commands, READ-MFG-INFO and READ-VEND-INFO, with the same format, enabling more bits to read if necessary. The M-RX shall store the READ bytes as Media Converter attributes in the configuration registry. The WRITE bytes consists of a selection of bits, which are derived from attributes in the M-TX configuration registry.

302 The exact contents and meaning of the WRITE and READ bytes are specified in ***Section 7***.

303 LINE-READ shall be performed only in PWM-G1. The protocol has to ensure that a LINE-CFG containing an LCC-READ is performed in PWM-G1.

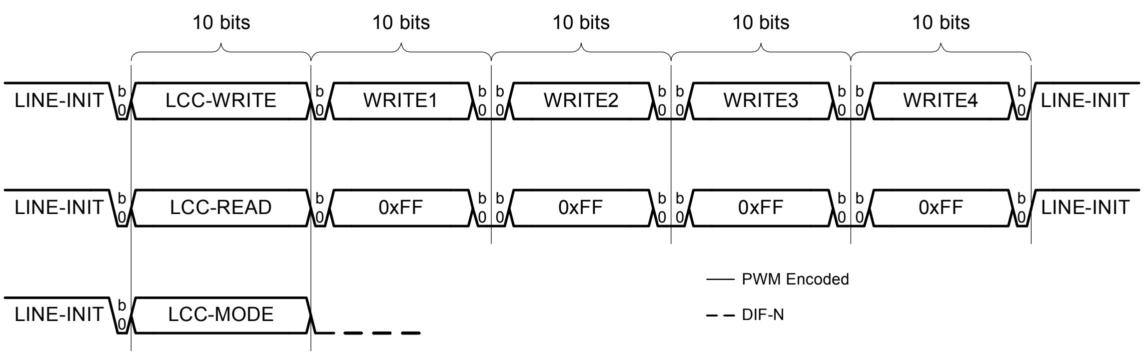


Figure 21 Format of Different LCC Frames on the LINE

4.7.4.2.4 Re-Configuration Trigger (RCT)

304 A re-configuration trigger (RCT) is intended to provide a synchronous event upon which INLINE configuration attributes can be updated, ensuring MODULE attributes on both sides of a LANE remain consistent and interoperable. Both MODULEs and inline Media Convertors shall detect an RCT.

305 The Protocol Layer shall provide sufficient time to the LANE following an RCT to complete re-configuration before requesting a new BURST as defined in ***Section 8.4***.

306 All of the following conditions shall be fulfilled before a Re-Configuration Trigger is executed by a MODULE, or inline Media Converter:

307 • A CFG-READY indication via the Protocol Interface (M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request)

308 • Entering or being in a SAVE state

309 • Completion of LINE-CFG (only for a Type-I MODULE with a Media Converter)

310 As described in ***Section 4.7.4.2***, a Media Converter is configured by the attached MODULE through LINE-CFG, making completion of LINE-CFG necessary in cases where Media Converters are present. Completing LINE-CFG ensures that re-configuration of all MODULEs and inline Media Converters within a LANE remain synchronized.

311 Note that when requesting HIBERN8 from LINE-CFG, the LINE signal first switches from DIF-P to DIF-N, which ends LINE-CFG and causes an RCT. This RCT effectuates the request to go to HIBERN8, which causes the LINE signal to switch from DIF-N to DIF-Z. After the last bit of LINE-CFG, the M-TX shall drive the LINE with DIF-N for $T_{\mathrm{HIBERN8\_ENTER\_TX}}$. The M-RX shall begin driving the LINE to DIF-Z within $T_{\mathrm{HIBERN8\_ENTER\_RX}}$ after detection of the last transition to DIF-N.

4.8 Configuration

312 M-PHY provides significant flexibility advantages over other serial PHYs offering multiple optional MODEs and configurable Attributes. To support this level of flexibility, interoperability is managed in two ways, default parameter settings provide a minimum level of interoperation between MODULEs of the same type, while a robust configuration mechanism supports optimization of the PHY through the protocol for specific use-cases. Central to the configuration process is self-discovery where each MODULE contains a set of Attributes containing its capabilities. This information can be interrogated by the protocol using a CONFIG interface in the PIF. When coupled with the minimum dual-simplex LINK, this arrangement allows, through implementation in the protocol, a complete capability discovery and negotiation process avoiding the requirement of detailed knowledge of the LINK components at a system level.

4.8.1 Conceptual Configuration Process

313 Following an OFF state, or a LINE-RESET, a MODULE operates with default configuration settings. Under default operation the Protocol can retrieve MODULE capabilities, arbitrate more optimal configuration settings, then directly change OFFLINE settings, or make a change request for INLINE settings. This process consists of the following steps:

314 • DISCOVERY

315 • Read MODULE capabilities, and determine desired, commonly supported configuration settings.

316 • PHY CONFIG

317 • Request to change MODULE configuration settings.

318 • EFFECTUATE

319 • Update the MODULE configuration settings.

320 To support the configuration process, the following four registries are anticipated:

321 • CAPABILITY registry; contains the capability information for a given MODULE.

322 • STATUS (also known as INLINE-SET) registry; contains effectuated INLINE configuration settings. These configuration settings are updated from the INLINE-CR registry by the MODULE upon an RCT.

323 • INLINE-CR registry, (shadow registry for the INLINE-SET registry); logs change requests for configuration settings of INLINE parameters, that is, settings that immediately impact actual signaling.

324 • OFFLINE-SET registry; contains configuration settings that do not directly impact signaling, and are therefore immediately effectuated with issuing of M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request. An RCT for effectuating these attributes is not required.

325 The nature of a configuration setting, whether it is INLINE or OFFLINE, depends on the mode of operation.

326 Each MODULE within a SUB-LINK may have its own set of registries, or an M-PORT implementation may combine common configuration settings, depending on the specific LINK composition. The implementation of the anticipated registries is outside the scope of this document.

327 A Media Converter is not required to interpret PAYLOAD data, and therefore MODULEs support a supplementary, low-level configuration mechanism. This supplementary mechanism, based on LCCs and used in the LINE-CFG state, is intended to enhance, but not replace, the main configuration mechanism. A MODULE is not reconfigured via LINE-CONFIG.

328 The configuration process is detailed in the following sections for LANEs without, and with, Media Converters.

4.8.1.1 Configuration without Media Converters

329 ***Figure 22*** illustrates the information flow for a dual-simplex LINK without Media Converters in the LINEs, and the steps of the configuration process for that LINK. There might be invisible, non-constraining Media Converters in a LINE, but these are, in this case, not part of the configuration process.

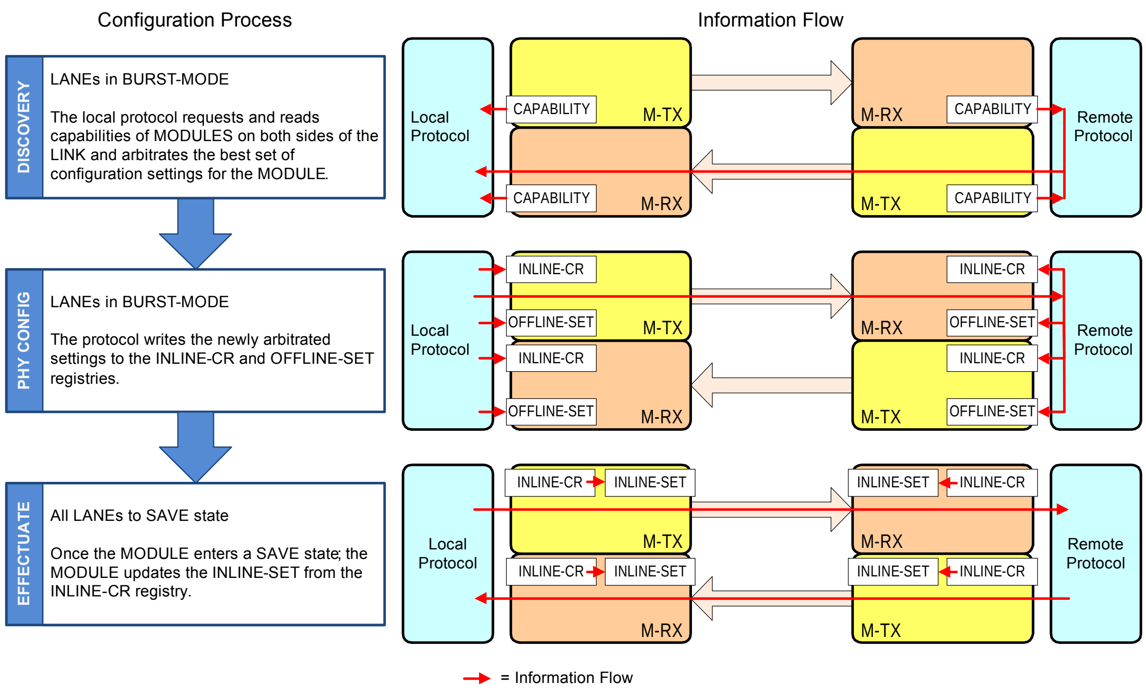


Figure 22 Configuration Steps for LANE

4.8.1.2 Configuration with Media Converters in the LINE

330 ***Figure 23*** illustrates the information flow for a dual-simplex LINK with configurable Media Converters in the LINEs, and the steps of the configuration process for that LINK. The configuration process in this case includes several additional steps for configuring the Media Converters as shown in the figure.

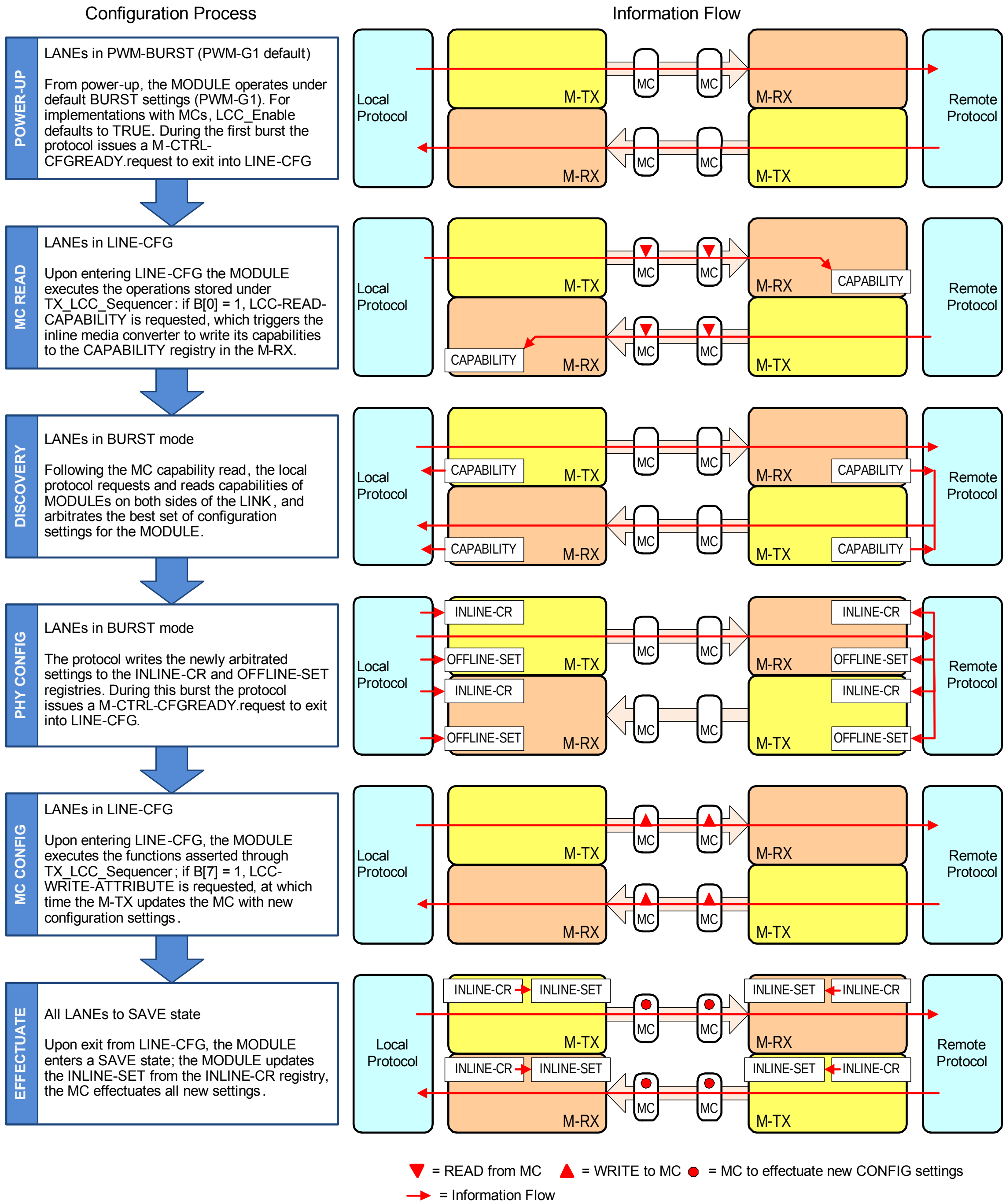


Figure 23 Configuration Steps for LANE including Media Converters

4.8.2 Configuration Parameters

331 Configuration attributes for MODULEs are listed in ***Section 8.4***.

4.9 Multiple LANE Provisions

332 This document governs individual LANEs for a LINK. However, the LANE composition of a LINK is not specified by this document. This section specifies the provisions and constraints for multi-LANE SUB-LINK operation. This enables a multitude of possible LANE compositions for LINKs. The fine selection of allowed LANE combinations is left to the protocols on top of the Physical Layer.

333 There shall be no (tight) PHY-level requirements on timing alignment between SUB-LINKs.

334 The LANEs of a SUB-LINK consisting of multiple LANEs may each individually be in ACTIVATED, DISABLED or HIBERN8.

335 Independent activation of multiple LANEs in a SUB-LINK is optional. If independent activation of multiple LANEs in a SUB-LINK is supported, each MODULE shall satisfy all signaling requirements across multiple LANEs used for a SUB-LINK. If independent activation of multiple LANEs in a SUB-LINK is not supported, the number of LANEs in BURST in a SUB-LINK shall only be changed while all LANEs are either in a SAVE state or DISABLED.

336 Individual LANEs of a SUB-LINK should only be DISABLED during initialization after power-up. When ACTIVATED, LANEs of a SUB-LINK shall be in the same MODE at the same RATE. In HS-MODE, both SUB-LINKs shall use the same HS RATE series (A or B). SUB-LINKs may be operated in different GEARs. SUB-LINKs can be operated in different modes. SUB-LINKs may contain different numbers of LANEs. Entry and exit of HIBERN8 of a SUB-LINK is correlated with the state of the SUB-LINK in the opposite direction. A SUB-LINK is considered to be in HIBERN8 when all its LANES are in HIBERN8 or DISABLED. LANE exit and entry of HIBERN8 are initiated from the M-TX side and controlled by the local protocols. The protocols on both sides control LANEs such that both SUB-LINKs enter and exit HIBERN8 more, or less, simultaneously or shortly after each other. The detection means of the M-RX are just triggers for the further protocol action. At least one LANE of a TYPE-I SUB-LINK needs to remain enabled after power up.

337 This document does not require functional symmetry of M-TXs and M-RXs for the SUB-LINKs of a LINK.

338 The allocation of PAYLOAD data over multiple LANEs is left to the protocol specifications.

4.10 Test Modes

339 Test modes are special modes of operation which shall not happen during normal operation of a MODULE, which are intended to facilitate electrical, functional and protocol related tests. However, most tests can and should be executed using the normal operating modes. Protocols shall support generation of both burst and continuous mode signaling for the purposes of conformance testing. This may be accomplished via loopback, or dedicated test modes, depending on the application. See ***Annex B*** for further information.

4.10.1 LOOPBACK Mode

340 LOOPBACK mode provides a transparent bit-by-bit path from an M-RX input to an M-TX output. This can be done only for commonly supported MODE and GEAR settings for the involved M-RX and M-TX. If multiple M-RXs or M-TXs are present in a complete LINK, the mapping of which M-RX is looped via which M-TX is either specified by the applicable protocol specification or is otherwise left to the implementor. The Physical Layer is set into LOOPBACK mode via configuration.

341 LOOPBACK retransmits via the M-TX the encoded LINE data as recovered by the M-RX without decoding (and re-encoding) the 8b10b symbols. The configured setup in the mode is illustrated in ***Figure 24***. Bypassing the coders avoids bit error multiplication. For any mandatory test condition, the input data provided to the M-RX shall be 8b10b encoded. Furthermore, an implementation should use symbol streams with characteristics similar to what happens in the real application. LOOPBACK mode can for example be used for *BER* testing.

342 Although this mode allows a test setup to inject a non-8b10b encoded bit stream for experimental purposes, there shall not be mandatory requirements on the functionality or performance of the Physical Layer in this

case. Because HS-MODE utilizes embedded-clock data recovery, it is essential that any input bit stream in HS-LOOPBACK contains sufficient edge density.

343 For LOOPBACK the RATEs of M-RX and M-TX shall be identical, even though the MODULEs might be able to operate plesiochronously during normal operation. Note that this test mode is suitable to monitor the internal recovered bitstream of the M-RX on the outside via the M-TX, but not to characterize the M-TX performance.

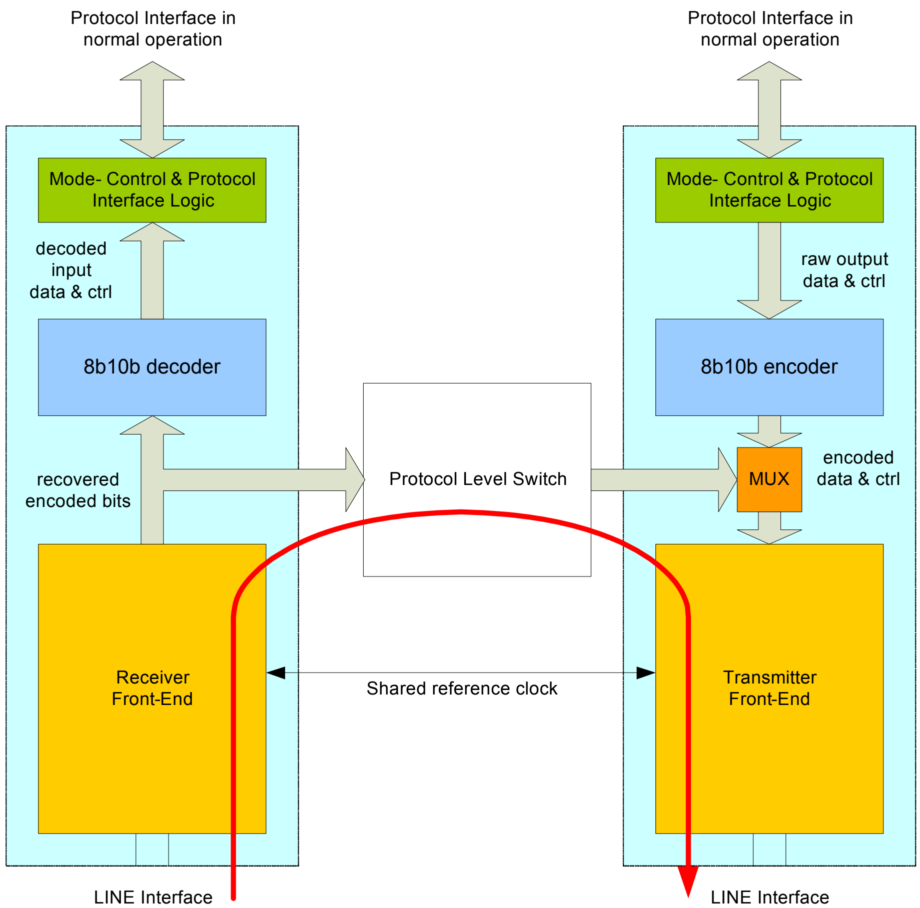


Figure 24 LOOPBACK Configuration

5 Electrical Characteristics

344 This section defines the electrical and low-level timing characteristics of M-TXs and M-RXs. The definitions of the common MODULE characteristics are followed by specific characteristics for HS-MODE, PWM-MODE, and SYS-MODE operation. Finally, this section specifies the general PIN characteristics for a MODULE.

345 The definitions within this section refer to a MODULE in certain MODEs, which are referred to as FUNCTIONs. The FUNCTIONs are listed with their abbreviations in ***Table 13***.

Table 13 FUNCTIONs and their Abbreviations

Abbreviation	FUNCTION
HS-TX	M-TX in HS-MODE
PWM-TX	M-TX in PWM-MODE
SYS-TX	M-TX in SYS-MODE
HS-RX	M-RX in HS-MODE
PWM-RX	M-RX in PWM-MODE
SYS-RX	M-RX in SYS-MODE
SQ-RX	M-RX in squelch

346 The names of the FUNCTIONs correspond with the operational states of the M-TXs and M-RXs as specified in ***Section 4.6.3***. A MODULE does not need to support all FUNCTIONs, only those required for the intended application. FUNCTIONs required for an M-TX or an M-RX implementation are defined in ***Section 4.4***, ***Section 4.6***, ***Section 4.7*** and higher level protocol standards. Also, the high level timing of the FUNCTIONs and their operation are defined in ***Section 4***.

347 The electrical and timing characteristics of the M-TX and the M-RX are defined at the PINs of an IC. Only MODULE characteristics that are observable at the PINs are subject to specification. These characteristics shall meet their specifications for any supported FUNCTION.

348 This specification is intended to be implementation agnostic. The section structure, which is based on FUNCTIONs, does not preclude integrated driver or receiver implementations. Although some figures in this section may suggest a certain driver or receiver implementation, they are used only for illustration purposes.

5.1 M-TX Characteristics

349 This document distinguishes three different operating modes and corresponding FUNCTIONs. Following the definition of the common M-TX electrical and timing characteristics, additional characteristics specific to HS-TX, PWM-TX, and SYS-TX are defined in this section.

5.1.1 Common M-TX Characteristics

350 The common electrical and timing characteristics of an M-TX are defined in this section, which also contains the PIN and signal definitions. The common M-TX characteristics apply to the HS-TX, PWM-TX, and SYS-TX FUNCTIONs.

5.1.1.1 PIN, Signal, and Reference Characteristic Definitions

351 An M-TX drives a low-voltage differential output signal at the PINs TXDP and TXDN either into a terminated, or an unterminated, load. TXDP and TXDN are defined as the positive and negative output PINs, respectively.

352 The PIN voltages and currents, as well as the reference load R_{REF} are shown in ***Figure 25***. R_{REF_RT} and R_{REF_NT} are defined as reference loads for when the M-TX is terminated and not terminated, respectively.

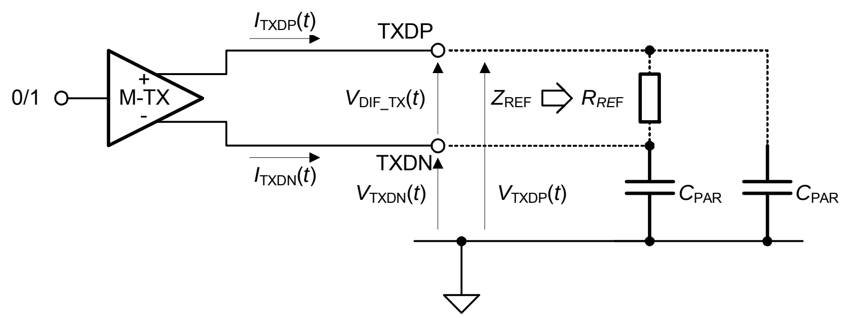


Figure 25 M-TX PIN Voltages, PIN Currents, and Reference Loads

353 Reference Channels CH1 and CH2 are defined for operation in HS-G3 and HS-G4. The reference channels are defined by the channel insertion loss $SDD_{IL\_REF\_CH}$, the return loss $SDD_{RL\_REF\_CH}$, and the channel differential impedance $R_{DIF\_REF\_CH}$ when terminated with R_{REF_RT}. The maximum single-ended DC channel resistance is $R_{DC\_REF\_CH}$. The $SDD_{IL\_REF\_CH}$ templates are shown in ***Figure 26***. An M-PHY operating in HS-G3 and HS-G4 shall demonstrate TX eye opening conformance with Reference Channels CH1 or CH2. The reference channels do not represent an actual LINK channel. The reference channel insertion loss template does not scale for HS-G4. The reference channel definition is independent of HS-Gear.

354 A reference package model is defined for operation in HS-G4 to represent an interconnect extension that affects the signal quality beyond the reference channels. The reference package model, with the addition of pad capacitance, shall conform to the HS-TX and HS-RX return loss defined in ***Section 5.1.1.4*** and ***Section 5.2.1.5***.

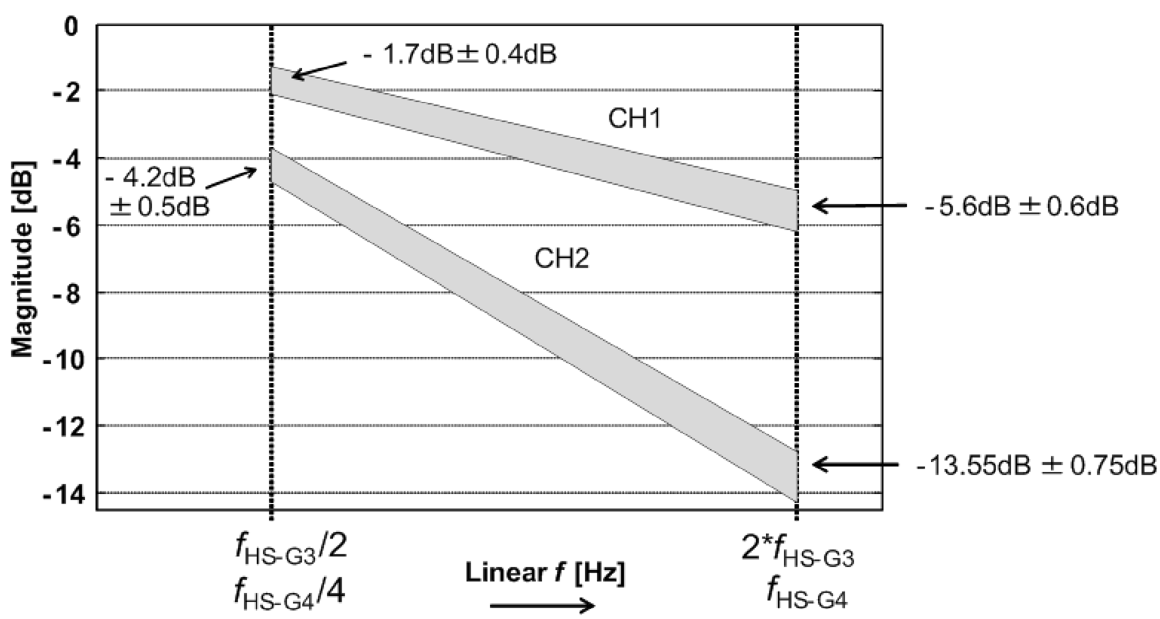


Figure 26 HS-G3 and HS-G4 Reference Channel Insertion Loss $SDD_{IL\_REF\_CH}$ Templates

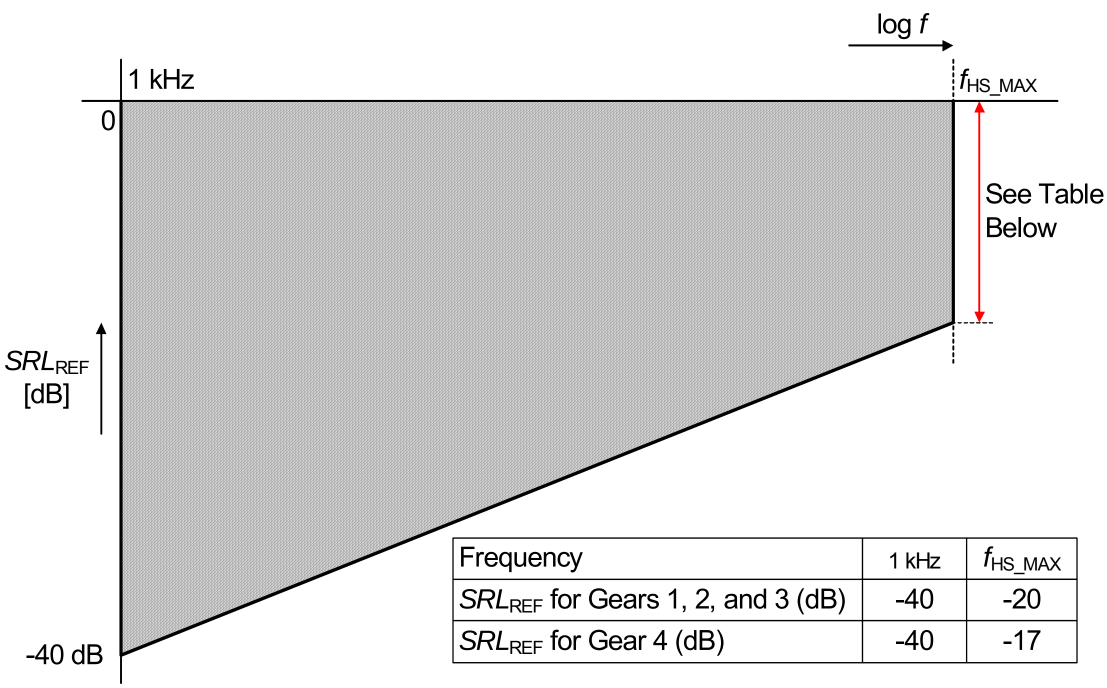
355 $V_{TXDP}(t)$ and $V_{TXDN}(t)$ are defined as the signal voltages at TXDP and TXDN with respect to ground. V_{TXDP} and V_{TXDN} are defined as the voltage amplitudes of the $V_{TXDP}(t)$ and $V_{TXDN}(t)$ signals, respectively.

356 $I_{TXDP}(t)$ and $I_{TXDN}(t)$ are defined as the output currents flowing out of TXDP and TXDN, respectively. I_{TXDP} and I_{TXDN} are defined as the current amplitudes of the $I_{TXDP}(t)$ and $I_{TXDN}(t)$ signals, respectively.

357 Z_{REF} is the impedance of the reference load R_{REF}. which is bounded by the return loss SRL_{REF}. C_{PAR} illustrates parasitic capacitance that contributes to Z_{REF}; C_{PAR} is not specified. Z_{REF_RT} is defined as the complex impedance of R_{REF_RT} and represents the AC reference load limit in the terminated state. SRL_{REF_RT} is defined as the return loss of Z_{REF_RT} and can be calculated using ***Equation 1***.

$$SRL_{\mathrm{REF\_RT}} = -20\log\left|\frac{Z_{\mathrm{REF\_RT}} + Z_R}{Z_{\mathrm{REF\_RT}} - Z_R}\right| \qquad \text{(Equation 1)}$$

358 where Z_R is a defined reference impedance. SRL_{REF_RT} is defined having a minimum value greater than SRL_{REF_RT}[MIN] for all frequencies from 0 Hz up to f_{HS_MAX} (see ***Figure 27***).



Frequency	1 kHz	f_{HS_MAX}
SRL_{REF} for Gears 1, 2, and 3 (dB)	-40	-20
SRL_{REF} for Gear 4 (dB)	-40	-17

Figure 27 Template for Reference Return Loss

359 The HS frequency, f_{HS}, is half the HS data rate, DR_{HS}. Other characteristic frequencies during operation in HS-MODE are the maximum and minimum frequencies, f_{HS_MAX} and f_{HS_MIN}, respectively. f_{HS_MAX} and f_{HS_MIN} are used in the S-parameter templates. All these frequencies are defined as fractions of DR_{HS} as shown by the following equations:

$$f_{HS} = \frac{\mathrm{DR_{HS}}}{2} \qquad \text{(Equation 2)}$$

$$f_{\mathrm{HS\_MAX}} = \frac{3 \times \mathrm{DR_{HS}}}{4} \qquad \text{(Equation 3)}$$

$$f_{\mathrm{HS\_MIN}} = \frac{\mathrm{DR_{HS}}}{10} \qquad \text{(Equation 4)}$$

360 An M-TX drives a differential low-swing signal with either Large Amplitude or Small Amplitude. The amplitude of the differential output signal is doubled when the M-TX drives an unterminated load compared

to when it drives a terminated load. Differential output signals with large and small amplitudes for the terminated and unterminated states are shown in ***Figure 28***. All single-ended voltage levels are relative to the ground voltage at the M-TX side.

361 The jitter of an HS-TX in HS-MODE is specified by means of a jitter transfer function with a corner frequency $f_{C\_HS\_TX}$. Jitter is integrated up to the upper transmitter cut-off frequency f_{U_TX}. An additional lower cut-off frequency f_{STJ_TX} is defined for the short term jitter of an HS-TX.

362 The jitter is defined for a *BER* of 10^{-12} according to ***[INC01]***[1]. The mean (μ) of the distribution function is located at 0.

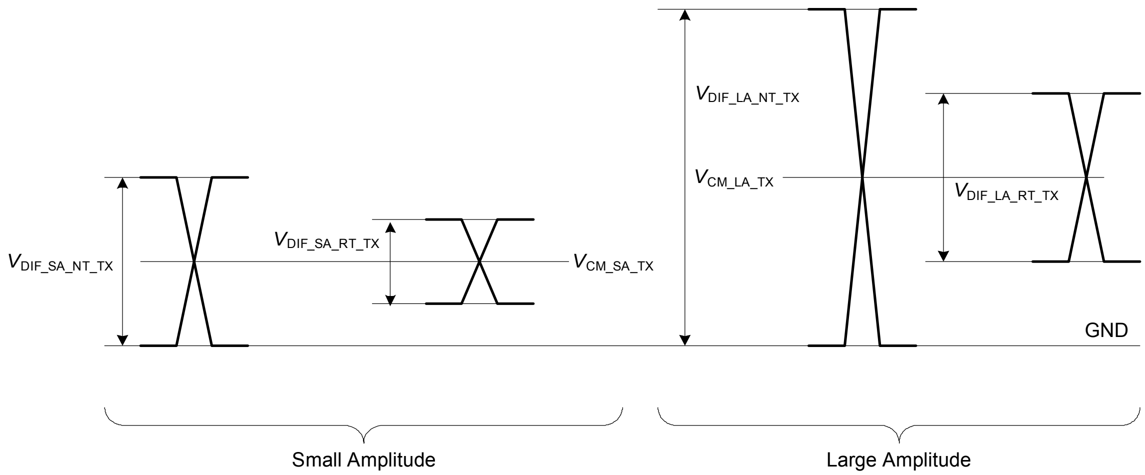


Figure 28 M-TX Signal Levels

363 The reference parameters for the M-TX are summarized in ***Table 14***.

Table 14 M-TX and HS-TX Reference Parameters

Symbol	Values Min.	Values Nom.	Values Max.	Unit	Description
Reference Load					
R_{REF_RT}		100		Ω	Reference load for when the M-TX is terminated.
R_{REF_NT}	10			kΩ	Reference load for when the M-TX is not terminated.
Z_R		100		Ω	Reference impedance.
Reference Channel					
$R_{DC\_REF\_CH}$			4	Ω	Reference channel single-ended DC resistance.
$SDD_{RL\_REF\_CH}$			-15	dB	Reference channel return loss limit from DC up to 6 GHz.
$R_{DIF\_REF\_CH}$		100		Ω	Reference channel differential impedance.

1. The BER is changed from 10^{-10} to 10^{-12} in M-PHY v4.1. Other jitter definitions remain unchanged. The change in BER is tightening the M-TX jitter requirements.

Table 14 M-TX and HS-TX Reference Parameters (continued)

Symbol	Values			Unit	Description
	Min.	Nom.	Max.		
Frequency					
$f_{C\_HS\_G1\_TX}$		2.0		MHz	Corner frequency of clock and data recovery transfer function in HS-G1.
$f_{C\_HS\_G2\_TX}$		4.0		MHz	Corner frequency of clock and data recovery transfer function in HS-G2.
$f_{C\_HS\_G3\_TX}$		8.0		MHz	Corner frequency of clock and data recovery transfer function in HS-G3.
$f_{C\_HS\_G4\_TX}$		8.0		MHz	Corner frequency of clock and data recovery transfer function in HS-G4.
f_{U_TX}		$\frac{1}{2UI_{HS}}$		Hz	Upper frequency of jitter transfer function.
f_{STJ_TX}		$\frac{1}{30UI_{HS}}$		Hz	Lower bound of short term jitter.
ζ		*0.707*		N.A.	Damping ratio of jitter transfer function.
Limit for *BER*					
Q_{BER}		7.0345			Q-factor for a *BER* of 10^{-12}
BER			10^{-12}		Target *BER*

5.1.1.2 Differential and Common-mode Voltage

364 An M-TX drives a differential signal on the TXDP and TXDN PINs. The differential output voltage signal $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ is defined as the difference of the voltage signals $V_{TXDP}(t)$ and $V_{TXDN}(t)$. V_{DIF_TX} is defined as the amplitude of $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$. $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ can be calculated from the following equation:

$$V_{DIF\_TX}(t) = V_{TXDP}(t) - V_{TXDN}(t) \qquad \text{(Equation 5)}$$

365 Separate AC and DC parameters are defined for V_{DIF_TX}. The DC parameter $V_{DIF\_DC\_TX}$ is defined for an M-TX which drives a steady DIF-N or a steady DIF-P LINE state into a reference load R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. An M-TX shall drive a differential DC output voltage amplitude which meets the specified limits of $V_{DIF\_DC\_TX}$. When the differential DC output voltage amplitude remains within the specified limits of $V_{DIF\_DC\_TX}$, the LINE has settled.

366 The AC parameter $V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}$ is defined for an M-TX which drives a test pattern into a reference load R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. For an HS-TX the lower limit of $V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}$ is defined over the eye opening T_{EYE_TX} as defined in ***Section 5.1.2.9***. The upper limit of $V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}$ is defined as the maximum differential output voltage, when the M-TX drives a test pattern into a reference load R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. An M-TX shall drive a differential AC output voltage signal which meets the specified limits of $V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}$.

367 There is no definition for how long the lower limit of $V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}$ has to be met for a PWM-TX or a SYS-TX.

368 The common-mode output voltage signal $V_{CM\_TX}(t)$ is defined as the arithmetic mean value of the signal voltages $V_{TXDP}(t)$ and $V_{TXDN}(t)$ when the M-TX drives a test pattern into a reference load R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. V_{CM_TX} is defined as the amplitude of $V_{CM\_TX}(t)$. $V_{CM\_TX}(t)$ can be calculated from the following equation:

$$V_{CM\_TX}(t) = \frac{V_{TXDP}(t) + V_{TXDN}(t)}{2} \qquad \text{(Equation 6)}$$

369 An M-TX shall drive a common-mode output voltage signal which meets the specified limits of V_{CM_TX}.

370 $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ and $V_{CM\_TX}(t)$ for ideal single-ended output signals $V_{TXDP}(t)$ and $V_{TXDN}(t)$ are shown in ***Figure 29***.

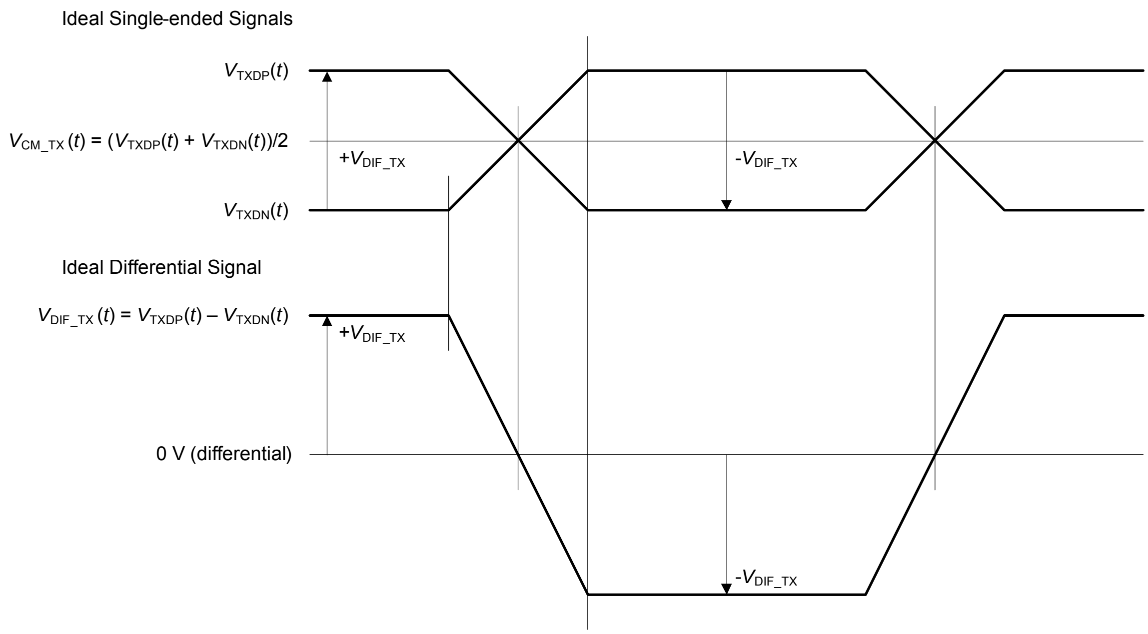


Figure 29 Ideal Single-ended and Differential Signals

5.1.1.3 Single-ended Output Resistance

371 The resistance R_{SE_TX} is defined as the single-ended output resistance of an M-TX at both its TXDP and TXDN PINs. R_{SE_TX} is defined for the case of a terminated M-TX that drives either a DIF-P or DIF-N LINE state with a reference load R_{REF_RT} and a current source I connected between TXDP and TXDN as shown in ***Figure 30***. A change of the current I results in a change of the PIN signal voltages V_{TXDP} and V_{TXDN}.

372 I_{REF} is defined as the value of the current source I that causes a variation of V_{TXDP} and V_{TXDN} by ±25 mV.

373 The single-ended output resistance shall conform with the specification limits of R_{SE_TX} for both the DIF-N and DIF-P state. An implementation should keep the output resistance during state transitions close to the steady state output resistance.

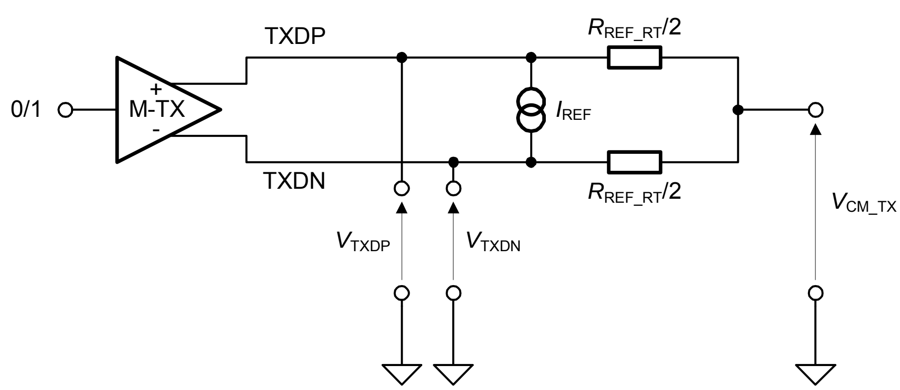


Figure 30 Measurement Setup for Single-ended Output Resistance

374 In ***Equation 7*** through ***Equation 10***, ΔV_{TXDP}, ΔV_{TXDN} and ΔV_{CM_TX} are defined as the voltages of the signals at the test points shown in ***Figure 30*** at two distinct times, t_1 and t_2, where $t_2 > t_1$, such that $\Delta V = V(t_1) - V(t_2)$. The current source I sources I_{REF} and $-I_{REF}$. at t_1 and t_2, respectively.

375 The single-ended output resistance R_{SE_TX} at TXDP can be calculated using the following equation:

$$R_{SE\_TX}(TXDP) = \frac{\Delta V_{TXDP}}{-2I_{REF} - \frac{\Delta V_{TXDP} - \Delta V_{CM\_TX}}{R_{REF\_RT}/2}} \quad \text{(Equation 7)}$$

376 Similarly, the single-ended output resistance R_{SE_TX} at TXDN can be calculated using the following equation:

$$R_{SE\_TX}(TXDN) = \frac{\Delta V_{TXDN}}{2I_{REF} - \frac{\Delta V_{TXDN} - \Delta V_{CM\_TX}}{R_{REF\_RT}/2}} \quad \text{(Equation 8)}$$

377 $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$ is defined as the single-ended output resistance of an M-TX in a STALL or SLEEP state at both the TXDP and TXDN PINs. $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$ is defined for a terminated M-TX, which drives either a DIF-N or a DIF-P LINE state, when a reference load R_{REF_RT} is connected between TXDP and TXDN. If the optional $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$ is utilized, the single-ended output resistance of an M-TX in the STALL or SLEEP states shall conform with the specified limit of $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$.

378 V_{CM_TX} and V_{DIF_TX} shall stay in their specified limits during switching between R_{SE_TX} and $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$. $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$ is an optional feature of an M-TX, which is defined to allow for power optimization in the STALL and SLEEP states.

379 $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$ is defined according to R_{SE_TX}. Using the parameters of the R_{SE_TX} definition, the single-ended output resistance $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$ at TXDP can be calculated using the following equation:

$$R_{SE\_PO\_TX}(TXDP) = \frac{\Delta V_{TXDP}}{-2I_{REF} - \frac{\Delta V_{TXDP} - \Delta V_{CM\_TX}}{R_{REF\_RT}/2}} \quad \text{(Equation 9)}$$

380 Similarly, the single-ended output resistance $R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$ at TXDN can be calculated from the following equation:

$$R_{SE\_PO\_TX}(TXDN) = \frac{\Delta V_{TXDN}}{2I_{REF} - \frac{\Delta V_{TXDN} - \Delta V_{CM\_TX}}{R_{REF\_RT}/2}} \quad \text{(Equation 10)}$$

5.1.1.4 Return Loss

381 The M-TX return loss parameters are based on a mixed-mode S-parameter matrix. The single ended S-parameters are characterized using the reference impedance $R_{REF\_RT}/2$.

382 The characterization can be done with a setup as illustrated in ***Figure 31***. In the figure, V_C denotes the common-mode voltage and V_D denotes the differential voltage.

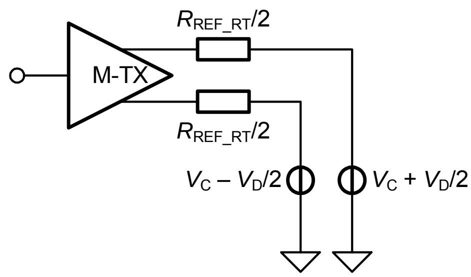
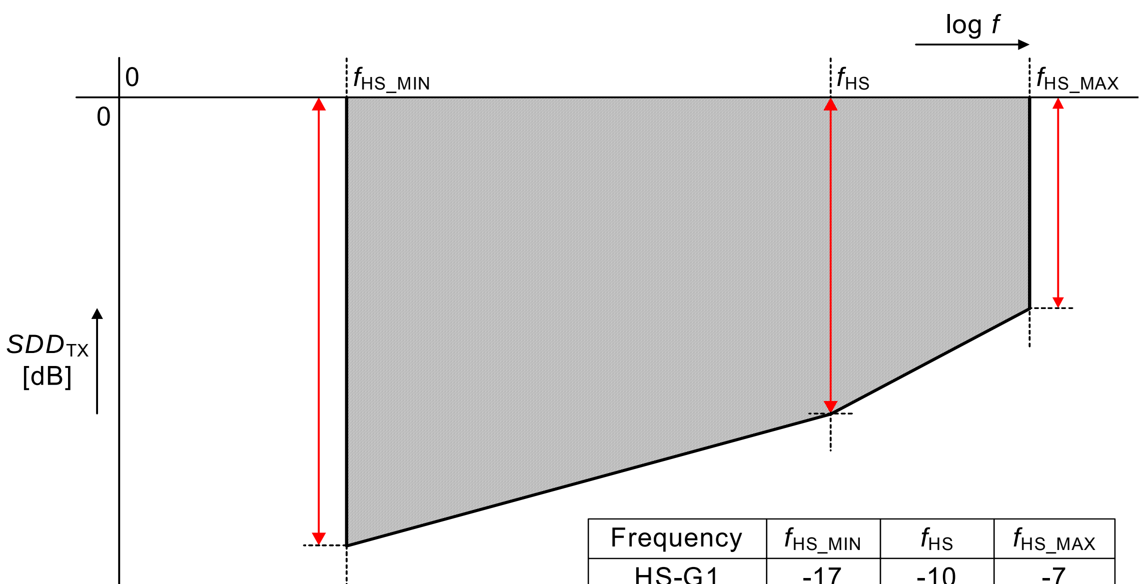


Figure 31 Measurement Setup for M-TX Return Loss

383 The common-mode transmitter return loss, SCC_{TX}, and the differential transmitter return loss, SDD_{TX}, are defined for an M-TX transmitting a repetitive CRPAT into a reference load $R_{REF\_RT}/4$ for SCC_{TX}, and R_{REF_RT} for SDD_{TX}. SDD_{TX} and SCC_{TX} parameters are considered to be informative.When an M-TX supports Large Amplitude and Small Amplitude its SCC_{TX} and SDD_{TX} should conform with the specification limits for both amplitudes. SCC_{TX} and SDD_{TX} are defined at the PINs such that they include contributions from the on-chip circuitry as well as from the package.

384 The SDD_{TX} template is shown in ***Figure 32*** along with the return loss at corner frequencies f_{HS_MIN}, f_{HS} and f_{HS_MAX}. SCC_{TX} is defined for frequencies up to f_{HS_MAX}. An M-TX should fulfill both the common-mode transmitter return loss SCC_{TX} and the differential transmitter return loss SDD_{TX} specification limits.



Frequency	f_{HS_MIN}	f_{HS}	f_{HS_MAX}
HS-G1	-17	-10	-7
HS-G2	-17	-4.8	-3
HS-G3	-13	-3.8	-2
HS-G4	-11	-2.2	-1

Figure 32 Template for Differential Transmitter Return Loss *SDD_{TX}*

5.1.1.5 LINE Disturbance during M-TX Power-up

385 An M-TX in a Type-I LINK shall not cause a LINE condition upon the transition from the UNPOWERED to a POWERED state which can be detected as a non-squelch state by the SQ-RX of the LANE. The allowed LINE disturbance upon such a transition of an M-TX is hence restricted by the squelch pulse rejection as defined in ***Section 5.2.5***.

386 Squelch detection is not used in a Type-II LINK. Hence, there is no restriction of the LINE disturbance caused by an M-TX upon the transition from the UNPOWERED state to a POWERED state in such a LINK.

5.1.1.6 Common M-TX Parameters

387 The common electrical and timing parameters of an M-TX are listed in ***Table 15***.

Table 15 Common M-TX Parameters

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
M-TX Electrical				
$V_{DIF\_DC\_LA\_RT\_TX}$	160	300	mV	Large Amplitude differential TX DC voltage when the M-TX is terminated. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[1] and test pattern[2]. See ***Section 5.1.1.2***.
$V_{DIF\_AC\_LA\_RT\_TX}$[3]	140	310	mV	Large Amplitude differential TX AC voltage when the M-TX is terminated. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[1] and CRPAT[4]. See ***Section 5.1.1.2***.
$V_{DIF\_DC\_LA\_NT\_TX}$	320	600	mV	Large Amplitude differential TX DC voltage when the M-TX is not terminated. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[5] and test pattern[2]. See ***Section 5.1.1.2***.
$V_{DIF\_AC\_LA\_NT\_TX}$[3]	280	620	mV	Large Amplitude differential TX AC voltage when the M-TX is not terminated. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[5] and CRPAT[4]. See ***Section 5.1.1.2***.
$V_{DIF\_DC\_SA\_RT\_TX}$	100	190	mV	Small Amplitude differential TX DC voltage when the M-TX is terminated. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[1] and test pattern[2]. See ***Section 5.1.1.2***.
$V_{DIF\_AC\_SA\_RT\_TX}$[3]	80	200	mV	Small Amplitude differential TX AC voltage when the M-TX is terminated. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[1] and CRPAT[4]. See ***Section 5.1.1.2***.
$V_{DIF\_DC\_SA\_NT\_TX}$	200	380	mV	Small Amplitude differential TX DC voltage when the M-TX is not terminated. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[5] and test pattern[2]. See ***Section 5.1.1.2***.
$V_{DIF\_AC\_SA\_NT\_TX}$[3]	160	400	mV	Small Amplitude differential TX AC voltage when the M-TX is not terminated. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[5] and CRPAT[4]. See ***Section 5.1.1.2***.
$V_{CM\_LA\_TX}$	160	310	mV	Large Amplitude common-mode TX voltage. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[1] or R_{REF_NT}[5] and CRPAT[6]. See ***Section 5.1.1.2***.
$V_{CM\_SA\_TX}$	80	240	mV	Small Amplitude common-mode TX voltage. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[1] or R_{REF_NT}[5] and CRPAT[6]. See ***Section 5.1.1.2***.
M-TX Resistance				
R_{SE_TX}	40	60	Ω	Single-ended output resistance. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[1]. See ***Section 5.1.1.3***.
$R_{SE\_PO\_TX}$		10	kΩ	Single-ended output resistance in STALL or SLEEP states. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[1]. See ***Section 5.1.1.3***.

Table 15 Common M-TX Parameters (continued)

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
M-TX Return Loss				
$SCC_{HS\_G1\_TX}$		-6.0	dB	Common-mode transmitter return loss. Defined for (R_{REF_RT}/4)[1] up to f_{HS_MAX} and test pattern[6]. See ***Section 5.1.1.4***.
$SCC_{HS\_G2\_TX}$		-4.0	dB	Common-mode transmitter return loss. Defined for (R_{REF_RT}/4)[1] up to f_{HS_MAX} and test pattern[6]. See ***Section 5.1.1.4***.
$SCC_{HS\_G3\_TX}$		-2.0	dB	Common-mode transmitter return loss. Defined for (R_{REF_RT}/4)[1] up to f_{HS_MAX} and test pattern[6]. See ***Section 5.1.1.4***.

1. *External reference load R_{REF_RT} and a reference impedance Z_{REF_RT} that conform to SRL_{REF_RT}.*
2. *Defined when driving both a DIF-N and a DIF-P LINE state.*
3. *The M-TX HS-G3 and HS-G4 AC differential amplitude voltages are validated through eye-mask conformance at the end of a reference channel, CH1 or CH2, using a CRPAT test pattern. See **Section 5.1.2.9**.*
4. *Measurement based on accumulative eye diagram. Measurements are accomplished using the Compliant Random Pattern (CRPAT).*
5. *External reference load R_{REF_NT} and capacitances at TXDP and at TXDN within the limit of C_{PIN_RX}.*
6. *Defined for a repetitive CRPAT.*
7. *The listed parameters should be measured with de-emphasis turned off.*

5.1.2 HS-TX Characteristics

388 This section contains the electrical and timing characteristics specific to an HS-TX which are not covered by the common M-TX parameters in ***Section 5.1.1***.

5.1.2.1 Rise and Fall Times

389 The HS-TX rise and fall times, $T_{R\_HS\_TX}$ and $T_{F\_HS\_TX}$, respectively, are defined as transition times between the 20% and 80% signal levels of the differential HS-TX output signal with an amplitude of $V_{DIF\_DC\_TX}$, when driving a pattern into a reference load, R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. The HS-TX rise and fall times are considered to be informative. The pattern used for measurement is a minimum of two UI_{HS} of DIF-P followed by a minimum of two UI_{HS} of DIF-N for $T_{F\_HS\_TX}$, and a minimum of two UI_{HS} of DIF-N, followed by a minimum of two UI_{HS} of DIF-P for $T_{R\_HS\_TX}$.

5.1.2.2 Slew Rate

390 The slew rate SR_{DIF_TX} is defined as the ratio $\Delta V/\Delta T$, where ΔV is the absolute value of the voltage difference of the differential HS-TX output signal voltage measured at the 20% and 80% levels of $V_{DIF\_DC\_SA\_RT\_TX}$ and ΔT is the corresponding time difference when the HS-TX drives a reference load R_{REF_RT} with Small Amplitude. The specification limits of SR_{DIF_TX} shall be met by an HS-TX that supports slew rate control and which is operated in HS-G1.

391 The slew rate of the HS-TX should be controllable to allow for N different slew rate states. $SR_{DIF\_TX}[1]$ and $SR_{DIF\_TX}[N]$ denominate the slew rate for the fastest and for the slowest slew rate states, respectively. The number N is implementation-specific and is out of scope for this document. The slew rate states should cover a range defined by the maximum slew rate SR_{DIF_TX}[MAX] and the minimum slew rate SR_{DIF_TX}[MIN]. For

at least one state the slew rate should be larger than $SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}$[MAX]. For at least one state it should be smaller than $SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}$[MIN].

392 The slew rate shall be monotonically decreasing when stepping from faster to slower slew rate states, i.e., $SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}[i]$ is larger than $SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}[i+1]$, where i is in the range of 1 to N-1. It shall be monotonically increasing when stepping from slower to faster slew rate states. A given slew rate correspondence between setting and value is not intended to be specified, rather range and granularity are provided. The range of slew rate settings is intended to exceed the range of conformant slew rate values to allow control over common mode noise and EMI (see ***Section 5.1.2.10.1***).

393 The resolution of the slew rate states $\Delta SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}$ is defined as the difference of the slew rates of two adjacent slew rate states divided by the slew rate of the slower state.

394 $\Delta SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}$ can be calculated using the following equation:

$$\Delta SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}} = \frac{SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}[i] - SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}[i+1]}{SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}[i+1]} \qquad \text{(Equation 11)}$$

395 where $SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}[i+1]$ is the slew rate of the slower slew rate state and $SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}[i]$ is the slew rate of the adjacent faster slew rate state. $\Delta SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}$ shall be met between $SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}[1]$ and $SR_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}[N]$ (see ***Table 16***).

5.1.2.3 Intra-LANE Output Skew

396 The transmitter intra-LANE output skew, $T_{\mathrm{INTRA\_SKEW\_TX}}$, is defined as the time between the intersections of the single-ended output signals $V_{\mathrm{TXDP}}(t)$ and $V_{\mathrm{TXDN}}(t)$ with the averaged common-mode voltage $V_{\mathrm{CM\_TX}}$, when the HS-TX drives a test pattern into a reference load $R_{\mathrm{REF\_RT}}$ or $R_{\mathrm{REF\_NT}}$. The transmitter intra-lane output skew shall be in the specification limits of $T_{\mathrm{INTRA\_SKEW\_TX}}$. A skew of the single-ended output signals results in a common-mode voltage ripple as illustrated in ***Figure 33***.

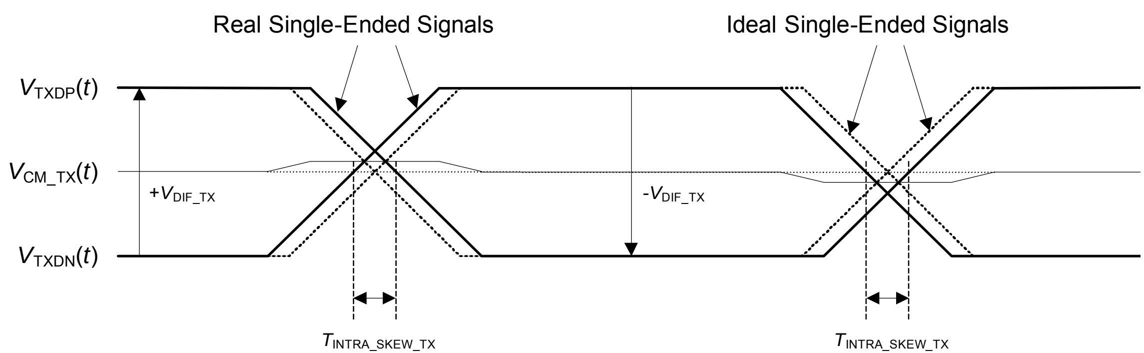


Figure 33 Impact of Signal Skew on Common-mode

5.1.2.4 LANE-to-LANE Skew

397 The HS-TX LANE-to-LANE skew $T_{\mathrm{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_TX}}$ is defined as the time between the zero crossings of the differential output signals $V_{\mathrm{DIF\_TX}}(t)$ of any two HS-TXs in one SUB-LINK, when both HS-TX drive a test pattern into identical reference loads $R_{\mathrm{REF\_RT}}$ or $R_{\mathrm{REF\_NT}}$. The value of $T_{\mathrm{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_TX}}$ is outside the scope of this document. If required, it shall be defined in the protocol specification.

5.1.2.5 Output Resistance Mismatch

398 The HS-TX output resistance mismatch, $\Delta R_{\mathrm{SE\_TX}}$, is defined as the difference of the single-ended output resistances, $R_{\mathrm{SE\_TX}}$, at the TXDP and TXDN PINs, when the HS-TX drives CRPAT test pattern into a reference load, $R_{\mathrm{REF\_RT}}$ or $R_{\mathrm{REF\_NT}}$. $R_{\mathrm{SE\_TX}}$ is defined in ***Section 5.1.1.3***.

399 ΔR_{SE_TX} can be calculated from the following equation:

$$\Delta R_{SE\_TX} = R_{SE\_TX}(\mathrm{TXDP}) - R_{SE\_TX}(\mathrm{TXDN}) \quad \text{(Equation 12)}$$

400 where R_{SE_TX}(TXDP) is the output resistance driving either a DIF-N or a DIF-P and R_{SE_TX}(TXDN) is the output resistance driving either a DIF-N or a DIF-P such that ***Equation 12*** has to be evaluated for four cases. The HS-TX output resistance mismatch shall be in the limits of ΔR_{SE_TX} for all four cases.

401 Transmitter output signal mismatch, as well as the transmitter output gain mismatch, originates from ΔR_{SE_TX}. The transmitter output gain mismatch definition is out of scope for this document. A transmitter output signal mismatch results in different signal transition times as well as in different differential DC output voltages $V_{DIF\_DC\_TX}$ when driving a DIF-P or a DIF-N LINE state. Both effects cause a ripple of V_{CM_TX}. An example of a V_{CM_TX} ripple is illustrated in ***Figure 34***.

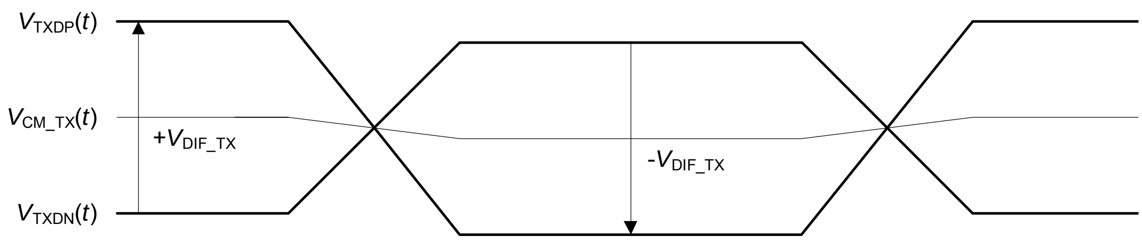


Figure 34 Impact of Output Signal Mismatch on Common-mode Voltage

5.1.2.6 Transmitter Pulse Width

402 The transmitter pulse width T_{PULSE_TX} of an HS-TX differential output signal is defined as the time between the zero crossings of a single bit of the differential output signal $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ when driving a test pattern into a reference load R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. The transmitter pulse width of an HS-TX output signal should conform with the lower limit of T_{PULSE_TX}.

5.1.2.7 Transmitter Jitter

403 To ensure interoperability among the components that comprise an end-to-end LANE, the jitter budget must be adhered to by the HS-TX and the HS-RX. The LINE characteristics are indirectly defined by the HS-TX jitter characteristics and by the HS-RX jitter tolerance. While the jitter budgets for reference clock and PLLs are not explicitly defined, the impact of these circuits is included in the jitter budget.

404 The transmitter total jitter TJ_{TX} is a convolution of the deterministic jitter DJ_{TX} and the random jitter RJ_{TX} of the differential output signal $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ of the HS-TX. TJ_{TX} is the sum of the arithmetic sum of the deterministic jitter contributions $DJ_{TX}[j]$, where $DJ_{TX}[j]$ are peak-to-peak values, and the square root of the sum of squared random jitter contributions $RJ_{TX}[i]$ multiplied by two times the Q-factor Q_{BER}, which is a constant depending on the *BER*.

405 TJ_{TX} can be calculated using following equation:

$$TJ_{TX} = \sum_j DJ_{TX}[j] + 2Q_{BER}\sqrt{\sum_i RJ_{TX}[i]^2} \quad \text{(Equation 13)}$$

406 Using the dual-Dirac model, TJ_{TX} can be expressed by the following equation:

$$TJ_{TX} = DJ_{TX}(\delta\delta) + 2Q_{BER}\sigma \quad \text{(Equation 14)}$$

407 where $DJ_{TX}(\delta\delta)$ is the time between two Dirac pulses and σ is the standard deviation of the Gaussian random jitter of the HS-TX. $DJ_{TX}(\delta\delta)$ is the dual-Dirac model for the deterministic jitter of the HS-TX and σ is the

model for the random jitter of the HS-TX. Further details of the dual-Dirac jitter model are described in ***[INC01]***.

408 This specification defines the TJ_{TX} and the $DJ_{TX}(\delta\delta)$. In addition, the short term total jitter, $STTJ_{TX}$, and the short term deterministic jitter, $STDJ_{TX}(\delta\delta)$, which limit the jitter within a $30UI_{HS}$ signal sequence, are specified. The short term jitter corresponds to a high frequency jitter in the frequency domain.

409 The HS-TX jitter spectrum spans from very low frequencies up to high frequencies. In the low frequency range, HS-TX jitter can be significant down to a few kHz. An HS-RX at the other end of the LANE tracks the low frequency jitter components and behaves as a high pass jitter filter. Therefore the HS-TX jitter is filtered with a high-pass jitter transfer function $H_{JTF}(s)$, which is defined in the following equation:

$$H_{\mathrm{JTF}}(s) = \frac{s^2}{s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_m s + \omega_m^2} \qquad \text{(Equation 15)}$$

410 where $\omega_m = 2\pi f_m$ and $fm = \dfrac{f_{\mathrm{C\_HS\_TX}}}{\sqrt{1 + 2\zeta^2 + \sqrt{1 + (1 + 2\zeta^2)^2}}}$. The clock and data recovery transfer function can be expressed by the following equation:

$$H_{\mathrm{CDR}}(s) = \frac{2\zeta\omega_m s + \omega_m^2}{s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_m s + \omega_m^2} \qquad \text{(Equation 16)}$$

411 After $H_{JTF}(s)$ is applied to the jitter, TJ_{TX} is determined by integrating over the frequency range from larger than 0 Hz up to f_{U_TX}. ***Figure 35*** shows a plot of $H_{JTF}(s)$ and $H_{CDR}(s)$.

412 A 1^{st} order high-pass filter with the pole at f_{STJ_TX} is applied to the transmit jitter to determine $STTJ_{TX}$.

413 The transmitter total jitter TJ_{TX} and deterministic jitter $DJ_{TX}(\delta\delta)$ are defined for the differential output signal $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ at the zero crossings when the HS-TX is driving a CRPAT test pattern into a reference load R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. The transmitter total jitter and deterministic jitter of an HS-TX shall conform with the limits of TJ_{TX} and $DJ_{TX}(\delta\delta)$,respectively.

414 The transmitter short term total jitter $STTJ_{TX}$ and short term deterministic jitter $STDJ_{TX}(\delta\delta)$ are defined for the differential output signal $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ at the zero crossings when the HS-TX is driving a CRPAT test pattern into a reference load R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. The transmitter short term total jitter and short term deterministic jitter of an HS-TX shall conform with the limits of $STTJ_{TX}$ and $STDJ_{TX}(\delta\delta)$, respectively. Note that jitter in non-terminated mode cannot be practically measured.

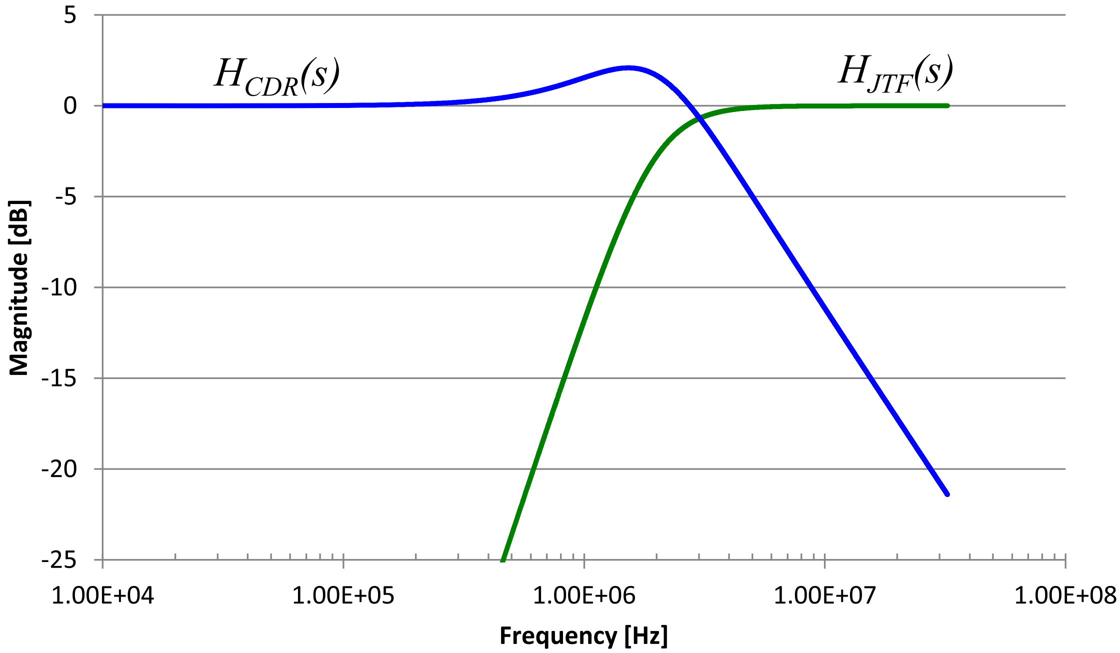


Figure 35 Clock and Data Recovery Transfer Function and Jitter Transfer Function

5.1.2.8 Transmitter De-emphasis

415 To mitigate additional channel-induced ISI at HS-G3 data rates or above, an HS-TX can utilize channel equalization in the form of de-emphasis. The transmitter de-emphasis has two taps, where the first tap is the cursor and the second tap is the first post-cursor. The taps are separated by UI_{HS} and the transmitter de-emphasis ratio EQ_{TX} determines the de-emphasis level. Two de-emphasis ratios are defined.

416 ***Figure 36*** shows an example transmit waveform with de-emphasis. After a logical bit transition, the amplitude of the differential output voltage signal $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ conforms to the differential AC output voltage amplitude $V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}$. The next bit that retains the same logical state is reduced in amplitude. The differential AC output voltage amplitude with de-emphasis $V_{DIF\_AC\_EQ\_TX}$ is defined as the reduced amplitude. EQ_{TX} is defined as the minus 20 log of the ratio of $V_{DIF\_AC\_EQ\_TX}$ and $V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}$ as shown in the following equation:

$$EQ_{TX} = -20\log\left(\frac{V_{DIF\_AC\_EQ\_TX}}{V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}}\right) \quad \text{(Equation 17)}$$

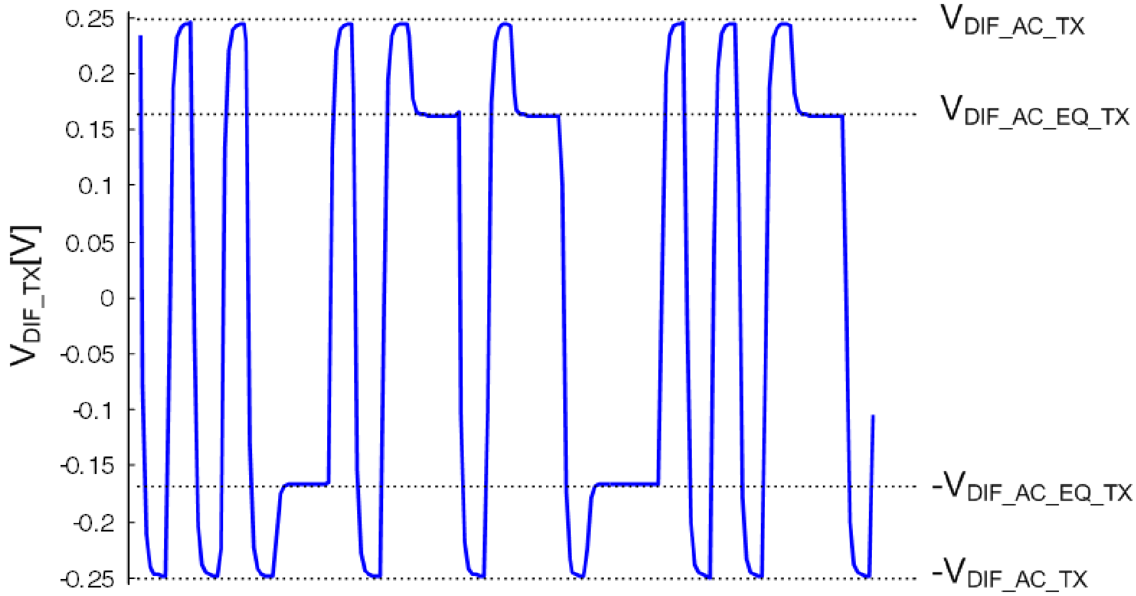


Figure 36 Example Transmit Waveform with De-emphasis

417 An HS-TX with de-emphasis, when operated in HS-G3 or above, shall conform to the HS-G3 and HS-G4 transmitter eye diagram mask (see ***Section 5.1.2.9***). The transmitter de-emphasis defined for HS-G3 and above may be implemented in HS-G1 and HS-G2 to facilitate longer channel lengths at lower data rates.

5.1.2.9 Transmitter Eye Opening

418 The transmitter eye opening, T_{EYE_TX}, is defined as the duration in an eye diagram over which the absolute value of the differential HS-TX output signal has to be larger than the lower limit of $V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}$ when the HS-TX transmits a test pattern into a reference load R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. T_{EYE_TX} is defined for HS-G1 and HS-G2.

419 T_{EYE_TX}, $V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}$ and $TJ_{TX}/2$ define the eye mask for the accumulated M-TX signal in HS-G1 and HS-G2 as shown in ***Figure 37***. The absolute value of the HS-TX differential output voltage signal shall be larger than the lower limit of $V_{DIF\_AC\_TX}$ over T_{EYE_TX}. The accumulated eye diagram shall conform to the eye diagram mask. For HS-G1 the position of T_{EYE_TX} is limited by (UI_{HS} - T_{EYE_TX})/2 to the left and $TJ_{TX}/2$ to the right. For HS-G2 the midpoint of T_{EYE_TX} is located at $UI_{HS}/2$.

420 For HS-G3 the transmitter eye opening, $T_{EYE\_HS\_G3\_TX}$ is defined as the duration over which no zero crossings of $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ are allowed in the eye diagram when the HS-TX transmits a test pattern into a reference channel that is terminated with a reference load R_{REF_RT}. Reference Channels CH1 and CH2 are defined in ***Section 5.1.1.1***.

421 For HS-G4 the transmitter eye opening, $T_{EYE\_HS\_G4\_TX}$ is defined as the duration over which no zero crossings of $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ are allowed in the eye diagram when the HS-TX transmits a test pattern into a reference channel that is terminated with a reference load R_{REF_RT} and after the reference package and reference channel equalizer. Reference Channels CH1 and CH2 and reference package are defined in ***Section 5.1.1.1*** and the receiver reference equalizers are defined in ***Section 5.2.1.1***.

422 $T_{EYE\_HS\_G3\_TX}$ and $V_{DIF\_AC\_HS\_G3\_TX}$ define the eye mask for the accumulated M-TX signal in HS-G3 and HS-G4, as shown in ***Figure 38***. $T_{EYE\_HS\_G4\_TX}$ and $V_{DIF\_AC\_HS\_G4\_TX}$ define similarly the eye mask for the accumulated M-TX signal in HS-G4. The accumulated M-TX signal in HS-G4 is defined after the reference package and reference channel equalizer. The midpoints of $T_{EYE\_HS\_G3\_TX}$ and $T_{EYE\_HS\_G4\_TX}$ are located at $UI_{HS}/2$. The absolute value of the HS-TX differential output voltage signal shall be larger than $V_{DIF\_AC\_HS\_G3\_TX}$ or $V_{DIF\_AC\_HS\_G4\_TX}$ at the midpoint of $T_{EYE\_HS\_G3\_TX}$ or $T_{EYE\_HS\_G4\_TX}$,

respectively. The accumulated eye diagram of an HS-TX in HS-G3 or in HS-G4 shall conform to the HS-G3 and HS-G4 eye diagram mask.

423 The parameters shown in ***Figure 37*** and ***Figure 38*** are based on the accumulated eye for the target *BER*, where the total transmit jitter TJ_{TX} is defined around the mean of the zero crossings of the differential HS-TX output voltage signal.

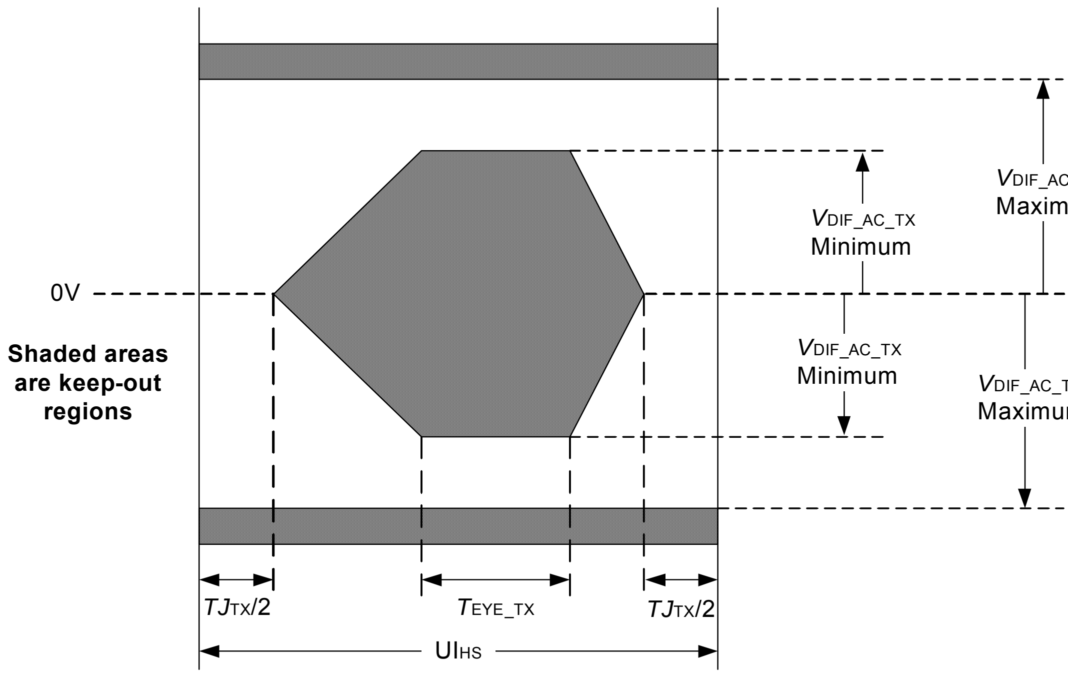


Figure 37 HS-G1 and HS-G2 Differential Transmit Eye Diagram

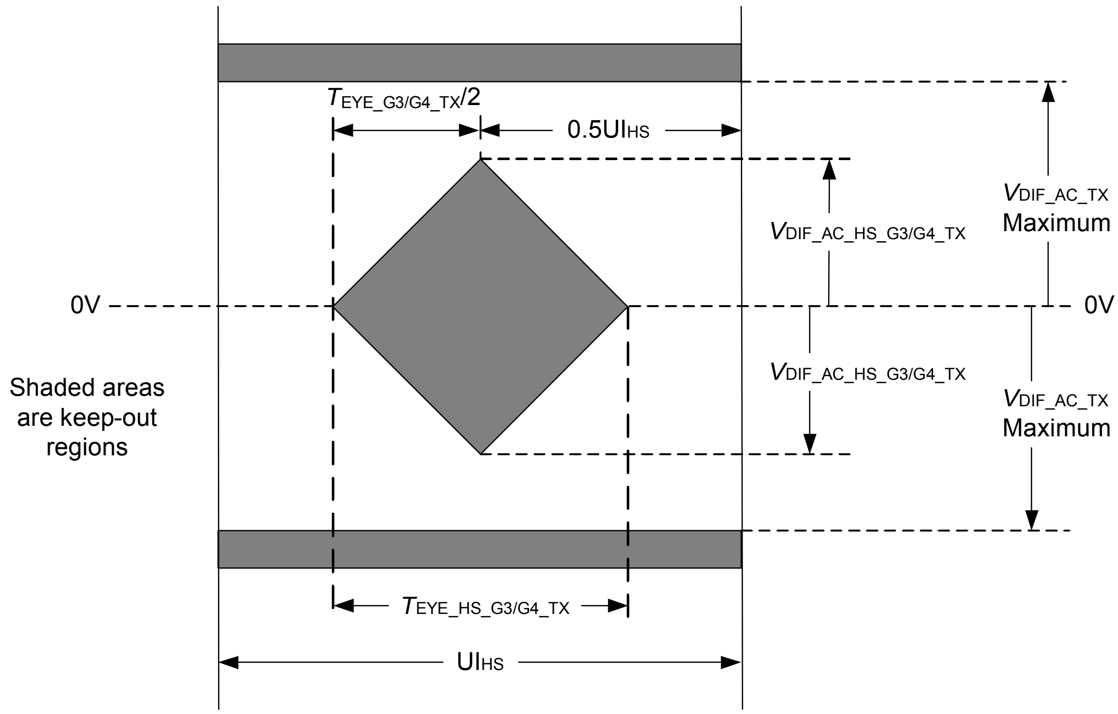


Figure 38 HS-G3 and HS-G4 Differential Transmitter Eye Diagram

5.1.2.10 Power Spectral Magnitude Limit

424 A power spectral magnitude limit is defined for the common-mode interference spectrum. A method of acquiring the common-mode interference spectrum of an HS-TX is also defined.

5.1.2.10.1 Common-mode Power Spectral Magnitude Limit

425 The common-mode interference spectrum of the HS-TX is impacted by the intra-lane timing skew and gain mismatches of the output signals at the TXDP and TXDN PINs. Slew rate control is an effective means of limiting electromagnetic interference (EMI) of an HS-TX. The level of interference, quantified by the power spectral density measured at TXDP and TXDN, can be controlled by the slew rate of the HS-TX signal waveform. Smaller slew rates result in a significant suppression of high frequency content of the HS-TX output power spectral density. The slew rate limit is application specific and interconnect dependent.

426 A common-mode power spectral magnitude limit is defined along with a method of generating the spectra of an HS-TX.

427 The common-mode power spectral magnitude limit $PSML_{CM1\_TX}$ for HS-G1 is shown in ***Figure 39*** and defined by:

$$PSML_{CM1\_TX} = -180 - (14.3\log_{10}(f \times 10^3) - 159) \qquad \text{(Equation 18)}$$

428 where f ranges between f_{HS_MIN} to $4*f_{HS\_MAX}$ in MHz.

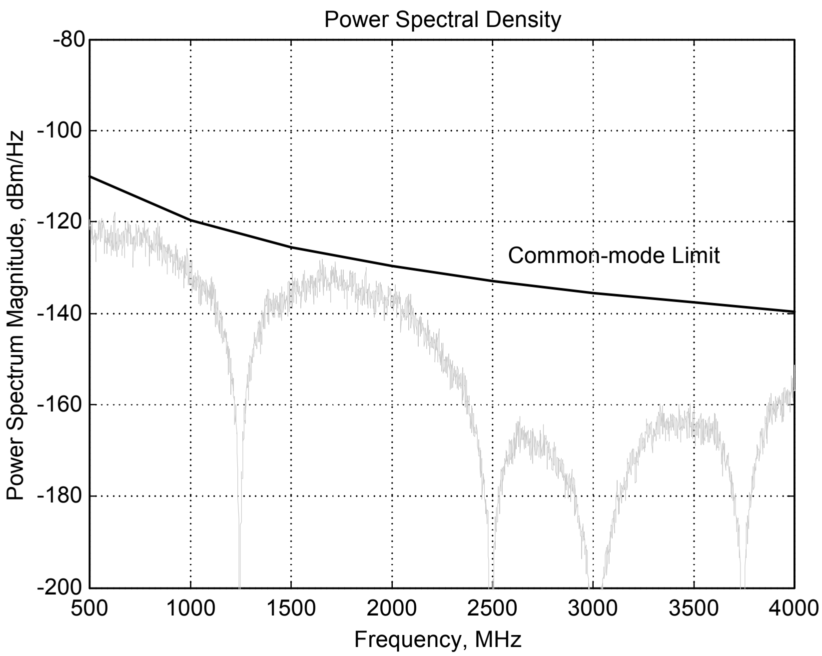
429 For HS-G2 or above, common-mode power spectral magnitude limit $PSML_{CM2\_TX}$ is defined by:

$$PSML_{CM2\_TX} = -235 - (5.0\log_{10}(f \times 10^3) - 159) \qquad \text{(Equation 19)}$$

430 where f ranges between f_{HS_MIN} to $4*f_{HS\_MAX}$ in MHz.

431 $PSML_{CM1\_TX}$ can be achieved by proper slew-rate control as well as by conforming to the limits of intra-lane timing skew, output resistance mismatch and output signal amplitude. $PSML_{CM2\_TX}$ assumes additional package isolation as compared to $PSML_{CM1\_TX}$. Furthermore, specific package isolation and victim-aggressor geometry should be considered in order to minimize interference. An M-TX should conform to $PSML_{CM1\_TX}$ or $PSML_{CM2\_TX}$. Spurs may violate $PSML_{CM1\_TX}$ or $PSML_{CM2\_TX}$ outside the radio bands of interest. RATE Series A or B can be selected in order to minimize the interference.

432 For illustration purposes the common-mode power-spectral density of an 8b10b coded common-mode interference signal (gray curve) is also shown in ***Figure 39***. This curve does not show the spurs at the fundamental frequency nor at the harmonics of the data signal.



Common-Mode Limit

F, MHz	Limit, dBm/Hz
500	-109.9
1000	-119.8
1500	-125.6
2000	-129.7
2500	-132.9
3000	-135.5
3500	-137.7
≥4000	-139.6

Figure 39 Common-mode Power Spectral Magnitude Limit

5.1.2.10.2 Spectrum Generation Method

433 The method of acquiring the common-mode interference spectrum of an HS-TX can be applied both in simulation and measurement. The method is described in the following list:

434 • The operating condition of the HS-TX should be chosen such that it results in the maximum amplitude for the selected amplitude setting when the M-TX is terminated with a reference load R_{REF_RT}. In case the HS-TX is operated with Small Amplitude, the temperature, supply voltage, and process should be selected to result in a maximum HS-TX amplitude. This does not imply that the investigation has to be performed with Large Amplitude instead of Small Amplitude.

435 • A continuous CRPAT test pattern should be used, where regular signal sequences may be used.

436 • The HS-TX common-mode signal $V_{CM\_TX}(t)$ is calculated from the $V_{TXDP}(t)$ and $V_{TXDN}(t)$ signals.

437 • A load of 50 Ω is assumed for power calculation.

438 • The FFT of the common-mode signal with a Hamming window results in the interference spectrum, which has to be adjusted for the relevant bandwidth, is defined by:

$$PSD = 10\log_{10}\left(\frac{2 \times abs(FFT(x))^2}{f_s \times S}\right) + 10\log_{10}\left(\frac{1/R}{10^{-3}}\right) \qquad \text{(Equation 20)}$$

where

439 • x = signal to analyze
440 • fs = sampling frequency
441 • S = sum(Hamming window^2), is the Hamming window correction factor
442 • R = 50 Ω (assumes an ideal probe antenna placed at the midpoint of the M-TX outputs)

5.1.2.11 Transmitter Frequency Offset

443 The transmitter frequency offset f_{OFFSET_TX} is defined as the difference of the actual HS-TX frequency from the nominal HS-TX frequency f_{HS}. f_{OFFSET_TX} is defined at the zero crossings of the differential HS-TX output signal when driving a test pattern into a reference load R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. The transmitter frequency offset of an HS-TX shall conform with the limits of f_{OFFSET_TX}. Modulation of the transmitter frequency (e.g., by spread spectrum clocking) is not intended.

5.1.2.12 HS-TX Parameters

444 The electrical and timing parameters specific to an HS-TX are summarized in ***Table 16***. Other than parameters $V_{DIF\_AC\_HS\_G3\_TX}$ and $T_{EYE\_HS\_G3\_TX}$, the HS-TX parameters are defined at the M-TX pins without de-emphasis. A channel with negligible loss or de-embedding method may be used to obtain the measurements of all other timing, slew-rate and jitter parameters.

Table 16 HS-TX Parameters

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
HS-TX Electrical				
$V_{DIF\_AC\_HS\_G3\_TX}$	40		mV	Differential TX AC voltage in HS-G3. Defined for a reference channel, R_{REF_RT} and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.2.9***.
$V_{DIF\_AC\_HS\_G4\_TX}$	40		mV	Differential TX AC voltage in HS-G4. Defined for a reference channel, R_{REF_RT} and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.2.9***.
HS-TX Timing				
$T_{F\_HS\_TX}$[1]	0.1		UI_{HS}	Fall time. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] and test pattern[4]. See ***Section 5.1.2.1***.
$T_{R\_HS\_TX}$[1]	0.1		UI_{HS}	Rise time. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] and test pattern[4]. See ***Section 5.1.2.1***.
SR_{DIF_TX}[MAX]	0.9		V/ns	Maximum slew rate. Defined in HS-G1 for $V_{DIF\_DC\_SA\_RT\_TX}$[5], R_{REF_RT}[6], and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.2.2***.
SR_{DIF_TX}[MIN]		0.35	V/ns	Minimum slew rate. Defined in HS-G1 for $V_{DIF\_DC\_SA\_RT\_TX}$[5], R_{REF_RT}[6], and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.2.2***.
ΔSR_{DIF_TX}	1	30	%	Resolution of slew rate states. Defined in HS-G1 for $V_{DIF\_DC\_SA\_RT\_TX}$[5], R_{REF_RT}[6], and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.2.2***.
$T_{INTRA\_SKEW\_TX}$	-0.06	0.06	UI_{HS}	Intra-lane output skew. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.2.3***.

Table 16 HS-TX Parameters (continued)

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
T_{PULSE_TX}	0.9		UI_{HS}	Transmitter pulse width. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.2.6***.
HS-TX Resistance				
ΔR_{SE_TX}	-6	6	Ω	Output resistance mismatch. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] when driving DIF-N and DIF-P. See ***Section 5.1.2.5***.
HS-TX Jitter				
T_{EYE_TX}	0.2		UI_{HS}	Transmitter eye opening in HS-G1 and HS-G2[7]. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] and CRPAT over a statistical confident record set[8]. See ***Section 5.1.2.9***.
$T_{EYE\_HS\_G3\_TX}$	0.55		UI_{HS}	Transmitter eye opening in HS-G3. Defined for a Reference Channel, R_{REF_RT}[2] and CRPAT over a statistical confident record set[8]. See ***Section 5.1.2.9***.
$T_{EYE\_HS\_G4\_TX}$	0.5		UI_{HS}	Transmitter eye opening in HS-G4. Defined for a Reference Channel, R_{REF_RT}[2] and CRPAT over a statistical confident record set[8]. See ***Section 5.1.2.9***.
$DJ_{TX}(\delta\delta)$		0.15	UI_{HS}	Transmitter deterministic jitter[9]. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] and CRPAT for a statistical confident record set[8,10]. See ***Section 5.1.2.7***.
TJ_{TX}		0.32	UI_{HS}	Transmitter total jitter[9]. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] and CRPAT for a statistical confident record set[8,10]. See ***Section 5.1.2.7***.
$STDJ_{TX}(\delta\delta)$		0.10	UI_{HS}	Transmitter short term deterministic jitter[9]. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] and CRPAT for a statistical confident record set[10,11]. See ***Section 5.1.2.7***.
$STTJ_{TX}$		0.20	UI_{HS}	Transmitter short term total jitter[9]. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] and CRPAT for a statistical confident record set[10,11]. See ***Section 5.1.2.7***.
f_{OFFSET_TX}	-2000	2000	ppm	Transmitter frequency offset. Defined for R_{REF_RT}[2] or R_{REF_NT}[3] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.2.11***.
HS-TX De-emphasis				
EQ_{1_TX}	2.5	4.5	dB	De-emphasis ratio defined for Small and Large Amplitude differential TX voltage. See ***Section 5.1.2.8***.
EQ_{2_TX}	5.0	7.0	dB	De-emphasis ratio defined for Large Amplitude differential TX voltage. See ***Section 5.1.2.8***.

1. *TR_HS_TX and TF_HS_TX are informative.*
2. *External reference load R_{REF_RT} and a reference impedance Z_{REF_RT} that conforms to SRL_{REF_RT}.*
3. *External reference load R_{REF_NT} and capacitances at TXDP and at TXDN within the limit of C_{PIN_RX}.*
4. *Repetitive sequence of D.30.3 symbols to be used for test. Such a sequence is part of CJTPAT.*
5. *Values are specified for Small Amplitude. For Large Amplitude the slew rate is a factor of 1.85 larger.*

6. *External reference load R_{REF_RT} and a reference impedance Z_{REF_RT} that conforms to SRL_{REF_RT}. The slew rate is only specified for when the M-TX is terminated. When the M-TX is not terminated, slew rate control is not strictly required due to smaller LINE power. However, slew rate control may also be used when the M-TX is not terminated, but in this case how the slew rate control performs is not specified.*
7. *For slower slew rate settings the transmitter eye mask may be violated.*
8. *Filtered using a high-pass jitter transfer function $H_{JTF}(s)$.*
9. *Accumulated jitter as defined by the dual-Dirac model.*
10. *Measured for the target BER.*
11. *Filtered using a1st order high-pass filter with a pole at f_{STJ_TX}.*

5.1.3 PWM-TX Characteristics

445 This section contains timing characteristics specific to a PWM-TX which are not covered by the common M-TX characteristics in ***Section 5.1.1***. The PWM signaling scheme is defined in ***Section 4.3.2***.

5.1.3.1 PWM Bit Duration, Bit Duration Tolerance, and Ratio

446 A PWM bit consists out of a DIF-N LINE state followed by a DIF-P LINE state, which are either signaled for the minor duration $T_{PWM\_MINOR\_TX}$ or for the major duration $T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_TX}$. The durations $T_{PWM\_MINOR\_TX}$ and $T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_TX}$ are defined as the time between the zero crossings of the differential output signal.

447 The PWM transmit bit duration T_{PWM_TX} is defined as the duration between zero crossings of two consecutive falling edges of a differential signal at the PWM-TX output. $T_{PWM\_MINOR\_TX}$, $T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_TX}$, and T_{PWM_TX} are shown in ***Figure 40***. The PWM transmit bit duration T_{PWM_TX} is for all PWM GEARs the sum of its durations $T_{PWM\_MINOR\_TX}$ and $T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_TX}$, as shown in the following equation:

$$T_{PWM\_TX} = T_{PWM\_MINOR\_TX} + T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_TX} \qquad \text{(Equation 21)}$$

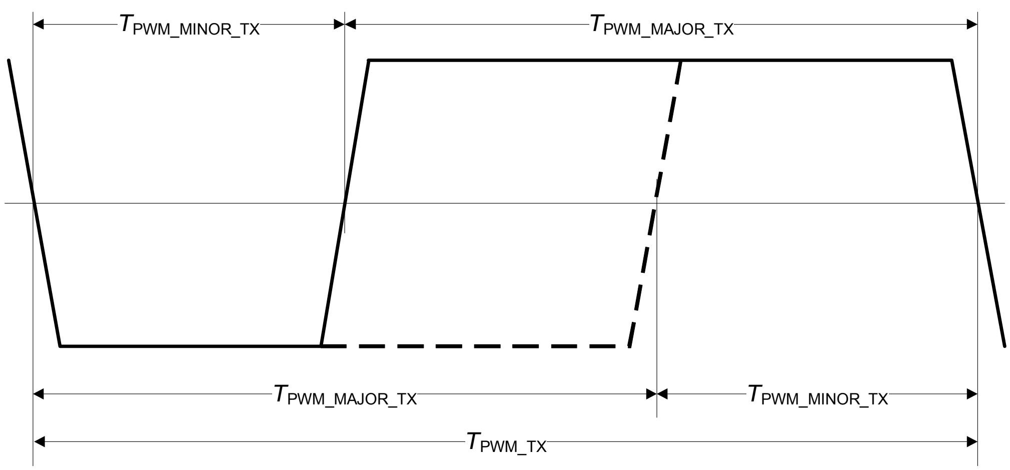


Figure 40 TX Minor and Major Duration in a PWM Signal

448 $T_{PWM\_MINOR\_TX}$ and $T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_TX}$ are determined by T_{PWM_TX} and the PWM transmit ratio k_{PWM_TX} for PWM-G1 and higher PWM GEARs. k_{PWM_TX} is defined as the ratio of $T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_TX}$ and $T_{PWM\_MINOR\_TX}$ of one PWM bit, as shown in the following equation:

$$k_{PWM\_TX} = \frac{T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_TX}}{T_{PWM\_MINOR\_TX}} \qquad \text{(Equation 22)}$$

449 For PWM-G0 the minor duration $T_{PWM\_G0\_MINOR\_TX}$ is directly specified. The range of $T_{PWM\_G0\_MINOR\_TX}$ is defined based on the minor duration in PWM-G1.

450 The PWM transmit bit duration tolerance, TOL_{PWM_TX}, is the allowed tolerance of an instantaneous PWM bit duration, $T_{PWM\_TX}(i)$, in PWM-MODE. TOL_{PWM_TX} is defined as the ratio of $T_{PWM\_TX}(i)$ and the average of N PWM transmit bit durations in PWM-MODE, as shown in the following equation:

$$TOL_{PWM\_TX} = \frac{T_{PWM\_TX}(i)}{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{j=1}^{N} T_{PWM\_TX}(j)} \qquad \text{(Equation 23)}$$

451 where N is a defined number of PWM bits, and i is in the range of 1 to N.

452 While the T_{PWM_TX} range is wide for a PWM GEAR, TOL_{PWM_TX} limits the variation of $T_{PWM\_TX}(i)$. In addition, a more restrictive transmit bit duration tolerance, $TOL_{PWM\_G1\_LR\_TX}$, is defined during LINE-READ in PWM-G1

453 $TOL_{PWM\_G1\_LR\_TX}$ is the allowed tolerance of $T_{PWM\_TX}(i)$ during a LINE-READ state in PWM-G1. $TOL_{PWM\_G1\_LR\_TX}$ is defined as the ratio of $T_{PWM\_TX}(i)$ and the average of N PWM transmit bit durations in PWM-MODE, similar to the TOL_{PWM_TX} definition in ***Equation 23***. $TOL_{PWM\_G1\_LR\_TX}$ is not defined for states other than LINE-READ during a PWM-BURST.

454 A PWM-TX shall output a PWM signal with PWM transmit bit duration, T_{PWM_TX}, in the specified range of the operational PWM-GEAR during a PWM-BURST. For PWM-G1 and higher GEARs the PWM transmit ratio k_{PWM_TX} shall be in the specified range for each PWM bit. For PWM-G0 the minor duration $T_{PWM\_G0\_MINOR\_TX}$ shall be in the specified range for each PWM bit.

455 A PWM-TX shall output a PWM signal with PWM transmit bit duration tolerance in the limits of TOL_{PWM_TX}.

456 A PWM-TX shall output a PWM signal with PWM transmit bit duration tolerance in the limits of $TOL_{PWM\_G1\_LR\_TX}$ during LINE-READ in PWM-G1.

5.1.3.2 Rise and Fall Time

457 The PWM-TX rise and fall times, $T_{R\_PWM\_TX}$ and $T_{F\_PWM\_TX}$, respectively, are defined as transition times between the 20% and 80% signal levels of the differential PWM-TX output signal with an amplitude of $V_{DIF\_DC\_TX}$, when driving a reference load R_{REF_NT}. The rise and fall times of a PWM-TX shall comply with the limits of $T_{R\_PWM\_TX}$ and $T_{F\_PWM\_TX}$.

5.1.3.3 LANE-to-LANE Skew

458 The PWM-TX LANE-to-LANE skew $T_{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_TX}$ is defined as the time between the zero crossings of the falling edges of the differential output signals $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ of any two PWM-TXs in one SUB-LINK, when both PWM-TX drive a test pattern into identical reference loads R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. The value of $T_{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_TX}$ is outside the scope of this document. If required, it shall be defined in the protocol specification.

5.1.3.4 PWM-TX Parameters

459 The timing parameters specific to a PWM-TX are summarized in ***Table 17***.

Table 17 PWM-TX Parameters

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
$T_{PWM\_G0\_TX}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{0.01}$	µs	PWM transmit bit duration in PWM-G0. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
$T_{PWM\_G1\_TX}$	$\frac{1}{9}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	µs	PWM transmit bit duration in PWM-G1. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
$T_{PWM\_G2\_TX}$	$\frac{1}{18}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	µs	PWM transmit bit duration in PWM-G2. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
$T_{PWM\_G3\_TX}$	$\frac{1}{36}$	$\frac{1}{12}$	µs	PWM transmit bit duration in PWM-G3. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
$T_{PWM\_G4\_TX}$	$\frac{1}{72}$	$\frac{1}{24}$	µs	PWM transmit bit duration in PWM-G4. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
$T_{PWM\_G5\_TX}$	$\frac{1}{144}$	$\frac{1}{48}$	µs	PWM transmit bit duration in PWM-G5. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
$T_{PWM\_G6\_TX}$	$\frac{1}{288}$	$\frac{1}{96}$	µs	PWM transmit bit duration in PWM-G6. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
$T_{PWM\_G7\_TX}$	$\frac{1}{576}$	$\frac{1}{192}$	µs	PWM transmit bit duration in PWM-G7. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
TOL_{PWM_TX}	0.90	1.10		PWM transmit bit duration tolerance. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT in PWM-MODE. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
$TOL_{PWM\_G1\_LR\_TX}$	0.97	1.03		PWM transmit bit duration tolerance during LINE-READ in PWM-G1. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] during LINE-READ. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
N	50	50		Number of PWM bits. Sequence length for TOL_{PWM_TX} and $TOL_{PWM\_G1\_LR\_TX}$. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
$T_{PWM\_G0\_MINOR\_TX}$	$\frac{1}{27}$	$\frac{1}{9}$	µs	PWM transmit minor duration in PWM-G0. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
k_{PWM_TX}	$\frac{0.63}{0.37}$	$\frac{0.72}{0.28}$		PWM transmit ratio for PWM-G1 and higher PWM GEARs. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.1***.
$T_{R\_PWM\_TX}$		0.070	T_{PWM_TX}	Rise time. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.2***.
$T_{F\_PWM\_TX}$		0.070	T_{PWM_TX}	Fall time. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and CRPAT. See ***Section 5.1.3.2***.

1. *External reference load R_{REF_NT} and capacitances at TXDP and at TXDN within the limit of C_{PIN_RX}. If terminated state is supported external reference load R_{REF_RT} and a reference impedance Z_{REF_RT} which conforms to SRL_{REF_RT} has to be verified additionally.*

5.1.4 SYS-TX Characteristics

460 This section contains timing characteristics specific to a SYS-TX which are not covered by the common M-TX characteristics in ***Section 5.1.1***.

5.1.4.1 Rise and Fall Times

461 The SYS-TX rise and fall times, $T_{R\_SYS\_TX}$ and $T_{F\_SYS\_TX}$, respectively, are defined as transition times between the 20% and 80% signal levels of the differential SYS-TX output signal, with an amplitude of $V_{DIF\_DC\_TX}$, when driving a repetitive D.30.3 symbol sequence into reference load R_{REF_NT}. The rise and fall times of a SYS-TX shall comply with the limits of $T_{R\_SYS\_TX}$ and $T_{F\_SYS\_TX}$.

5.1.4.2 LANE-to-LANE Skew

462 The SYS-TX LANE-to-LANE skew $T_{L2L\_SKEW\_SYS\_TX}$ is defined as the time between the zero crossings of the differential output signals $V_{DIF\_TX}(t)$ of any two SYS-TXs in one SUB-LINK, when both SYS-TX drive a test pattern into identical reference loads R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}. The value of $T_{L2L\_SKEW\_SYS\_TX}$ is outside the scope of this document. If required, it shall be defined in the protocol specification.

5.1.4.3 Data-to-Clock Skew

463 A system synchronous clocking scheme is used in the SYS-BURST mode, an example of which is shown in ***Figure 17***. Since the reference clock is not considered to be a part of an M-PORT, definition of the clock characteristics is outside the scope of this specification. Parameters like the reference clock frequency, the duty cycle distortion of the reference clock signal, or the rise and fall times of the reference clock signal have to be covered in the protocol specification utilizing the M-PHY technology.

464 The data-to-clock skew between the data signals of a SYS-TX and the reference clock signal has also to be defined in the protocol specification, such that no unnecessary limitations for the clocking scheme or system timing are put forth by this specification. This leaves maximum flexibility to the protocol specification, which only has to adhere to the zero crossing of the SYS-TX output signal, when it is driving a reference load R_{REF_RT} or R_{REF_NT}, as reference timing point for such a definition. The data-to-clock skew has to be defined for both SUB-LINKs. Interoperability in SYS-BURST mode thus has partly to be ensured by the protocol specification.

465 There might be applications for which a data-to-clock skew cannot be defined, e.g. in case of an external reference clock signal. In such a case, the propagation delay between the external reference clock signal and the SYS-TX data signals has to be defined in the protocol specification.

5.1.4.4 SYS-TX Parameters

466 The timing parameters specific to a SYS-TX are summarized in ***Table 18***.

Table 18 SYS-TX Parameters

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
$T_{R\_SYS\_TX}$		0.20	UI_{SYS}	Rise time. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and test pattern[2]. See ***Section 5.1.4.1***.
$T_{F\_SYS\_TX}$		0.20	UI_{SYS}	Fall time. Defined for R_{REF_NT}[1] and test pattern[2]. See ***Section 5.1.4.1***.

1. *External reference load R_{REF_NT} and capacitances at TXDP and at TXDN within the limit of C_{PIN_RX}. If terminated state is supported external reference load R_{REF_RT} and a reference impedance Z_{REF_RT} which conforms to SRL_{REF_RT} has to be verified additionally.*
2. *Repetitive sequence of D.30.3 symbols to be used for test. Such a sequence is part of CJTPAT.*

5.2 M-RX Characteristics

467 This document distinguishes three different operating modes and corresponding FUNCTIONs. Following the definition of the common M-RX electrical and timing characteristics, which apply to HS-RX, PWM-RX, and

SYS-RX, additional characteristics, which are specific to each receive FUNCTION, are defined in this section. The SQ-RX, which is an optional FUNCTION of an M-RX, is defined at the end of this section.

5.2.1 Common M-RX Characteristics

468 The common electrical and timing characteristics of an M-RX are defined in this section, which also contains the PIN and signal definitions. The common M-RX characteristics apply to the HS-RX, PWM-RX, and SYS-RX FUNCTIONs.

5.2.1.1 PIN, Signal, and Reference Characteristic Definitions

469 RXDP and RXDN are the input PINs of the M-RX. RXDP is defined as the positive input PIN and RXDN as the negative input PIN.

470 $V_{RXDP}(t)$ and $V_{RXDN}(t)$ are defined as the voltage signals at these PINs with respect to ground. V_{RXDP} and V_{RXDN} are defined as the voltage amplitudes of the $V_{RXDP}(t)$ and $V_{RXDN}(t)$ signals, respectively.

471 $I_{RXDP}(t)$ and $I_{RXDN}(t)$ are defined as the input currents flowing into RXDP and RXDN, respectively. I_{RXDP} and I_{RXDN} are defined as the current amplitudes of the $I_{RXDP}(t)$ and $I_{RXDN}(t)$ signals, respectively.

472 $I_{RXPN}(t)$ is defined as the current, which flows from RXDP to RXDN, in case the termination resistor is enabled. I_{RXPN} is defined as the current amplitude of $I_{RXPN}(t)$.

473 The PIN voltages and currents are shown in ***Figure 41***.

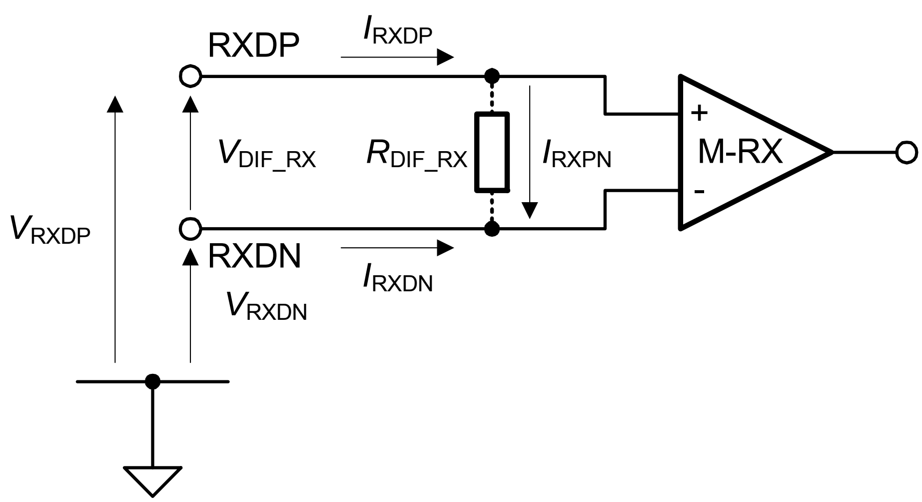


Figure 41 PIN Voltages and PIN Currents of an M-RX

474 The M-RX contains a differential line receiver that supports the detection of M-TX signals having Large Amplitude as well as Small Amplitude. An M-RX has to support only FUNCTIONs required for the targeted application. An M-RX may contain a switchable differential termination resistor R_{DIF_RX} between its input PINs RXDP and RXDN for improving the signal integrity. ***Section 4.7.2*** defines when R_{DIF_RX} shall be enabled or disabled. When R_{DIF_RX} is enabled, the M-RX is terminated, otherwise it is unterminated.

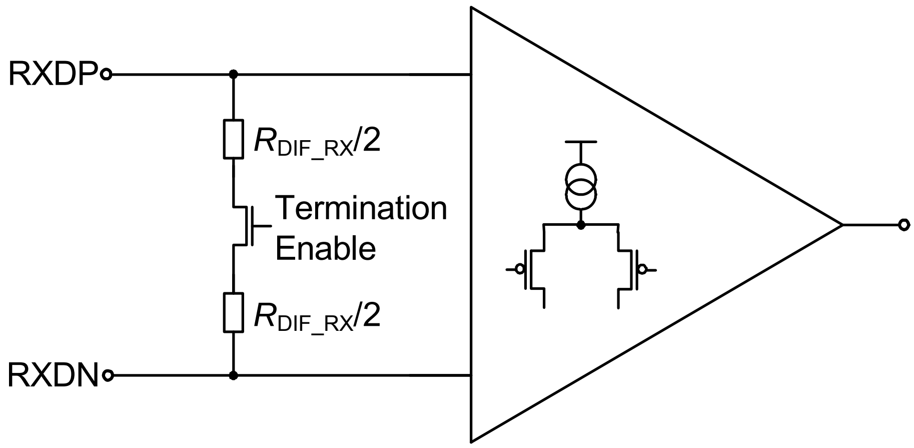


Figure 42 M-RX Implementation Example

475 A simplified diagram of an example implementation using a PMOS input stage is shown in ***Figure 42***. The common-mode voltage of the LINE has to remain in the common-mode voltage limits upon switching of the termination resistor. This is achievable through an AC ground at the center tap of the termination resistor, for example, by use of a capacitor.

476 To mitigate additional channel induced ISI at HS-G4 data rates, an HS-RX can utilize reference equalization in the form of a first-order continuous-time linear equalizer (CTLE) followed by a 1-tap decision feedback equalizer (DFE). The CTLE characteristics are defined by the following transfer function:

$$H(s) = \frac{A_{DC}\omega_{P1}\omega_{P2}}{\omega_z}\frac{s + \omega_z}{(s + \omega_{P1})(s + \omega_{P2})} \qquad \text{(Equation 24)}$$

477 where A_{DC} is the DC gain, $\omega = 2\pi f$, f_z, is the zero, f_{P1} is the first pole, and f_{P2} is the second pole. ***Figure 43*** shows various valid CTLE transfer function curves. ***Figure 42*** shows examples of CTLE frequency responses, when the CTLE parameters are chosen within the limits defined in ***Table 19***.

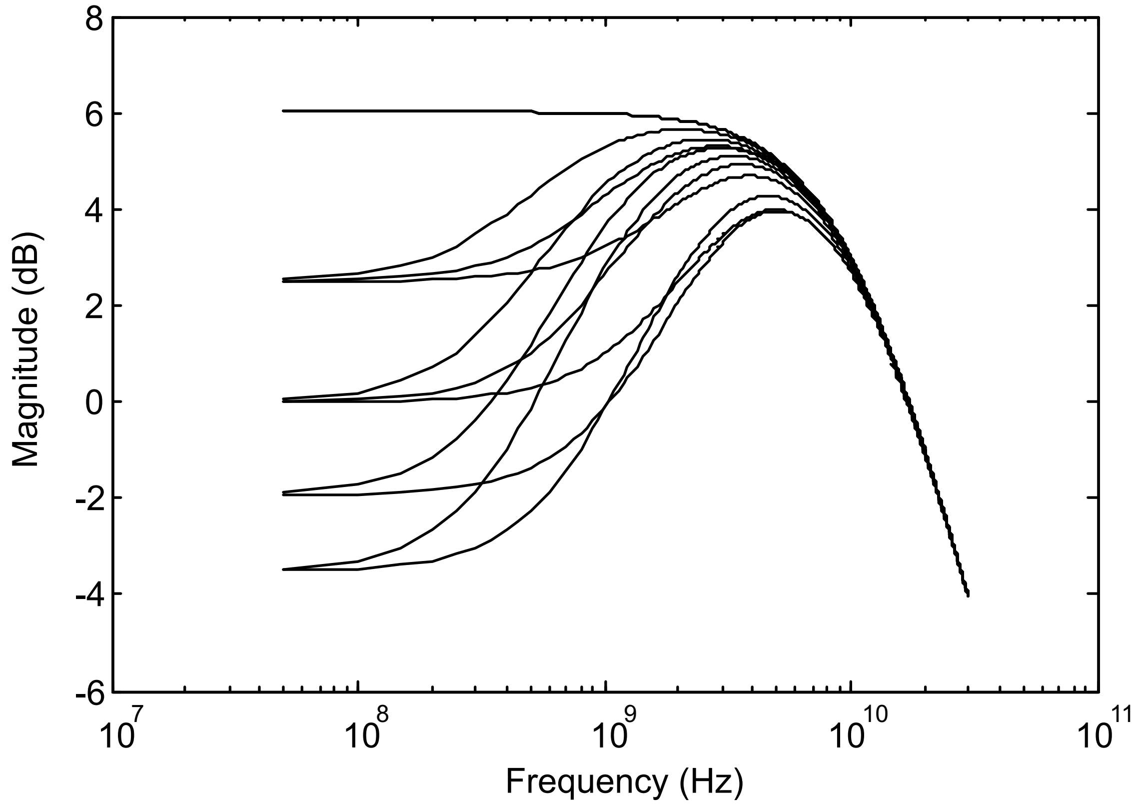


Figure 43 Examples of CTLE Frequency Responses

478 The DFE characteristics are defined by the following equation:

$$y_k = x_k - V_{DFE\_RX}$$
$$y_k = x_k - d_1 sgn(y_{k-1}) \quad \text{(Equation 25)}$$

479 where y_k is the output voltage signal of the DFE, x_k is the input voltage signal to the DFE, V_{DFE_RX} is the DFE feedback voltage signal, k is the sample index of a data bit and d_1 is the DFE feedback coefficient. ***Figure 44*** illustrates the Reference DFE diagram.

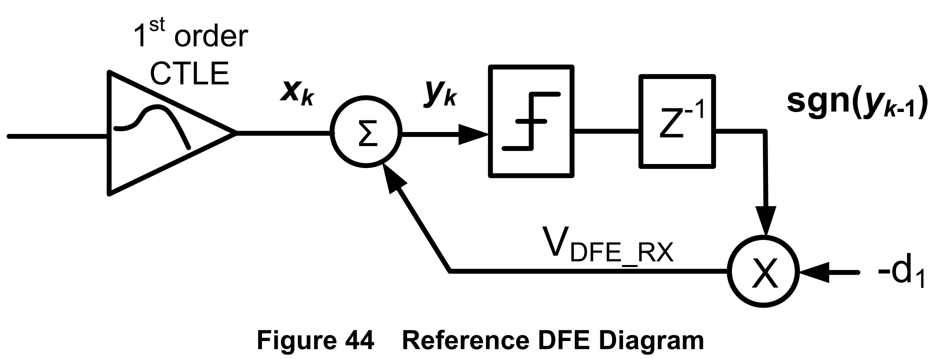


Figure 44 Reference DFE Diagram

480 The sinusoidal jitter tolerance of an M-RX in HS-MODE is specified by means of a sinusoidal jitter tolerance mask with a corner frequency $f_{C\_HS\_RX}$. Jitter is integrated up to the upper RX cut-off frequency f_{U_RX}. The lower cut-off frequency f_{SJ4_RX} is defined for the short term jitter of an M-RX. $f_{C\_HS\_RX}$ is also the corner frequency of the receiver jitter tolerance.

481 Discrete test frequencies $f_{C\_HS\_RX}$, f_{SJ2_RX}, f_{SJ3_RX} and f_{SJ4_RX} are defined for the sinusoidal jitter tolerance. f_{SJ3_RX} is the system clock frequency of the chip, which in case of a Type-II M-PORT may be different than f_{SYS_REF}.

482 The jitter is defined for a *BER* of 10^{-12} according to ***[INC01]***[2]. The mean (μ) of the distribution function is located at 0.

483 The reference parameters for the M-RX are summarized in ***Table 19***.

Table 19 M-RX Reference Parameters

Symbol	Values			Unit	Description
	Min.	Nom.	Max.		
Frequency					
f_{U_RX}		$\frac{1}{2UI_{HS}}$		Hz	Upper frequency for jitter tolerance.
$f_{C\_HS\_G1\_RX}$		2.0		MHz	Corner frequency of sinusoidal jitter tolerance mask in HS-G1.
$f_{C\_HS\_G2\_RX}$		4.0		MHz	Corner frequency of sinusoidal jitter tolerance mask in HS-G2.
$f_{C\_HS\_G3\_RX}$		8.0		MHz	Corner frequency of sinusoidal jitter tolerance mask in HS-G3.
$f_{C\_HS\_G4\_RX}$		8.0		MHz	Corner frequency of sinusoidal jitter tolerance mask in HS-G4.
f_{SJ0_RX}		$\frac{f_{C\_HS\_RX}}{10}$		MHz	Lower test frequency for sinusoidal tolerance.
f_{SJ2_RX}		10		MHz	Test frequency for sinusoidal jitter.
f_{SJ3_RX}		f_{SYSTEM}		Hz	Test frequency for sinusoidal jitter. Frequency of system clock.
f_{SJ4_RX}		$\frac{1}{30UI_{HS}}$		Hz	Test frequency for sinusoidal jitter.
Limit for *BER*					
Q_{BER}		7.0345			Q-factor for a *BER* of 10^{-12}
BER			10^{-12}		Target *BER*
HS-RX Reference Equalizer					
A_{AC}			6	dB	CTLE AC gain
A_{DC}	-4		6	dB	CTLE DC gain
f_Z[1]	0.4		1.2	GHz	CTLE zero frequency
f_{P2}			10	GHz	CTLE second pole frequency
V_{DFE_RX}	-60		60	mV	DFE feedback voltage signal

1. *f_{P1} is determined by other parameters: $f_{P1} = f_Z * 10^{((A_{AC} - A_{DC})/20)}$*

2. *The BER is changed from 10^{-10} to 10^{-12} in M-PHY v4.1. Other jitter definitions remain unchanged. The change in BER is tightening the M-TX jitter requirements.*

5.2.1.2 Differential and Common-mode Voltage

484 The differential input voltage signal $V_{DIF\_RX}(t)$ is defined as the difference of the voltage signals $V_{RXDP}(t)$ and $V_{RXDN}(t)$ at the M-RX PINs. V_{DIF_RX} is defined as the amplitude of $V_{DIF\_RX}(t)$. $V_{DIF\_RX}(t)$ can be calculated from the following equation:

$$V_{DIF\_RX}(t) = V_{RXDP}(t) - V_{RXDN}(t) \quad \text{(Equation 26)}$$

485 The minimum value of V_{DIF_RX} defines the minimum differential voltage amplitude of a test pattern an M-RX has to receive while the maximum value of V_{DIF_RX} defines the maximum differential voltage amplitude of a test pattern an M-RX has to receive.

486 The receiver common-mode voltage signal $V_{CM\_RX}(t)$ is defined as the arithmetic mean value of the voltage signals $V_{RXDP}(t)$ and $V_{RXDN}(t)$ when a test pattern is applied at the M-RX input PINs. V_{CM_RX} is defined as the amplitude of $V_{CM\_RX}(t)$. $V_{CM\_RX}(t)$ can be calculated from the following equation:

$$V_{CM\_RX}(t) = \frac{V_{RXDP}(t) + V_{RXDN}(t)}{2} \quad \text{(Equation 27)}$$

487 The V_{CM_RX} parameter values are defined such that they cover DC deviations, which can, e.g., be caused by a ground shift between an M-TX and an M-RX or by an output signal mismatch of the M-TX.

488 An M-RX shall detect a differential input signal at its RXDP and RXDN PINs with a differential voltage amplitude in the range of V_{DIF_RX} and with common-mode voltage in the range of V_{CM_RX}.

5.2.1.3 Termination Resistance

489 An M-RX may contain a switchable differential termination resistor R_{DIF_RX}. R_{DIF_RX} is defined by the ratio of the difference of the PIN voltage amplitudes V_{RXDP} and V_{RXDN} and the current amplitude I_{RXPN}, which flows from RXDP to RXDN, when the differential input voltage amplitude and the receiver common-mode voltage are both in the range of V_{DIF_RX} and V_{CM_RX}, respectively.

490 R_{DIF_RX} can be calculated from the following equation:

$$R_{DIF\_RX} = \frac{V_{RXDP} - V_{RXDN}}{I_{RXPN}} \quad \text{(Equation 28)}$$

491 The termination resistance shall conform with the limits of R_{DIF_RX}.

5.2.1.4 Differential Termination Switching Time

492 If an M-RX contains a differential termination resistor, it detects from the LINE state, when R_{DIF_RX} has to be enabled or disabled, as defined in ***Section 4.7.2***.

493 The differential termination enable time, $T_{TERM\_ON\_HS\_RX}$, $T_{TERM\_ON\_PWM\_RX}$ or $T_{TERM\_ON\_SYS\_RX}$ (see ***Figure 16*** for HS example), is defined as the time from the zero crossing of the triggering DIF-N to DIF-P transition until the time when the differential input voltage reaches the evaluation level $V_{TERM\_ON\_EVAL}$, where $V_{TERM\_ON\_EVAL}$ is defined as the 20% level of the voltage difference when the M-RX is not terminated and when the M-RX is terminated, as shown by the following equation:

$$V_{TERM\_ON\_EVAL} = V_{DIF\_RT\_RX} + 0.2(V_{DIF\_NT\_RX} - V_{DIF\_RT\_RX}) \quad \text{(Equation 29)}$$

494 The differential termination enable time shall conform with the limit of the appropriate PREPARE time in ***Table 7***.

495 R_{DIF_RX} is disabled through different triggering events for the HS-MODE, the PWM-MODE, and the SYS-MODE. This results in three different definitions of the differential termination disabled time. All

termination disable times are defined using an evaluation level $V_{TERM\_OFF\_EVAL}$, which is defined as the 80% level of the voltage difference when the M-RX is not terminated and when the M-RX is terminated, as shown by the following equation:

$$V_{TERM\_OFF\_EVAL} = V_{DIF\_RT\_RX} + 0.8(V_{DIF\_NT\_RX} - V_{DIF\_RT\_RX}) \quad \text{(Equation 30)}$$

496 In HS-MODE, the differential termination disable time, $T_{TERM\_OFF\_HS\_RX}$, is defined as the time starting after TOB until the time when the differential input voltage reaches $V_{TERM\_OFF\_EVAL}$. The differential termination disable time shall conform with the limit defined by RX_Min_STALL_NoConfig_Time_Capability in HS-MODE.

497 In PWM-MODE, the differential termination disable time, $T_{TERM\_OFF\_PWM\_RX}$, is defined as the time starting after TOB until the time when the differential input voltage reaches $V_{TERM\_OFF\_EVAL}$. The differential termination disable time shall conform with the limit defined by RX_Min_SLEEP_NoConfig_Time_Capability in PWM-MODE.

498 In SYS-MODE, the differential termination disable time, $T_{TERM\_OFF\_SYS\_RX}$, is defined as the time starting after TOB until the time when the differential input voltage reaches $V_{TERM\_OFF\_EVAL}$. The differential termination disable time shall conform with the limit defined by RX_Min_SLEEP_NoConfig_Time_Capability in SYS-MODE.

5.2.1.5 Return Loss

499 The receiver return loss parameter is based on a mixed-mode S-parameter matrix. The single ended S-parameters are characterized using the reference impedance $R_{REF\_RT}/2$.

500 The characterization can be done with a setup, illustrated in ***Figure 45***. VC denotes the common-mode voltage whereas VD denotes the differential voltage.

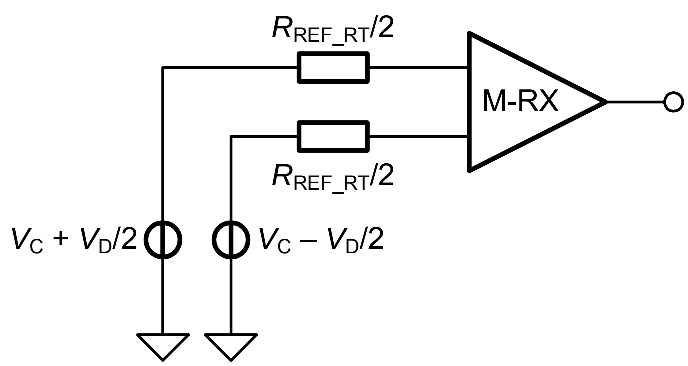
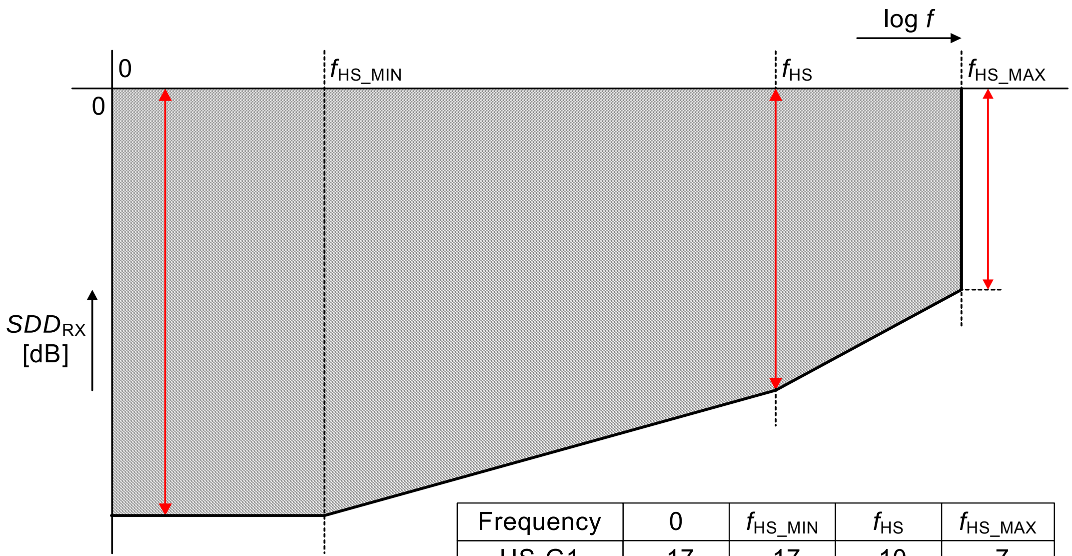


Figure 45 Measurement Setup for M-RX Return Loss

501 The differential receiver return loss, SDD_{RX}, is defined for an M-RX with the termination resistor enabled. SDD_{RX} is defined at the PINs such that it includes contributions from the on-chip circuitry as well as from the package. When the M-RX is not terminated, the PIN capacitance should be limited by C_{PIN_RX}.

502 The SDD_{RX} is considered to be informative. The SDD_{RX} template is shown in ***Figure 46*** along with the return loss values at certain corner frequencies f_{HS_MIN}, f_{HS} and f_{HS_MAX}, which are defined in ***Section 5.1.1.1***. The differential receiver return loss of an M-RX should conform with the specification limits of SDD_{RX}.



Frequency	0	f_{HS_MIN}	f_{HS}	f_{HS_MAX}
HS-G1	-17	-17	-10	-7
HS-G2	-17	-17	-4.8	-3
HS-G3	-13	-13	-3.8	-2
HS-G4	-11	-11	-2.2	-1

Figure 46 Template for Differential Receiver Return Loss SDD_{RX}

5.2.1.6 Common M-RX Parameters

503 The common electrical and timing parameters of an M-RX are summarized in ***Table 20***.

Table 20 Common M-RX Parameters

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
M-RX Electrical				
$V_{DIF\_RT\_RX}$	60	310	mV	Differential RX voltage amplitude in terminated state. Defined for CJTPAT[1]. See ***Section 5.2.1.2***.
$V_{DIF\_NT\_RX}$	120	620	mV	Differential RX voltage amplitude when the M-RX is not terminated. Defined for CJTPAT[1]. See ***Section 5.2.1.2***.
V_{CM_RX}	25	330	mV	RX common-mode voltage[2]. Defined for CJTPAT[1]. See ***Section 5.2.1.2***.
M-RX Resistance				
R_{DIF_RX}	80	110	Ω	Differential input resistance[3]. Defined over V_{DIF_RX} range. See ***Section 5.2.1.3***.

1. *Measurement based on accumulative eye diagram. Measurements are accomplished using the Compliant Jitter Tolerance Pattern (CJTPAT).*
2. *The values include a ground shift of ±50 mV between the M-TX and M-RX.*
3. *The tolerance for the minimum and the maximum of R_{DIF_RX} is different when a nominal resistance of 100 Ω is assumed. The reason for the 20 Ω decrease of the minimum is to cope with interconnect resistances below 50 Ω. However, for the maximum only an increase of 10 Ω is specified to limit the voltage drop over R_{DIF_RX}.*

5.2.2 HS-RX Characteristics

504 This section contains the electrical and timing characteristics specific to an HS-RX which are not covered by the common M-RX characteristics in ***Section 5.2.1***.

5.2.2.1 LANE-to-LANE Skew

505 The HS-RX LANE-to-LANE skew $T_{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_RX}$ is defined as the time between the zero crossings of the differential input signal $V_{DIF\_RX}(t)$ at any two HS-RXs in one SUB-LINK when test patterns are applied at both HS-RX PINs. The value of $T_{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_RX}$ is outside the scope of this document. If required, it shall be defined in the protocol specification.

5.2.2.2 Receiver Jitter Tolerance

506 The receiver total jitter tolerance, TJ_{RX}, is defined similarly to the transmitter total jitter, TJ_{TX}. The primary difference between TJ_{TX} and TJ_{RX} is that TJ_{TX} is a jitter characteristic and directly measured while TJ_{RX} is a jitter tolerance of HS-RX. TJ_{RX} is the sum of the receiver deterministic jitter tolerance, DJ_{RX}, and the receiver random jitter tolerance, RJ_{RX}, of the differential input signal $V_{DIF\_RX}(t)$. TJ_{RX} is defined for the required *BER* and is shown by the following equation:

$$TJ_{RX} = DJ_{RX} + RJ_{RX} \qquad \text{(Equation 31)}$$

507 TJ_{RX} and DJ_{RX} are defined relative to UI_{HS} over a frequency range from *DC* up to f_{U_RX}, whereas RJ_{RX} is defined over the frequency from $f_{C\_HS\_RX}$ to f_{U_RX}

508 The receiver short term total jitter tolerance, $STTJ_{RX}$, and the receiver short term deterministic jitter tolerance, $STDJ_{RX}$, are defined and limit the jitter within a $30UI_{HS}$ signal sequence. The short term jitter corresponds to high frequency jitter in the frequency domain. In practice, short term deterministic jitter is dominated by data dependent jitter DDJ_{RX} and crosstalk originating from the transmitter and the channel. $STTJ_{RX}$ is shown by the following equation:

$$STTJ_{RX} = STDJ_{RX} + STRJ_{RX} \qquad \text{(Equation 32)}$$

509 where $STRJ_{RX}$ is defined over the frequency range from f_{SJ4_RX} up to f_{U_RX}. $STDJ_{RX}$ can be a combination of DDJ_{RX} and short term sinusoidal jitter $STSJ_{RX}$. The frequency of $STSJ_{RX}$ is greater than f_{SJ4_RX}.

510 The receiver total short term jitter tolerance, $STTJ_{RX}$ is defined for the differential input signal $V_{DIF\_RX}(t)$ at the zero crossings and conforms to the accumulated differential input voltage amplitude $V_{DIF\_ACC\_RX}$ when a CJTPAT test pattern is applied at an HS-RX.

511 The receiver total jitter tolerance TJ_{RX} is defined for the differential input signal $V_{DIF\_RX}(t)$ at the zero crossings and conforms to the accumulated differential input voltage amplitude $V_{DIF\_ACC\_RX}$ when a CJTPAT test pattern is applied at an HS-RX.

512 The deterministic jitter tolerance, DJ_{RX}, can be expressed by the following equation:

$$DJ_{RX} = STDJ_{RX} + SJ_{RX}(f) \qquad \text{(Equation 33)}$$

513 A sinusoidal jitter tolerance mask is given in ***Figure 47***, which defines the sinusoidal jitter tolerance amplitude depending on frequency. The sinusoidal jitter is characterized by its oscillation frequency f_{SJ_RX} and its peak-to-peak amplitude, which is identical to the receiver sinusoidal jitter tolerance $SJ_{RX}(f)$. In practice sinusoidal jitter may or may not be present in an M-PHY LINK. However, sinusoidal jitter tolerance is a convenient method for quantifying the HS-RX behavior and its effective minimum jitter tracking bandwidth. The sinusoidal jitter tolerance $SJ_{RX}(f)$ is defined in two frequency regions that range from f_{SJ0_RX}

up to $f_{C\_HS\_RX}$ and from $f_{C\_HS\_RX}$ up to f_{SJ4_RX}. The low frequency sinusoidal jitter f_{SJ0_RX} is defined by the following equation:

$$f_{SJ0\_RX} = \frac{f_{C\_HS\_RX}}{10} \qquad \text{(Equation 34)}$$

514 For separate reference clock topologies, the sinusoidal jitter tolerance mask continues with the same minus 20 dB/dec slope below f_{SJ0_RX} as shown in ***Figure 47***. The sinusoidal jitter tolerance mask for shared reference clock topologies does not exceed SJ_{RX}(f) at f_{SJ0_RX} for frequencies below f_{SJ0_RX}. ***Table 19*** contains a list of frequencies for conformance testing. f_{SJ3_RX} is included in this list if it is within the range set by f_{SJ0_RX} and f_{SJ4_RX}. The jitter amplitudes are given in ***Table 21***. The reference clock jitter and M-RX PLL jitter are not explicitly defined. However, reference clock and M-RX PLL jitter characteristics are included in the receiver jitter tolerance.

515 An HS-RX shall tolerate a CJTPAT test pattern with a deterministic jitter tolerance DJ_{RX} onto which random jitter tolerance RJ_{RX} is superpositioned, where the value of RJ_{RX} is indirectly specified through ***Equation 31***.

516 An HS-RX shall tolerate a CJTPAT test pattern with short term deterministic jitter tolerance $STDJ_{RX}$ onto which short term random jitter tolerance $STRJ_{RX}$ is superpositioned, where the value of $STRJ_{RX}$ is indirectly specified through ***Equation 32***.

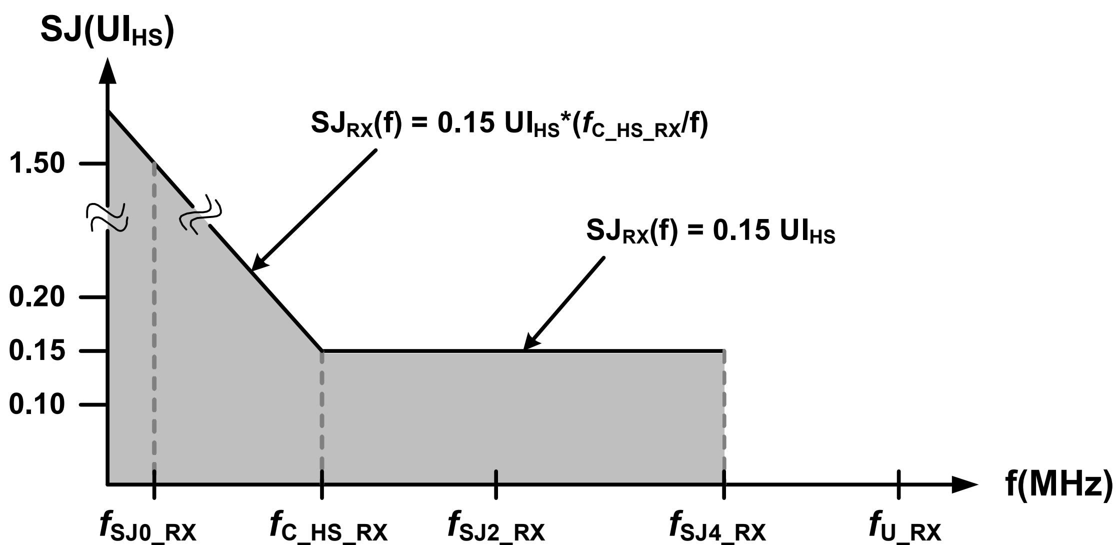


Figure 47 Sinusoidal Jitter Tolerance Mask

5.2.2.3 Receiver Eye Opening and Accumulated Differential Receiver Input Voltage

517 The minimum value of V_{DIF_RX}, as described in ***Section 5.2.1.2***, defines the minimum instantaneous differential input voltage amplitude at the M-RX PINs. In addition, the accumulated differential receiver input voltage $V_{DIF\_ACC\_RX}$ is defined as the minimum differential voltage amplitude within an accumulated eye diagram generated from a CJTPAT test pattern. $V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G1\_RX}$, $V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G2\_RX}$, $V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G3\_RX}$, and $V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G4\_RX}$ are the accumulated differential receiver input voltages for an HS-RX operated in HS-G1, HS-G2, HS-G3, and HS-G4, respectively. $V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G3\_RX}$ and $V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G4\_RX}$ are defined at the midpoint of the eye, $UI_{HS}/2$.

518 For HS-G1 and HS-G2, the receiver eye opening, T_{EYE_RX}, is defined as the duration over which the differential voltage amplitude has to be larger than $V_{DIF\_ACC\_RX}$ in the accumulated eye diagram generated from a CJTPAT test pattern. For HS-G3 and HS-G4, the receiver eye openings, $T_{EYE\_HS\_G3\_RX}$ and $T_{EYE\_HS\_G4\_RX}$, are defined as the duration over which no zero crossings of V_{DIF_RX}(t) are allowed in the

eye diagram generated from a CJTPAT test pattern. The total receiver jitter tolerance TJ_{RX} is defined as the duration between the earliest and latest zero crossing at one crossing point in the accumulated eye diagram as defined in ***Section 5.2.1.2***.

519 $V_{DIF\_ACC\_RX}$, T_{EYE_RX}, and $TJ_{RX}/2$ define the HS-G1 and HS-G2 eye mask for the accumulated M-RX signal as shown in ***Figure 48***. The absolute value of the HS-RX differential input voltage signal shall be larger than the lower limit of $V_{DIF\_ACC\_RX}$ over the receiver eye opening T_{EYE_RX} and the accumulated eye diagram shall conform with the eye diagram mask. The position of T_{EYE_RX} is centred in the middle of the eye.

520 $V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G3\_RX}$, $T_{EYE\_HS\_G3\_RX}$ and $TJ_{RX}/2$ define the HS-G3 eye mask for the accumulated M-RX signal as shown in ***Figure 43***. Similarly, $V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G4\_RX}$, $T_{EYE\_HS\_G4\_RX}$, and $TJ_{RX}/2$ define the HS-G4 eye mask. The absolute value of the HS-RX differential input voltage signal shall be larger than the lower limit of $V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G3\_RX}$ or $V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G4\_RX}$. Additionally, the accumulated eye diagram shall conform to the eye diagram mask. The position of $T_{EYE\_HS\_G3\_RX}$ and $T_{EYE\_HS\_G4\_RX}$ is centered in the middle of the eye.

521 An HS-RX shall receive an input signal at the RXDP and RXDN PINs which conforms to the limits of $V_{DIF\_ACC\_RX}$, T_{EYE_RX}, and TJ_{RX} for the respective HS-Gear. The accumulated eye diagram in HS-G4 shall be post-processed with the reference package and receiver reference equalizer. Definitions visualized in ***Figure 48*** and ***Figure 49*** are based on the accumulated eye for the target *BER*.

522 For conformance test, the accumulated eye diagram should closely meet the keep-out region of the eye mask but the accumulated eye diagram is not required to touch the keep-out region of the eye mask in all points.

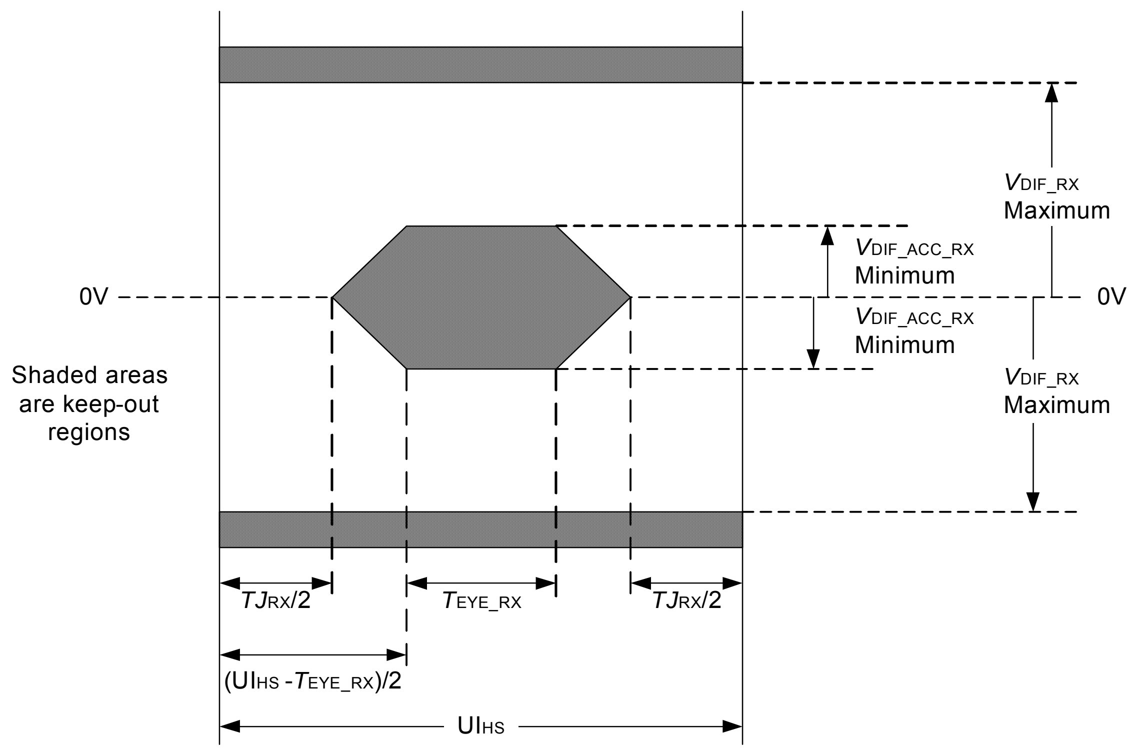


Figure 48 HS-G1 and HS-G2 Differential Receiver Eye Diagram

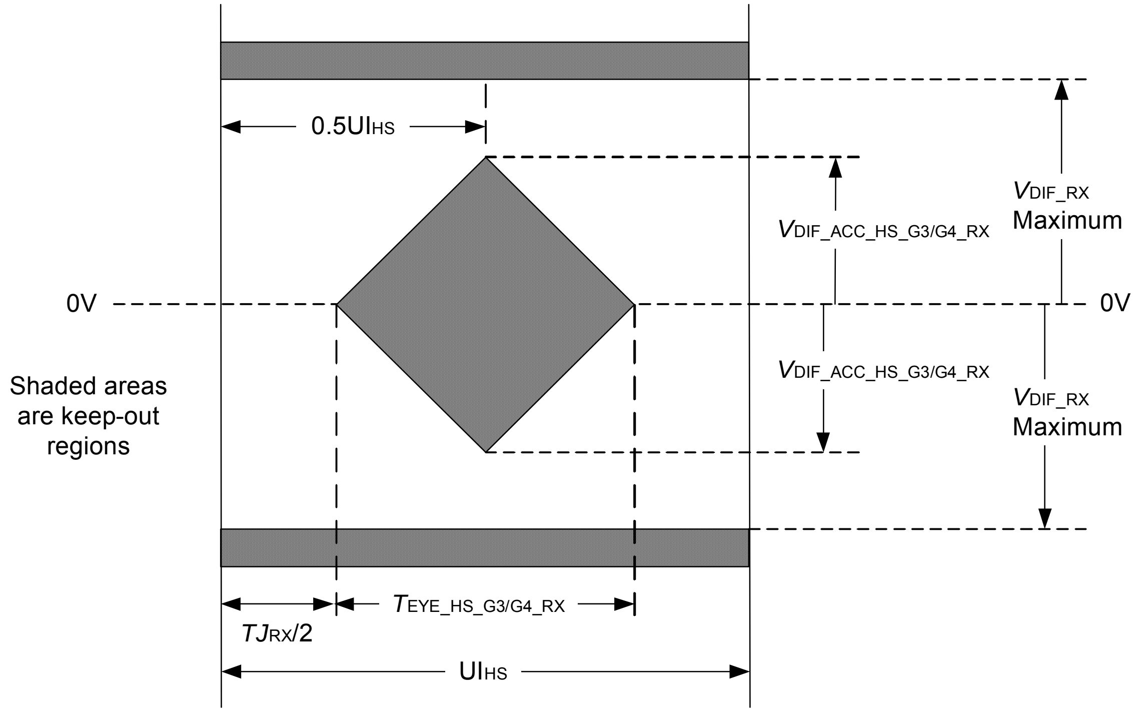


Figure 49 HS-G3 and HS-G4 Differential Receiver Eye Diagram

5.2.2.4 Receiver Pulse Width

523 The receiver pulse width, T_{PULSE_RX}, is defined as the minimum time between the zero crossings of the differential input signal $V_{DIF\_RX}(t)$ when a test pattern is applied at the RXDP and RXDN PINs of an HS-RX. T_{PULSE_RX} is shown in ***Figure 50*** for a DIF-P pulse. Each symbol should conform with the receiver pulse width in ***Figure 50*** to ensure reliable reception.

524 An HS-RX shall detect an input signal with a receiver pulse width that conforms with the limit of T_{PULSE_RX}.

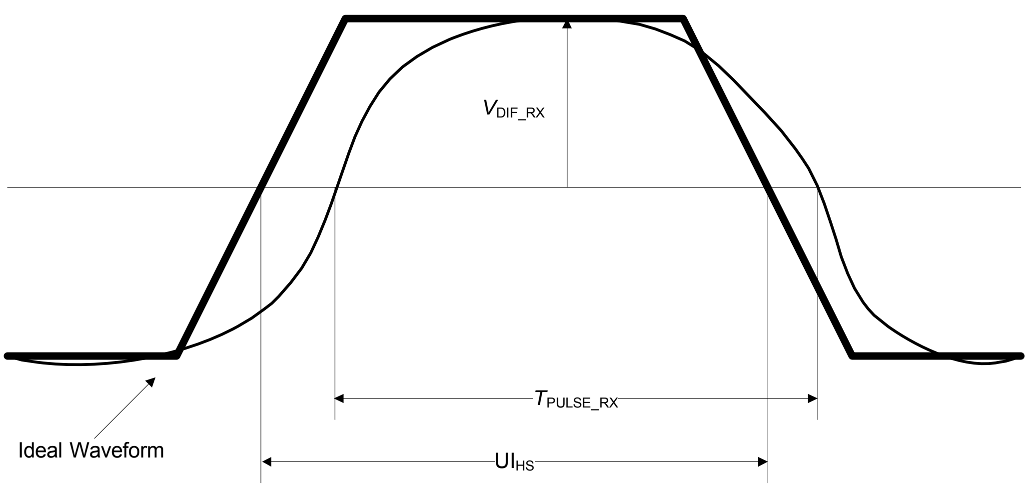


Figure 50 Receiver Pulse Width

5.2.2.5 HS-RX Parameters

525 The electrical and timing parameters of the HS-RX are summarized in ***Table 21***.

Table 21 HS-RX Parameters

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
HS-RX Electrical				
$V_{DIF\_ACC\_RX}$	40		mV	Accumulated differential receiver input voltage for HS-G1[1]. Defined for CJTPAT[2]. See ***Section 5.2.2.3***.
$V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G2\_RX}$	40		mV	Accumulated differential receiver input voltage for HS-G2[1]. Defined for CJTPAT[2]. See ***Section 5.2.2.3***.
$V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G3\_RX}$	40		mV	Accumulated differential receiver input voltage for HS-G3[1]. Defined for CJTPAT[2]. See ***Section 5.2.2.3***.
$V_{DIF\_ACC\_HS\_G4\_RX}$	40		mV	Accumulated differential receiver input voltage for HS-G4[1]. Defined for CJTPAT[2]. See ***Section 5.2.2.3***.
HS-RX Timing				
T_{EYE_RX}	0.20		UI_{HS}	Receiver eye opening. Defined for CJTPAT[2] over a statistical confident record set[4]. See ***Section 5.2.2.3***.
$T_{EYE\_HS\_G3\_RX}$	$1 - TJ_{RX}$		UI_{HS}	Receiver eye opening in HS-G3. Defined for CJTPAT[2] over a statistical confident record set[6]. See ***Section 5.2.2.3***.
$T_{EYE\_HS\_G4\_RX}$	$1 - TJ_{RX}$		UI_{HS}	Receiver eye opening in HS-G4. Defined for CJTPAT[2] over a statistical confident record set[6]. See ***Section 5.2.2.3***.
T_{PULSE_RX}	0.80		UI_{HS}	Receiver pulse width. Defined for CJTPAT[2]. See ***Section 5.2.2.4***.
HS-RX Jitter				
DJ_{RX}		0.35	UI_{HS}	Receiver deterministic jitter[3] over the frequency range from $f_{C\_HS\_RX}$ to f_{U_RX} which includes $STDJ_{RX}$. Defined for CJTPAT for a statistical confident record set[2,4,5]. See ***Section 5.2.2.2***.
$SJ_{RX}(f)$		0.15	UI_{HS}	Receiver sinusoidal jitter tolerance[3]. Defined for CJTPAT and frequency range from $f_{C\_HS\_RX}$ to f_{SJ4_RX}. See ***Section 5.2.2.2***.
		$\frac{0.15 \times f_{C\_HS\_RX}}{f}$	UI_{HS}	Receiver sinusoidal jitter tolerance[3]. Defined for CJTPAT and frequency range from f_{SJ0_RX} to $f_{C\_HS\_RX}$. See ***Section 5.2.2.2***.
$STDJ_{RX}$		0.20	UI_{HS}	Receiver deterministic jitter over the frequency range from f_{SJ4_RX} to f_{U_RX}. Defined for CJTPAT for a statistical confident record set[2,5,6]. See ***Section 5.2.2.2***.

Table 21 HS-RX Parameters (continued)

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
TJ_{RX}		0.52	UI_{HS}	Receiver total jitter tolerance[3] for galvanic interconnect without OMC[3]. Defined for CJTPAT and a statistical confident record set[2,4,5]. See ***Section 5.2.2.2***.
$STTJ_{RX}$		0.30	UI_{HS}	Receiver total jitter over the frequency range from f_{SJ4_RX} to f_{U_RX}. Defined for CJTPAT and a statistical confident record set[2,5,6]. See ***Section 5.2.2.2***.

1. *Measurement based on accumulative eye diagram.*
2. *The test has to be performed at the maximum data rate of the applicable HS-GEAR.*
3. *Accumulated jitter as defined by the jitter model in **Section 5.2.2.2**.*
4. *Filtered using a high-pass jitter transfer function $H_{JTF}(s)$.*
5. *Measured for the target BER.*
6. *Filtered using a1[st] order high-pass filter with a pole at f_{SJ4_RX}.*

5.2.3 PWM-RX Characteristics

526 This section contains the timing characteristics specific to a PWM-RX which are not covered by the common M-RX characteristics in ***Section 5.2.1***. The PWM signaling scheme is defined in ***Section 4.3.2***.

5.2.3.1 Accumulated Differential Receiver Input Voltage

527 The minimum value of V_{DIF_RX}, as described in ***Section 5.2.1.2***, defines the minimum instantaneous differential input voltage amplitude at the M-RX PINs. In addition, the accumulated differential receiver input voltage $V_{DIF\_ACC\_PWM\_RX}$ is defined as the minimum differential voltage amplitude within an accumulated eye diagram generated from a test pattern, when the PWM-RX is operated in PWM-G5, PWM-G6, or PWM-G7.

528 An PWM-RX operated in PWM-G5, PWM-G6, or PWM-G7 shall detect a differential input signal at the RXDP and RXDN PINs, where the accumulated differential input voltage amplitude conforms with the limit of $V_{DIF\_ACC\_PWM\_RX}$.

5.2.3.2 PWM Bit Duration, Bit Duration Tolerance, and Ratio

529 The PWM receive bit duration T_{PWM_RX} is defined as the duration between zero crossings of two consecutive falling edges of a differential signal at the PWM-RX input. $T_{PWM\_MINOR\_RX}$, $T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_RX}$, and T_{PWM_RX} are shown in ***Figure 51***. The PWM receive bit duration T_{PWM_RX} is, for all PWM GEARs, the sum of its durations $T_{PWM\_MINOR\_RX}$ and $T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_RX}$, as shown in the following equation:

$$T_{PWM\_RX} = T_{PWM\_MINOR\_RX} + T_{PWM\_MAJOR\_RX} \qquad \text{(Equation 35)}$$

530 The limits of T_{PWM_RX} are, for all PWM GEARs, identical to the limits of T_{PWM_TX}.

531

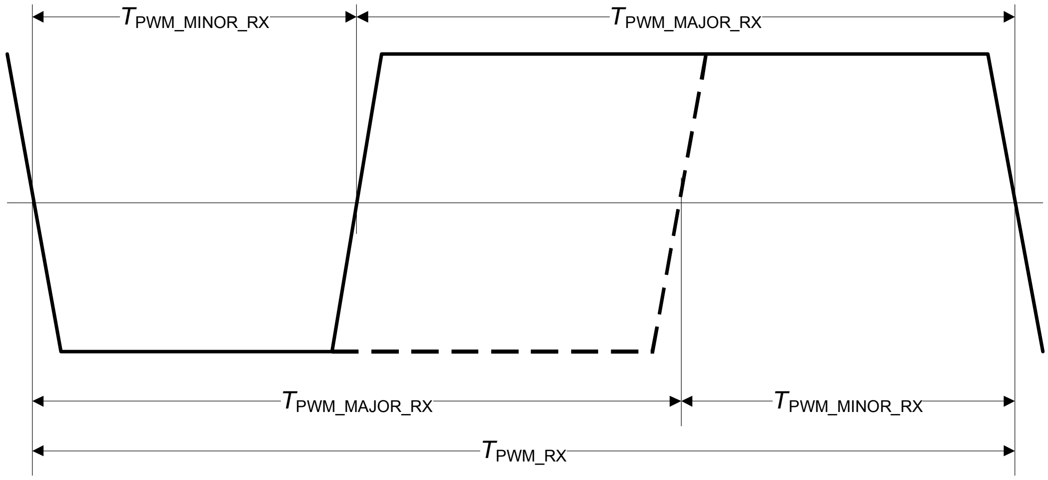


Figure 51 RX Minor and Major Duration in a PWM Signal

532 $T_{\text{PWM\_MINOR\_RX}}$ and $T_{\text{PWM\_MAJOR\_RX}}$ are determined by $T_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$ and the PWM receive ratio $k_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$ for PWM-G1 and higher PWM GEARs. $k_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$ is defined as the ratio of $T_{\text{PWM\_MAJOR\_RX}}$ and $T_{\text{PWM\_MINOR\_RX}}$ of one PWM bit, as shown in following equation:

$$k_{\text{PWM\_RX}} = \frac{T_{\text{PWM\_MAJOR\_RX}}}{T_{\text{PWM\_MINOR\_RX}}} \quad \text{(Equation 36)}$$

533 For PWM-G0, the minor duration $T_{\text{PWM\_G0\_MINOR\_RX}}$ is directly specified. The range of $T_{\text{PWM\_G0\_MINOR\_RX}}$ is defined based on the minor duration in PWM-G1.

534 The PWM receive bit duration tolerance, $TOL_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$, is the allowed tolerance of an instantaneous PWM bit duration, $T_{\text{PWM\_RX}}(i)$, in PWM-MODE. $TOL_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$ is defined as the ratio of $T_{\text{PWM\_RX}}(i)$ and the average of N PWM receive bit durations in PWM-MODE, as shown in the following equation:

$$TOL_{\text{PWM\_RX}} = \frac{T_{\text{PWM\_RX}}(i)}{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{j=1}^{N} T_{\text{PWM\_RX}}(j)} \quad \text{(Equation 37)}$$

535 where N is a defined number of PWM bits, and i is in the range of 1 to N.

536 While the $T_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$ range is wide for a PWM GEAR, $TOL_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$ limits the variation of $T_{\text{PWM\_RX}}(i)$ during PWM-MODE. In addition, a more restrictive receive bit duration tolerance, $TOL_{\text{PWM\_G1\_LR\_RX}}$, is defined during LINE-READ in PWM-G1.

537 $TOL_{\text{PWM\_G1\_LR\_RX}}$ is the allowed tolerance of $T_{\text{PWM\_RX}}(i)$ during a LINE-READ state in PWM-G1. $TOL_{\text{PWM\_G1\_LR\_RX}}$ is defined as the ratio of $T_{\text{PWM\_RX}}(i)$ and the average of N PWM receive bit durations in PWM-MODE, similar to the $TOL_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$ definition in ***Equation 37***. $TOL_{\text{PWM\_G1\_LR\_RX}}$ is not defined for states other than LINE-READ during a PWM-BURST.

538 A PWM-RX shall detect a PWM input signal with a PWM receive bit duration, $T_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$, in the specified range of the operational PWM GEAR during a PWM-BURST. For PWM-G1 and higher GEARs, the PWM receive ratio $k_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$ shall be in the specified range for each PWM bit. For PWM-G0, the minor duration $T_{\text{PWM\_G0\_MINOR\_RX}}$ shall be in the specified range for each PWM bit.

539 A PWM-RX shall detect a PWM input signal with PWM receive bit duration tolerance in the limits of $TOL_{\text{PWM\_RX}}$.

540 A PWM-RX shall detect a PWM input signal with PWM receive bit duration tolerance in the limits of $TOL_{PWM\_G1\_LR\_RX}$ during LINE-READ in PWM-G1.

5.2.3.3 Rise and Fall Time

541 The PWM-RX rise and fall times, $T_{R\_PWM\_RX}$ and $T_{F\_PWM\_RX}$, respectively, are defined as transition times between the 20% and 80% signal levels of the differential PWM-RX input signal with an amplitude of V_{DIF_RX}.

542 A PWM-RX shall detect a PWM input signal with rise and fall times that comply with the limits of $T_{R\_PWM\_RX}$ and $T_{F\_PWM\_RX}$.

5.2.3.4 LANE-to-LANE Skew

543 The PWM-RX LANE-to-LANE skew $T_{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_RX}$ is defined as the time between the zero crossings of the falling edges of the differential input signal $V_{DIF\_RX}(t)$ at any two PWM-RXs in one SUB-LINK when test patterns are applied at both PWM-RX PINs. The value of $T_{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_RX}$ is outside the scope of this document. If required, it shall be defined in the protocol specification.

5.2.3.5 PWM-RX Parameters

544 The timing parameters of the PWM-RX are shown in ***Table 22***.

Table 22 PWM-RX Parameters

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
PWM-RX Electrical				
$V_{DIF\_ACC\_PWM\_RX}$	40		mV	Accumulated differential RX voltage amplitude[1]. Defined for CJTPAT in PWM-G5, PWM-G6, and PWM-G7. See ***Section 5.2.3.1***.
$V_{DIF\_ACC\_RX}$	40		mV	Accumulated differential RX voltage amplitude[1]. Defined for CJTPAT in SYS-MODE, PWM-G0, PWM-G1, PWM-G2, PWM-G3, and PWM-G4. See ***Section 5.2.3.1***.
PWM-RX Timing				
$T_{PWM\_G0\_RX}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{0.01}$	μs	PWM receive bit duration in PWM-G0. Defined for CJTPAT. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
$T_{PWM\_G1\_RX}$	$\frac{1}{9}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	μs	PWM receive bit duration in PWM-G1. Defined for CJTPAT. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
$T_{PWM\_G2\_RX}$	$\frac{1}{18}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	μs	PWM receive bit duration in PWM-G2. Defined for CJTPAT. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
$T_{PWM\_G3\_RX}$	$\frac{1}{36}$	$\frac{1}{12}$	μs	PWM receive bit duration in PWM-G3. Defined for CJTPAT. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
$T_{PWM\_G4\_RX}$	$\frac{1}{72}$	$\frac{1}{24}$	μs	PWM receive bit duration in PWM-G4. Defined for CJTPAT. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
$T_{PWM\_G5\_RX}$	$\frac{1}{144}$	$\frac{1}{48}$	μs	PWM receive bit duration in PWM-G5. Defined for CJTPAT. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
$T_{PWM\_G6\_RX}$	$\frac{1}{288}$	$\frac{1}{96}$	μs	PWM receive bit duration in PWM-G6. Defined for CJTPAT. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.

Table 22 PWM-RX Parameters (continued)

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
$T_{PWM\_G7\_RX}$	$\frac{1}{576}$	$\frac{1}{192}$	µs	PWM receive bit duration in PWM-G7. Defined for CJTPAT. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
TOL_{PWM_RX}	0.82	1.18		PWM receive bit duration tolerance. Defined for CJTPAT in PWM-MODE. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
$TOL_{PWM\_G1\_LR\_RX}$	0.89	1.11		PWM receive bit duration tolerance in PWM-G1. Defined for CJTPAT during LINE-READ. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
N	50	50		Number of PWM bits. Sequence length for TOL_{PWM_RX} and $TOL_{PWM\_G1\_LR\_RX}$. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
$T_{PWM\_G0\_MINOR\_RX}$	$\frac{1}{27}$	$\frac{1}{9}$	µs	PWM receive minor duration in PWM-G0. Defined for CJTPAT. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
k_{PWM_RX}	$\frac{0.60}{0.40}$	$\frac{0.75}{0.25}$		PWM receive ratio for PWM-G1 and higher PWM GEARs. Defined for CJTPAT. See ***Section 5.2.3.2***.
$T_{R\_PWM\_RX}$		0.14	T_{PWM_RX}	Rise time defined for CJTPAT.
$T_{F\_PWM\_RX}$		0.14	T_{PWM_RX}	Fall time defined for CJTPAT.

1. *Measurements based on accumulative eye diagram.*

5.2.4 SYS-RX Characteristics

545 This section contains the timing characteristics specific to a SYS-RX which are not covered by the common M-RX characteristics in ***Section 5.2.1***.

5.2.4.1 LANE-to-LANE Skew

546 The SYS-RX LANE-to-LANE skew $T_{L2L\_SKEW\_SYS\_RX}$ is defined as the time between the zero crossings of the differential input signal $V_{DIF\_RX}(t)$ at any two SYS-RXs in one SUB-LINK when test patterns are applied at both SYS-RX pins. The value of $T_{L2L\_SKEW\_SYS\_RX}$ is outside the scope of this document. If required, it shall be defined in the protocol specification.

5.2.4.2 Setup and Hold Times

547 Some parameters of the SYS-BURST mode have to be defined by the protocol specification, as described in ***Section 5.1.4.3***. The setup and hold times of the data signal at the SYS-RX input with respect to the reference clock signal belong to the parameters which are defined in the protocol specification. The zero crossing of the differential signal at the SYS-RX input is used as reference timing point for such a definition. Thus, Interoperability in SYS-BURST mode is partly ensured by the protocol specification.

5.2.5 SQ-RX Characteristics

548 This section contains the electrical and timing characteristics specific to a SQ-RX which are not covered by the common M-RX characteristics in ***Section 5.2.1***. The SQ-RX drives a DIF-Z LINE state in certain states. Additionally, the SQ-RX can monitor the LINE state to detect a non-squelch state. The operation of the SQ-RX is described in ***Section 4.6***.

5.2.5.1 Squelch Common-mode Voltage and Squelch Differential Voltage

549 The squelch common-mode voltage signal V_{CM_SQ}(t) is defined as the arithmetic mean value of the voltage signals $V_{RXDP}(t)$ and $V_{RXDN}(t)$ when the SQ-RX drives a DIF-Z at RXDP and RXDN while the LINE is not driven from the M-TX. V_{CM_SQ} is defined as the amplitude of $V_{CM\_SQ}(t)$. $V_{CM\_SQ}(t)$ can be calculated from following equation:

$$V_{CM\_SQ}(t) = \frac{V_{RXDP}(t) + V_{RXDN}(t)}{2} \qquad \text{(Equation 38)}$$

550 A SQ-RX shall keep the squelch common-mode voltage at the M-RX PINs within the limits of V_{CM_SQ}, while driving a DIF-Z and the LINE is not driven from the M-TX.

551 The squelch differential voltage signal $V_{DIF\_SQ}(t)$ is defined as the difference of the signal voltages $V_{RXDP}(t)$ and $V_{RXDN}(t)$ at the M-RX PINs when the SQ-RX drives a DIF-Z at RXDP and RXDN while the LINE is not driven from the M-TX. V_{DIF_SQ} is defined as the amplitude of $V_{DIF\_SQ}(t)$. $V_{DIF\_SQ}(t)$ can be calculated from following equation:

$$V_{DIF\_SQ}(t) = V_{RXDP}(t) - V_{RXDN}(t) \qquad \text{(Equation 39)}$$

552 The SQ-RX shall control the signal voltages at the M-RX PINs such that the squelch differential voltage is below the limit of V_{DIF_SQ}, while the SQ-RX drives a DIF-Z and the LINE is not driven from the M-TX.

553 The limits of V_{CM_SQ} and of V_{DIF_SQ} can be achieved by use of a differential resistor or two single-ended resistors, for instance. V_{CM_SQ} and of V_{DIF_SQ} impose limits on the M-RX input resistances at RXDP and RXDN. The lower value of the M-RX input resistances at RXDP and RXDN has to be such that an M-TX with Small Amplitude can drive the LINE from the squelch state to the non-squelch state while the SQ-RX is driving DIF-Z. The upper value of the M-RX input resistances is limited by the PIN leakage currents of the M-TX, the PIN leakage currents of the M-RX, and the mismatch of the M-TX PIN leakage currents. The M-RX input resistances has to be such that the limits of V_{CM_SQ} and of V_{DIF_SQ} are met for the specified M-RX and M-TX PIN leakage currents while the SQ-RX is driving DIF-Z.

5.2.5.2 Squelch Exit Voltage

554 The squelch exit voltage V_{SQ} is the threshold voltage of the SQ-RX, which shall operate when the common-mode voltage is in the V_{CM_SQ} range. When enabled the SQ-RX shall indicate a squelch state of the LINE, as long as the voltage difference of V_{RXDN} and V_{RXDP} is smaller than the minimum squelch exit voltage V_{SQ}, i.e., squelch shall be indicated when the following relation holds:

$$V_{RXDN}(t) - V_{RXDP}(t) < V_{SQ,\,MIN} \qquad \text{(Equation 40)}$$

555 When enabled the SQ-RX shall indicate a non-squelch state of the LINE, as long as the voltage difference of V_{RXDN} and V_{RXDP} is larger than the maximum squelch exit voltage V_{SQ}, i.e., non-squelch shall be indicated when the following relation holds:

$$V_{RXDN}(t) - V_{RXDP}(t) > V_{SQ,\,MAX} \qquad \text{(Equation 41)}$$

556 The SQ-RX does not need to detect if V_{RXDP} is by more than V_{SQ} larger than V_{RXDN}, because it is only required to detect the transition of the LINE state from DIF-Z to DIF-N.

5.2.5.3 Squelch Exit Time

557 The squelch exit time T_{SQ} is the duration from non-squelch detection until the M-RX enters the SLEEP state. T_{SQ} is defined from the crossing of the differential signal $V_{RXDN} - V_{RXDP}$ with $V_{SQ,MAX}$ until the M-RX

enters the SLEEP state. No value is defined for T_{SQ}, which is an M-RX internal characteristic. However the DIF-N, which is signaled by the M-TX upon exit of the HIBERN8 state for the period $T_{ACTIVATE}$, is an upper bound for T_{SQ}. A lower bound is the pulse width of a DIF-N pulse, which is detected as a non-squelch state by the SQ-RX. This pulse width is not specified, but bounded by the squelch pulse rejection.

5.2.5.4 Squelch Pulse and RF Rejection

558 The squelch noise pulse width T_{PULSE_SQ} is defined as the time the M-RX input signal $V_{RXDN}(t) - V_{RXDP}(t)$ is larger than $V_{SQ,MAX}$. T_{PULSE_SQ} is shown in ***Figure 52***. The SQ-RX shall reject single input noise pulses with an amplitude beyond $V_{SQ,MAX}$ and shorter than the squelch noise pulse width T_{PULSE_SQ}, where the pulse is of a rectangular shape.

559 The noise pulse spacing T_{SPACE_SQ} is defined as the time between the crossings of two adjacent pulse edges of two different, but adjacent, noise pulses with $V_{SQ,MAX}$. Multiple pulses shall be rejected by the SQ-RX when the duration between adjacent pulses is larger than T_{SPACE_SQ}. An example is shown in ***Figure 52***.

560 Furthermore, the SQ-RX has to be tolerant to superimposed RF interferences onto the $V_{RXDP}(t)$ and $V_{RXDN}(t)$ signals. This implies an input signal filter. The RF interference is modelled by a sinusoidal signal with a peak interference amplitude V_{INT_SQ} and an interference frequency f_{INT_SQ}. The RF interference is superimposed on the M-RX input signal. The SQ-RX shall meet all specifications in presence of RF interferences with a peak interference amplitude V_{INT_SQ} and frequencies higher than the interference frequency f_{INT_SQ}. The interference shall not cause glitches or incorrect operation during signal transitions.

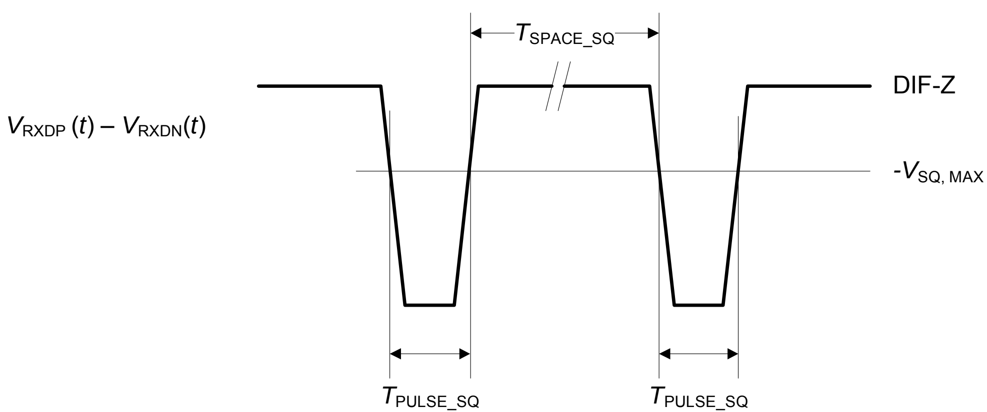


Figure 52 Pulse Rejection and Non-squelch State Detection

5.2.5.5 SQ-RX Parameters

561 The electrical and timing parameters of the SQ-RX are summarized in ***Table 23***.

Table 23 SQ-RX Parameters

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
SQ-RX Electrical				
V_{SQ}	50	140	mV	Squelch exit voltage. Defined for test pattern. See ***Section 5.2.5.2***.
V_{DIF_SQ}		20	mV	Squelch differential voltage amplitude. Defined for test pattern. See ***Section 5.2.5.1***.

Table 23 SQ-RX Parameters (continued)

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
V_{CM_SQ}	0	330	mV	Squelch common-mode voltage. Defined for test pattern. See ***Section 5.2.5.1***.
V_{INT_SQ}		200	mV	Peak interference amplitude. Defined for test pattern. See ***Section 5.2.5.4***.
f_{INT_SQ}	500		MHz	Interference frequency. Defined for test pattern. See ***Section 5.2.5.4***.
SQ-RX Timing				
T_{PULSE_SQ}		20	ns	Noise pulse width. Defined to test pattern. See ***Section 5.2.5.4***.
T_{SPACE_SQ}	500		ns	Noise pulse spacing. Defined for test pattern. See ***Section 5.2.5.4***.

5.3 PIN Characteristics

562 The PIN characteristics of an M-TX and of an M-RX are defined in this section.

5.3.1 PIN Capacitance

563 The single-ended PIN capacitance C_{PIN_RX} of the M-RX is defined as the capacitance between the RXDP and RXDN PINs to ground. C_{PIN_RX} is the lump sum of all single-ended capacitance at an M-RX PIN. The single-ended PIN capacitance should conform to the limit of C_{PIN_RX}.

564 The PIN capacitance mismatch ΔC_{PIN_RX} of an M-RX is defined as the difference of the PIN capacitances at RXDP and RXDN. The PIN capacitance mismatch shall conform to the limits of ΔC_{PIN_RX}. ΔC_{PIN_RX} limits the timing skew between the single-ended signals.

5.3.2 PIN Signal Voltage Range

565 The PIN signal voltage V_{PIN} is defined as the single-ended signal voltage of an M-RX or M-TX PIN to ground. No structure within an M-RX or M-TX shall be damaged when a DC voltage that is within the limits of V_{PIN} is applied at a PIN for an indefinite period of time. The single-ended output signals of an M-TX shall conform with the limits of V_{PIN}.

5.3.3 PIN Leakage Current

566 The PIN leakage current, I_{LEAK}, is defined as the PIN current flowing in, or out, of a MODULE when a single-ended voltage in the PIN signal voltage range, V_{PIN}, is applied at a MODULE PIN. I_{LEAK} is defined for a MODULE that does not drive the LINE and, in the case of an M-RX, with its termination resistor disabled. The PIN leakage current of a MODULE PIN shall conform with the limits of I_{LEAK}.

567 The PIN leakage current mismatch ΔI_{LEAK_TX} is defined as the difference of the PIN leakage currents at the TXDP and TXDN PINs of an M-TX, when signal voltages are applied which conform with the V_{CM_SQ} and V_{DIF_SQ} ranges. The PIN leakage current mismatch shall stay in the limits of ΔI_{LEAK_TX}.

5.3.4 Ground Shift

568 The ground shift V_{GNDSH} is defined as the ground potential difference of an M-TX and M-RX within a LANE. The ground shift of MODULEs within a LANE shall conform with the limits of V_{GNDSH}.

569 The ground shift is taken into account in the definition of signal voltage parameters. It does not need to be added on top of any signal parameter.

5.3.5 PIN Parameters

570 The common PIN characteristics of an M-RX and M-TX are summarized in ***Table 24***.

Table 24 PIN Parameters

Symbol	Values		Unit	Description
	Min.	Max.		
C_{PIN_RX}		1.5	pF	PIN capacitance. Recommended PIN capacitance to ground at an M-RX PIN[1].
ΔC_{PIN_RX}	-0.15	0.15	pF	Mismatch of PIN capacitance. Mismatch of M-RX PIN capacitances[2].
V_{PIN}	-100	600	mV	PIN signal voltage range. Signal voltage range.
I_{LEAK}	-10	10	µA	PIN leakage current. Measured over V_{CM}
ΔI_{LEAK_TX}	-5	5	µA	
V_{GNDSH}	-50	50	mV	Ground shift. Ground shift between M-TX and M-RX.

1. *Includes package capacitance.*
2. *For recommended PIN capacitance only.*

6 Electrical Interconnect (informative)

571 This section provides an implementation guideline for the interconnect simulation environment. A methodology is also provided that allows the evaluation of interconnect performance.

572 A LINE is defined as an interconnect between an M-TX and an M-RX that conducts the LANE signals. These signals include differential signaling for both high speed and low speed data transfer. Thus, a LINE should be implemented by means of balanced, differential, point-to-point transmission lines referenced to ground.

573 A LINE might consist of several cascaded transmission lines, such as printed circuit boards, flex-foils, or cable connections that might also include vias and connectors.

574 An M-PHY LANE is a unidirectional connection between an M-TX and an M-RX using a LINE as an interconnect. Overall LANE performance is determined by the combination of these three elements. ***Figure 53*** shows a simple point-to-point interconnect.

575 The interconnect under test should reflect the application such that M-PHY specifications are met at the M-RX inputs. Therefore, the interconnect model needs to include noise source and target components when applicable, e.g. when simulating several LANEs, a supply distribution network, side-band signals, or sensitive or noisy elements such as radio antennas.

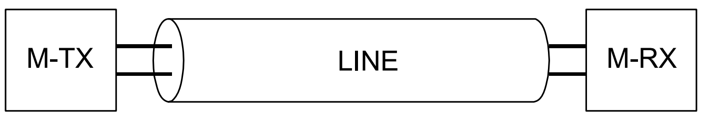


Figure 53 Point-to-Point Interconnect

6.1 Line Characteristics

576 The LINE delay, T_{LINE}, is defined as the time during which a signal is transmitted from the M-TX to M-RX through the LINE. The T_{LINE} parameters and test conditions are summarized in ***Table 25***.

Table 25 Interconnect Parameters

Parameter	Symbol	Values		Unit	Note / Test Condition
		Min.	Max.		
LINE delay	T_{LINE}		7	ns	Measured between zero crossings at test points[1] with conformance test signal source[2] and pattern[3]

1. *Measured between LINE input port and LINE output port, which is terminated by a reference resistor, R_{REF}, and reference capacitors, C_{PIN_RX}, at both pins.*
2. *External signal source connected to LINE input port.*
3. *Test pattern CJTPAT at maximum data rate.*

6.2 Methodology

577 The method described here imports a LANE's S-parameters into a simulation environment that includes worst case models for M-TX and M-RX as well as stress patterns. The resulting time domain simulation, from which voltage and timing can be obtained, is compared against those defined for the M-RX in ***Section 5***.

578 The interconnect characteristics are completely defined by its mixed-mode S-parameter models., i.e. insertion loss, return loss, and coupling effects. These parameters are sufficient to completely characterize all interconnect-induced parasitic effects including impedance mismatch and discontinuities, insertion loss, crosstalk, jitter amplification, jitter attenuation and insertion. A long interconnect tends to be dominated by

insertion loss and crosstalk, while a short interconnect tends to be dominated by impedance discontinuities. Since both types of LINE are possible, it is necessary to provide a means of characterizing the interconnect that comprehends all possible LANE characteristics.

579 It is also necessary to take into account the LANE's S-parameters with a worst case M-TX behavioral model and stress patterns, e.g. CJTPAT. The time domain results can be compared against the parameters defined in ***Section 5***.

6.3 Methodology Guidance for Validating a LANE

580 An interconnect can be characterized using the following methodology:

581 • Extract S-parameters (insertion loss, return loss and, if applicable, coupling) for the interconnect under test.

582 • Import S-parameters into an interface simulation environment based on M-TX and M-RX models.

583 • Tune the models to produce electrical characteristics as defined in ***Section 5***.

584 • Worst case M-TX model feeds stressed test patterns, e.g. CJTPAT, into interconnect S-parameters model and then into M-RX model.

585 • Compare simulation results to specifications that should be respected at the input of the M-RX.

6.3.1 Interconnect S-parameters Extraction

586 Interconnect S-parameters should be taken over the entire signaling spectral range, which extends from the Low Speed minimal bit rate to more than five times f_{U_RX} of the highest supported GEAR. Both near and far end return loss, as well as forward and reverse insertion loss, should be measured since most simulation tools require a complete mixed-mode S-parameter representation.

6.3.2 Simulation Environment Setup

587 A simple end-to-end simulation environment is illustrated in ***Figure 54***. The environment includes an M-TX model, LINE model using interconnect S-parameters, an M-RX model, and stress pattern. A single LANE environment suffices for a topology with minimal crosstalk. Otherwise, the simulation environment needs to include noise source and noise target components as shown in ***Figure 55***.

588 At a minimum, the M-TX behavioral model should have an ideal source and consider all transmitter specification parameters listed in ***Section 5.1*** to accommodate worst case simulations over the whole parameter range. Moreover, a realistic M-TX model should include package parasitic elements. Some parameters need to be simulated over their minimum to maximum range in order to guarantee worst case voltage and time margins for a particular interconnect. For example, V_{DIF_TX} produces worst case eye margins when set to a minimum and at the same time produces low crosstalk.

589 The test pattern needs to provide worst case results while conforming to 8b10b coding rules. The simulation environment should use CJTPAT since most M-PHY electrical parameters are derived from it. Other test patterns that create different stress conditions should also be considered. When the simulation environment is composed of several LANEs, either the same time-shifted pattern, or different patterns, can be used for individual LANEs.

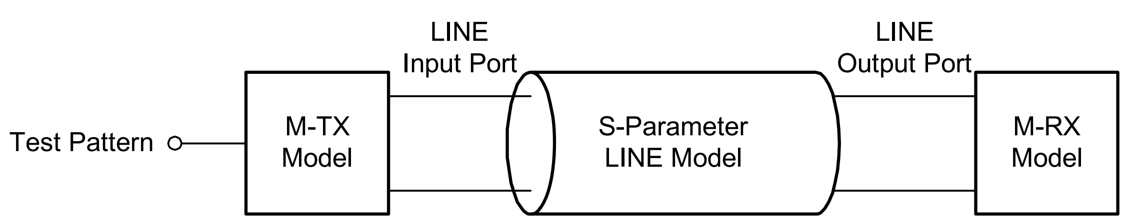


Figure 54 Single LANE Simulation Environment

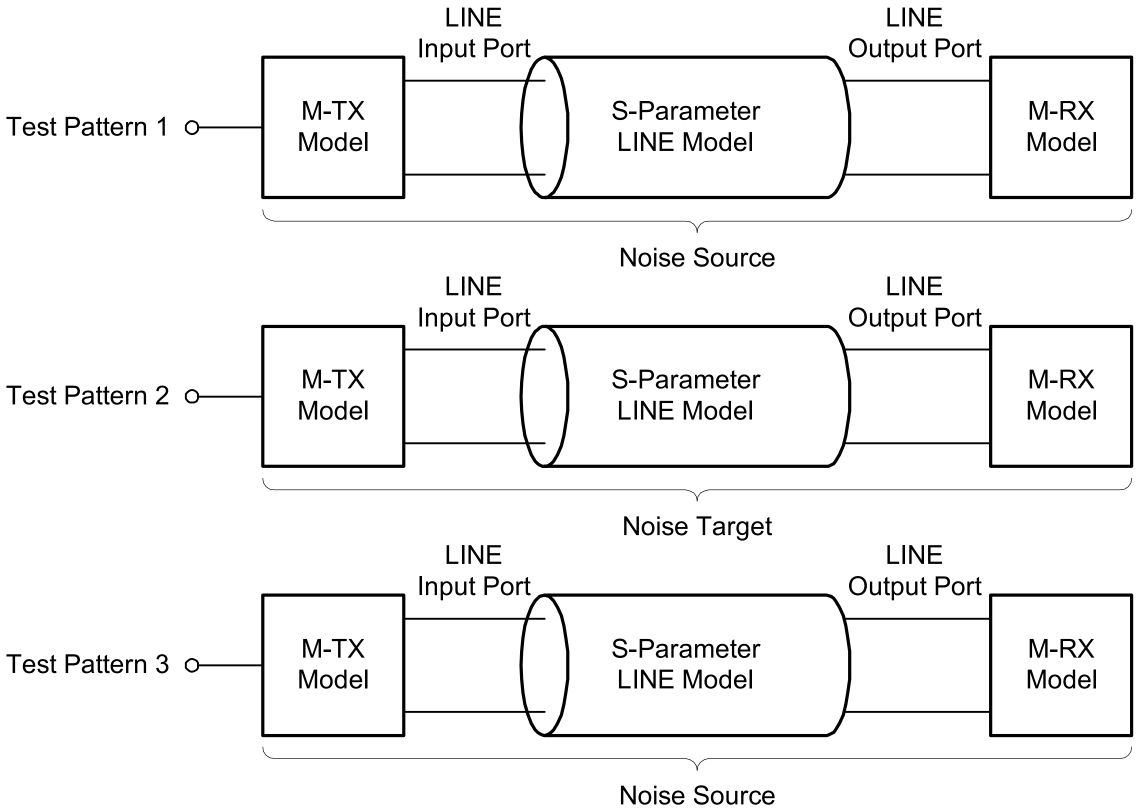


Figure 55 Multiple LANE Simulation Environment

This page intentionally left blank.

7 Optical Media Converter (OMC)

590 An Optical Media Converter (OMC), illustrated in ***Figure 56***, converts electrical signals from an M-TX into optical signals (light waves), transports the signals across a medium such as a Plastic Optical Fiber (POF), and converts the optical signals back into electrical signals that an M-RX can receive.

591 An OMC is considered an inseparable unit, consisting of an optical transmitter (O-TX), an optical receiver (O-RX), each with appropriate photonics, and an optical wave guide. An auxiliary interconnection parallel with the optical interconnect as shown in the figure may be implemented between the O-TX and O-RX. The mechanical and optical interconnect solution and optical interface between the O-TX and O-RX are not within the scope of this specification.

592 A LINE shall contain only one OMC.

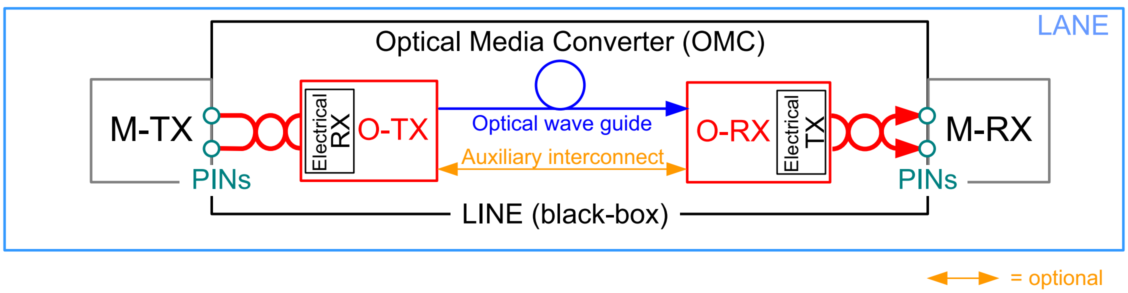


Figure 56 LANE with an OMC

7.1 Application Benefits of the OMC

593 An OMC can replace a galvanic interconnect for improving signal integrity over longer distances, improving EMI characteristics, as well as offering assembly and reliability benefits provided by optical mediums such as flexible Plastic Optical Fiber.

7.2 Types of OMCs

594 This specification defines two type of OMCs: Basic and Advanced. A Basic OMC supports defined minimal functionality including LCC-WRITE, and can operate within a LANE under the condition that the protocol has knowledge that an OMC has been applied and its capabilities known. An Advanced OMC supports LCC-READ and LCC-WRITE and therefore can communicate its presence and capabilities to the protocol. Read and write functions are provided for OMC configuration. Definitions and operation of these functions are in ***Section 4.7.4.2*** and ***Section 4.8.1.2***. OMC-specific details can be found in ***Section 7.6***.

7.3 Internal and External OMCs

595 An Internal OMC is contained within the mechanical outline of the mobile device and has no externally available end-user connector. An optical interconnect inside a mobile device can be used to interconnect two printed circuit boards (PCB) or a module to a PCB. Some common examples include connections from displays, cameras, or non-cellular RF transceivers to the main PCB.

596 An External OMC is used to connect a mobile device to other devices such as an auxiliary display. Implementation details for External OMCs are beyond the scope of this specification. An OMC used by a mobile manufacturer for test purposes is also not within the scope of this specification.

597 An OMC may be implemented as an internal or external interconnect. From the electrical interface perspective there is no difference between the two options.

7.4 OMC – Architecture and Operations

598 An OMC shall support the state machine illustrated in ***Figure 57***, which is based on the M-RX Type-I state machine defined in ***Section 4.6.1***. Differences from the Type-I state machine include the following:

599 • RCT from STALL to SLEEP and STALL to HIBERN8 are not supported by an OMC and as such these transitions are not shown in ***Figure 57***.

600 • DISABLED is a transitory state where the OMC shall independently move to HIBERN8 after an internal POR condition within T_{OMC_POR}.

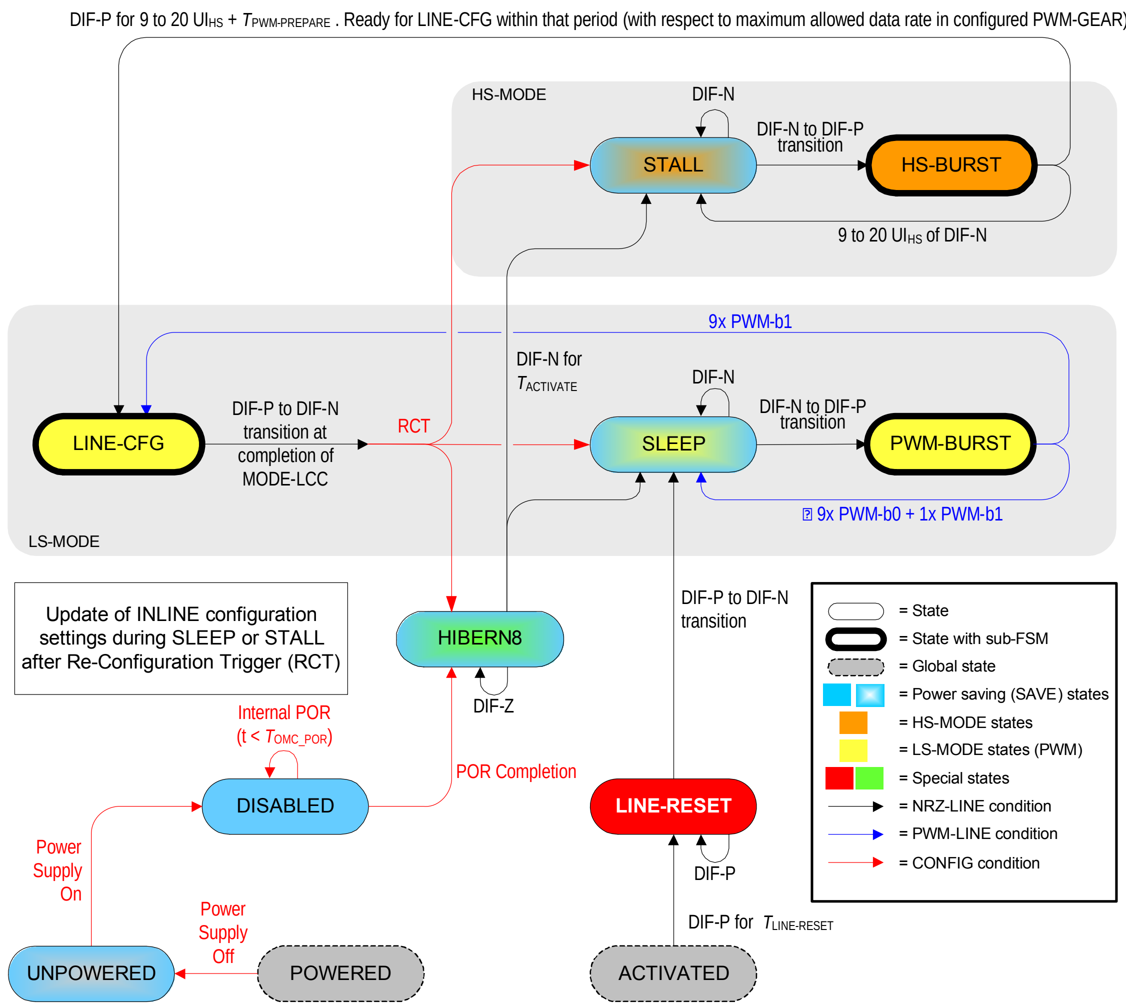


Figure 57 OMC State Diagram (based on Type-I M-RX)

601 The state machine requires that the OMC pass static, DC-unbalanced and DC-balanced signaling. For STALL, SLEEP, HIBERN8, LINE-RESET states and the transition out of these states, a static driven signal is transmitted. The maximum time that a LANE may stay in these power saving states is not defined. For LINE-CFG and the transmission of LCCs, unbalanced signaling is transmitted. The worst case condition occurs in LINE-INIT, which is maintained by the transmission of a continuous PWM-b1. The upper limit for the time duration of LINE-INIT is not specified. DC unbalancing is defined by the PWM signaling characteristics, the FIXED-RATIO scheme is used for gears PWM-G1 and greater, and the FIXED-MINOR scheme for the optional PWM-G0. Finally, during PWM-BURST and HS-BURST 8b10b fully DC-balanced data is transmitted.

602 The following sections add further information to the state machine state definitions given in ***Section 4.6*** with reference to the OMC and OMC state machine. The OMC state machine shall change state based on input from the protocol through the M-TX using LINE signaling only. No additional signaling for the OMC, outside of the LINE, is provided in this document.

7.4.1 OMC – Data Transmission BURST Modes

603 This document supports three kinds of BURST transmission, including SYS-BURST, HS-BURST and PWM-BURST. An OMC shall support the Type-I PWM-BURST state, and may support the Type-I HS-BURST state.

604 While operating in BURST mode the O-TX input shall conform to the M-RX input specifications defined in ***Section 5.2.1***, and the O-RX output shall conform to the M-TX output specifications defined in ***Section 5.1.1***.

7.4.1.1 OMC – PWM-BURST

605 A SYNC period does not follow the PREPARE period when moving from SLEEP state into PWM-BURST Therefore, the OMC connection to the M-RX shall provide PWM data immediately following the PREPARE period.

7.4.2 OMC – HS-BURST

606 For HS-BURST, an 8b10b-encoded SYNC sequence for a configurable period follows the PREPARE period. Part of this sequence is available for OMC settling as well as the tuning and settling of any clock and data recovery circuits in the M-RX. The OMC settling $T_{\mathrm{OMC\_HS\_START}}$ shall be added to any requirement of M-RX circuitry when setting the SYNC length. During the SYNC period the OMC shall hold a PREPARE DIF-P at the output pins until sufficient settling is achieved to transmit valid in-specification data. A small amount of additional pulse width distortion is expected due to desquelching the O-RX output driver.

7.4.3 OMC – DISABLED

607 The DISABLED state is a transitory state whereby the OMC initiates an independent internal POR. Upon completion of an internal POR, the OMC shall automatically transition to HIBERN8, which is the lowest power state for the OMC. A POR condition, from entering the DISABLED state to exiting the POR into the HIBERN8 state shall conform to $T_{\mathrm{OMC\_POR}}$ as specified in ***Table 26***.

Table 26 POR Timing

Parameter	Symbol	Values		Units	Note / Test Condition
		Min.	Max.		
Time taken from entering DISABLED to exiting POR into HIBERN8	$T_{\mathrm{OMC\_POR}}$		1	ms	

7.4.3.1 Power Supply Removal

608 The OMC shall enter the DISABLED state from any state with the removal and reapplication of the power supplies. No additional signaling is available to enter the DISABLED state. The OMC should internally handle any additional requirements for POR.

609 The OMC shall exit the DISABLED state with default configuration settings.

7.4.3.2 OMC – HIBERN8

610 HIBERN8 is the lowest power dissipating state for an OMC. During HIBERN8 the OMC shall ensure the LINE is properly terminated. For implementations where the M-TX relies on the O-TX for termination and O-RX relies on the M-RX for termination, the O-TX shall include a weak pull down (DIF-Z), and the O-RX shall maintain a high output impedance as defined in ***Section 5.2.1*** and illustrated for the OMC use-case in ***Figure 58***.

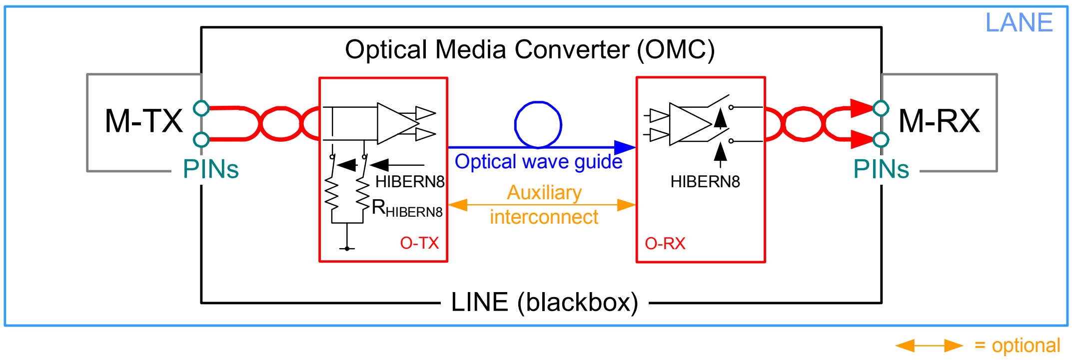


Figure 58 DIF-Z OMC Implementation

7.4.4 OMC – Transitional States

7.4.4.1 OMC – LINE-RESET

611 OMC outputs shall follow M-TX outputs for the LINE-RESET condition and therefore shall comply with the $T_{\text{LINE-RESET}}$ specification in ***Table 11***.

7.5 OMC – Electrical and Interconnect

612 The electrical parameters defined in this section for the OMC use-case is referenced to the test points illustrated in ***Figure 59***. In order to meet an acceptable LINE jitter budget the galvanic connection between the M-TX and O-TX, and the O-RX and M-RX, respectively, should be kept short. These short galvanic connections are defined within this section, but are described for information only. For OMC use-cases the mandatory specification are parameters defined at TP1 and TP4.

613 It is important to note that the OMC input (TP2) electrical characteristics are specified as per the M-RX in ***Section 5.2.1*** and the OMC output (TP3) electrical characteristics are specified as per the M-TX as defined in ***Section 5.1.1***.

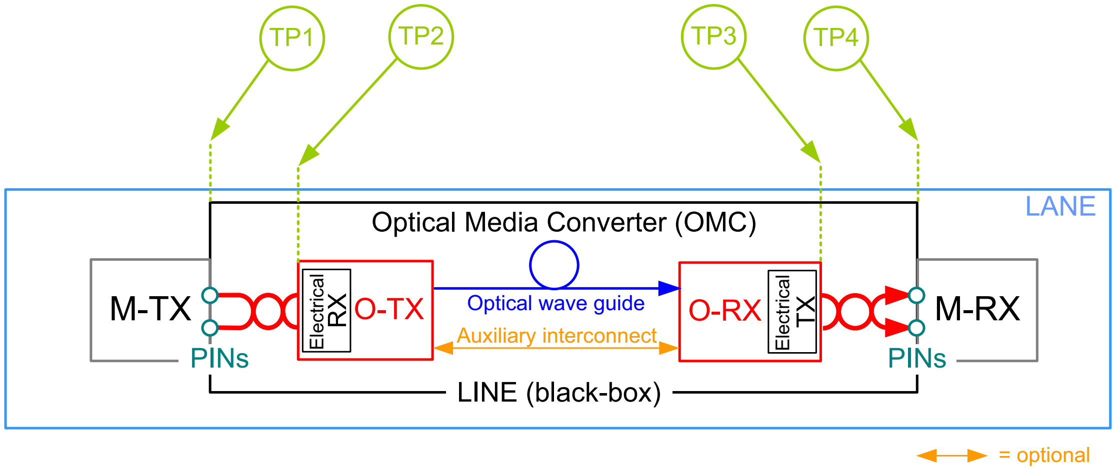


Figure 59 Electrical Specification Test Points

7.5.1 OMC – Galvanic Connection Specification

614 ***Table 27*** defines the electrical characteristics of a short galvanic connection for OMC use-cases. The maximum expected connection length per side of the OMC is specified by $Dj_{gal\text{-}OMCcase}$.

Table 27 Galvanic Connection Specification (informative)

Parameter	Symbol	Values		Units	Note / Test Condition
		Min	Max.		
Deterministic jitter contribution from a length, $L_{gal\text{-}OMCcase}$ of galvanic connection	$Dj_{gal\text{-}OMCcase}$		0.04	UI	

615 For HS-G3 and HS-G4, the M-TX and O-TX, and the O-RX and M-RX should be separated with short galvanic connections to meet the $Dj_{gal\text{-}OMCcase}$ budget. If longer galvanic connections are necessary due to usage requirements, independent LINE jitter budgets may be required between the M-TX and O-TX, and the O-RX and M-RX. The independent LINE jitter budget is defined in ***Section 5.1.2.7*** and ***Section 5.2.2.2***, however, the synchronization of independent LANEs to an OMC is outside the scope of this document.

7.5.2 OMC – Signal Delay

616 LINE delay due to galvanic connections and signal propagation delay due to the use of an OMC (or electrically buffered PWM transmission using OMC auxiliary interconnect) are considered separately.

7.5.2.1 OMC – LINE Delay

617 A LINE delay is specified in ***Section 6.1*** for electrical signal integrity. For the OMC use-case it is expected that the short galvanic connection should easily meet this requirement. For some use-cases it is desirable to bypass low speed signals from the input PINs to the output PINs by switching in a direct galvanic connection. For this implementation the LINE is dependant on the termination in the M-RX. The OMC shall meet the accordant LINE delay requirement.

7.5.2.2 OMC – Signal Propagation Delay

618 Some propagation delay is expected through the OMC during optical transmission, and in implementations where bypassing is achieved using some form of buffering across an OMC auxiliary interconnect. This

propagation delay is not expected to result in signal integrity issues and shall be handled at a protocol level. An OMC shall create no more than $T_{OMC\text{-}PropDelay}$ during BURST transmission.

619 The parameters for signaling delay through the OMC are defined in ***Table 28***.

Table 28 Signaling Delay

Parameter	Symbol	Values		Units	Note / Test Condition
		Min.	Max.		
Signal propagation delay through optical media converter (for optical or buffered electrical transmission)	$T_{OMC\text{-}PropDelay}$		50	ns	

7.5.3 OMC – HS-BURST Operation

7.5.3.1 OMC – HS-BURST Timing

620 When entering HS-BURST state it is necessary to allow the OMC additional time to settle any internal control loops, e.g., DC restoration or automatic gain control. This is supported by a SYNC period during which a training sequence of configurable length is transmitted. It is important that the M-RX receive only valid M-PHY signals and as such the OMC shall hold the PREPARE state at the outputs to the O-RX from the beginning of the SYNC period until the OMC is fully settled, as defined by $T_{OMC\_HS\_START}$.

621 For an advanced OMC this capability shall be stored as SI in the allocated field, MC_HS_START_TIME, for reporting during an LCC-READ-CAPABILITY, as shown in ***Table 34***.

622 It is likely that the first few bits transmitted from the OMC output upon entering HS-BURST will have out-of-specification pulse width distortion while the O-RX output driver recovers from a squelched state. $T_{OMC\_HS\_START}$ shall include all SYNC and PREPARE time requirements for the OMC, including any termination switching time considerations for the O-TX. Any pulse width settling shall occur within the specified start-up time $T_{OMC\_HS\_START}$ and therefore shall not reduce any settling time allocated for the M-RX circuitry within the SYNC sequence. An OMC shall meet the specified HS-BURST amplitude requirements during this time.

623 The SYNC period shall be configured for the additive settling of both the OMC and the M-RX circuitry.

624 When the OMC detects the TAIL-OF-BURST, HS-BURST ends, and the OMC shall return to STALL or enter LINE-CFG state depending on the polarity of the TOB sequence. The OMC shall disconnect the differential termination at the O-TX inputs within $T_{OMC\_TERM\_DIS}$ following the start of TAIL-OF-BURST. $T_{OMC\_TERM\_DIS}$ provides sufficient time for the OMC to detect the TAIL-OF-BURST and disconnect the differential termination for any HS-GEAR. Refer to ***Table 29*** for OMC HS-BURST timing requirements.

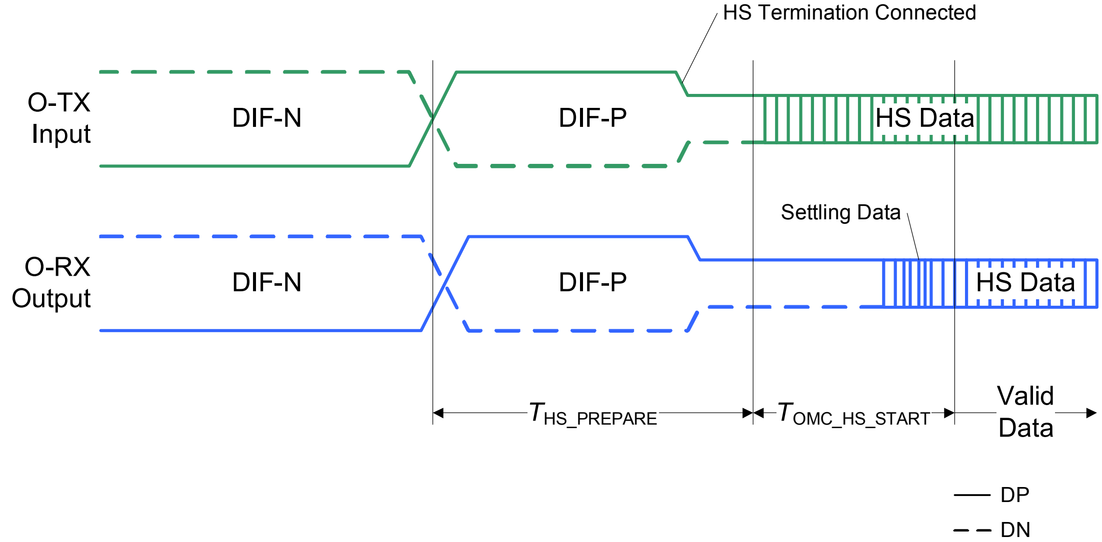


Figure 60 HS-BURST Entry

Table 29 OMC HS-BURST Entry

Parameter	Symbol	Values		Units	Note / Test Condition
		Min.	Max.		
Time required for the OMC to transmit in-specification data	$T_{OMC\_HS\_START}$		10	µs	
OMC differential termination disconnect time	$T_{OMC\_TERM\_DIS}$		50	ns	Measured from the start of TOB

7.5.3.2 OMC – HS-BURST Jitter Budget

625 An OMC is intended as a drop-in signal repeater that substitutes the copper interconnects with a medium of inherently higher bandwidth capability, mechanical reliability and lower EMI. While acknowledging these inherent benefits it is also important to note the challenges of designing an optical LINK into a mobile application. When designing to the ultra-low power demands of the mobile application, jitter becomes strongly correlated to power dissipation. For these reasons, the optical jitter budget is kept as high as possible while ensuring no disproportionate impact is made on other inline components. ***Table 30*** specifies a separate jitter budget for the OMC use-case that takes advantage of the shorter galvanic connections at the electrical interfaces.

626 While the galvanic connection is short, jitter is expected to be generated by impedance mismatches from both connection impedance and device termination. In addition to this, capacitive loading and reflections are also seen as possible contributors to jitter on these connections.

627 The OMC total jitter TJ_{OMC} is a convolution of the deterministic jitter DJ_{OMC} and random jitter RJ_{OMC} (see ***Equation 14***). The OMC electrical jitter characteristics are defined in ***Section 5.1.2.7*** for transmit jitter and ***Section 5.2.2.2*** for receive jitter tolerance.

Table 30 Optical Media Converter (OMC) Jitter Budget

Symbol	Values	Unit
TJ_{OMC}	0.27	UI_{HS}
DJ_{OMC}	0.12	UI_{HS}

7.5.3.3 OMC – PWM Transmit Ratio Budget

628 During an LCC-READ it is necessary to transmit data stored in the OMC to the M-RX requiring the reproduction of the PWM transmit ratio. ***Table 31*** provides values for the expected allocation of the link budget. Values for M-TX output and M-RX input in ***Table 31*** correspond to the parameters k_{PWM_TX} and k_{PWM_RX} specified in ***Section 5*** for galvanic interconnect use-cases and are provided here for information only.

Table 31 Optical Media Converter (OMC) Transmit Ratio Budget

Parameter	Unit	M-TX Output	Galvanic Connection	OMC Input	OMC	OMC Output	Galvanic Connection	M-RX Input
Reference		1	1 – 2	2	2 – 3	3	3 – 4	4
K_{PWM} (min)	–	0.630 / 0.370	0.005	0.625 / 0.375	0.020	0.605 / 0.395	0.005	0.600 / 0.400
K_{PWM} (max)	–	0.720 / 0.280	0.005	0.725 / 0.275	0.020	0.745 / 0.255	0.005	0.750 / 0.250

7.6 OMC Configuration

629 An OMC shall support line-control-codes (LCCs) for state transitions out of LINE-CFG. A Basic OMC supporting optional features beyond those specified as mandatory shall also support the required CONFIG-LCCs associated with the supported features as outlined in ***Table 32***. An OMC shall pass all LCCs to the M-RX.

630 An Advanced OMC is defined as additionally supporting the CONFIG-LCC-READ commands, providing a mechanism for the protocol to interrogate the PHY for information on OMC configurable capabilities and settings as well as other proprietary data, e.g., device ID, IC revision etc.

7.6.1 OMC Detection

7.6.1.1 Basic OMC

631 It is expected that for a Basic OMC, system awareness is hard-coded at the implementation stage in some protocol memory. This is then acknowledged by the protocol during system configuration. Further to this any configurable capabilities supported by a Basic OMC shall also be hard-coded if it is to be used by the PHY interface.

7.6.1.2 Advanced OMC

632 An Advanced OMC shall support read capability as defined in ***Section 7.6.2.2***. The presence of an Advanced OMC within a PHY can be determined through interrogation of the read data stored at the M-RX, after an LCC read action. In order to support discovery, one bit is assigned in the OMC capability register (OMC_TYPE_Capability in ***Table 34***). In the case of an Advanced OMC this attribute shall be set to “0”.

633 If a read operation is attempted on a PHY without an Advanced OMC, i.e. where LCC-READ-CAPABILTIY is not supported, the four PWM-b1 bytes transmitted by the M-TX during a read, see ***Figure 62***, shall be received by the M-RX and stored in the OMC capability register. Therefore, for implementations using a basic OMC, or a direct galvanic connection, the OMC_TYPE_Capability shall be set by default to “1”.

634 If OMC_TYPE_Capability is “1”, the other OMC attribute data stored in the M-RX is invalid since it is filled with the four PWM-b1 bytes transmitted by the M-TX during the read operation.

635 The OMC_TYPE_Capability does not differentiate between a basic OMC and a direct galvanic connection; it only indicates the presence of an Advanced OMC.

7.6.2 OMC – Configuration LCCs

636 ***Table 32*** is an OMC-specific representation of the generic LCC definition provided in ***Table 12***. The capabilities of an OMC should be known by the protocol, outlined for Basic and Advanced use-cases in ***Section 7.6.1***, before configuration is attempted in order to prevent selection of unsupported options.

Table 32 OMC Line Control Codes[1]

b0	b1	TYPE	b2	b3	b4	PARAM SETTING	b5	b6	b7	b8	b9
0	0	MISC	0	0	0	RESERVED	1	1	1	1	1
			0	0	1	RESERVED	0	1	1	0	0
			0	1	0	RESERVED	0	0	0	1	1
			0	1	1	HIBERN8-SLEEP	1	0	0	0	0
			1	0	0	RESERVED	1	0	0	1	0
			1	0	1	RESERVED	0	0	0	0	1
			1	1	0	RESERVED	0	1	1	1	0
			1	1	1	HIBERN8-STALL	1	1	1	0	1
0	1	READ/ WRITE	0	0	0	READ-CAPABILITY	0	1	0	1	0
			0	0	1	READ-CUSTOM-OTX[2]	1	1	0	0	1
			0	1	0	READ-CUSTOM-ORX[2]	1	0	1	1	0
			0	1	1	READ-MFG-INFO	0	0	1	0	1
			1	0	0	READ-VEND-INFO	0	0	1	1	1
			1	0	1	WRITE-ATTRIBUTE	1	0	1	0	0
			1	1	0	WRITE-CUSTOM-OTX[2]	1	1	0	1	1
			1	1	1	WRITE-CUSTOM-ORX[2]	0	1	0	0	0
1	0	PWM-MODE	0	0	0	PWM-G0	0	0	1	1	0
			0	0	1	PWM-G1	1	0	1	0	1
			0	1	0	PWM-G2	1	1	0	1	0
			0	1	1	PWM-G3	0	1	0	0	1
			1	0	0	PWM-G4	0	1	0	1	1
			1	0	1	PWM-G5	1	1	0	0	0
			1	1	0	PWM-G6	1	0	1	1	1
			1	1	1	PWM-G7	0	0	1	0	0

Table 32 OMC Line Control Codes[1] (continued)

b0	b1	TYPE	b2	b3	b4	PARAM SETTING	b5	b6	b7	b8	b9
1	1	HS-MODE	0	0	0	HS-G1A	1	0	0	1	1
			0	0	1	HS-G2A	0	0	0	0	0
			0	1	0	HS-G3A	0	1	1	1	1
			0	1	1	HS-G4A	1	1	1	0	0
			1	0	0	HS-G1B	1	1	1	1	0
			1	0	1	HS-G2B	0	1	1	0	1
			1	1	0	HS-G3B	0	0	0	1	0
			1	1	1	HS-G4B	1	0	0	0	1

1. *Columns for LCC data bits in this table are not intended to convey any information on bit-order transmission. Transmission of a 10-bit LCC should always begin with b0.*
2. *OMC-specific LCC.*

637 Line-Control-Codes shall be entered from LINE-INIT, a LINE-CFG sub-state, where the LINE-CFG sub-state machine is defined in ***Section 4.7.4.2***. An OMC exits LINE-CFG to one of three states, SLEEP, STALL or HIBERN8, on a Re-Configuration Trigger (RCT) shown in ***Figure 57***. For an OMC, an RCT is an internally driven event that shall occur within T_{RCT_SAVE} moving to STALL and $T_{HIBERN8\_ENTER\_RX}$ moving to HIBERN8 from the DIF-P to DIF-N transition at the completion of an LCC. Further reference to RCTs is given in ***Section 4.7.4.2.4***.

638 The LCC type in ***Table 32*** indicates the OMC destination state upon complete transmission of the code. A READ/WRITE type LCC shall exit to LINE-INIT ready for additional LCCs. MODE-PWM type LCC commands shall be followed by SLEEP. A MODE-HS-type LCC command shall be followed by STALL, configured and ready for BURST mode transmission. MISC contains a mixed group of LCCs where destination states are considered on an individual basis.

639 The OMC may enter the HIBERN8 state via two codes in order to indicate whether the OMC enters the STALL or SLEEP state upon exiting HIBERN8 state. These codes are implemented to support direct entry into the desired BURST state following HIBERN8.

7.6.2.1 OMC – LCC-WRITE

640 The write function may be used to load data onto the OMC for configuration purposes. Two types of write are defined, WRITE-ATTRIBUTE supporting configuration of operational settings, e.g. termination settings, and WRITE-CUSTOM supporting proprietary configurations required for stand-alone testing purposes.

641 Configurable write attributes within an OMC should be considered as write-only. There is no read function for reading out configured write attribute data from an OMC to the M-RX.

642 Following an LCC-WRITE, the OMC shall expect a configuration field of 10-bit words. The first and last bit of each 10-bit word shall be delimited with a PWM-b0, the remaining eight bits shall contain configuration data.

643 For WRITE-ATTRIBUTE, the OMC shall return to the LINE-INIT sub-state immediately after receiving the four delimited WRITE bytes. For WRITE-CUSTOM, the OMC shall return to the LINE-INIT sub-state upon receiving nine PWM-b1s, as illustrated in ***Figure 61***.

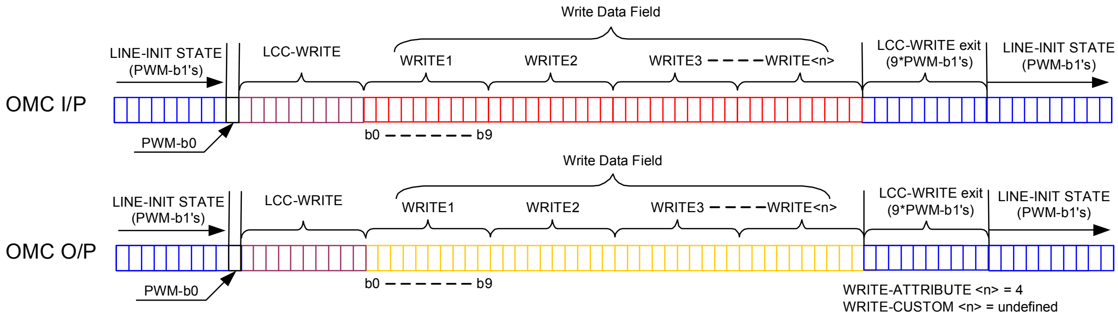


Figure 61 OMC WRITE Function

7.6.2.1.1 OMC – LCC-WRITE-ATTRIBUTE

644 WRITE-ATTRIBUTE is intended for setting configuration parameters required for LANE operation and therefore requires protocol support. Following an LCC-WRITE-ATTRIBUTE the OMC shall expect a four byte field of attribute configuration data as defined in ***Table 33***.

645 M_TX_Amplitude, defined in ***Table 33***, informs the OMC of the M-TX output amplitude and is derived from TX_Amplitude, detailed in ***Table 51***. M_TX_Amplitude is provided as information only for OMC optimization at the implementer's discretion. Details on the configuration of the settings listed in ***Table 33*** are provided in ***Table 53***. For an LCC-WRITE, RESERVED data bit designations shall default to PWM-b1.

Table 33 LCC-WRITE-ATTRIBUTE

WRITE	BIT	Configuration Setting
WRITE1	0	DELIMITER (always 0)
	1	M_TX_Amplitude (SA = 0, LA = 1))
	2	MC_OUTPUT_Amplitude
	3	MC_HS_Unterminated_Enable
	4	MC_LS_Terminated_Enable
	5	MC_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Enable
	6	MC_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Enable
	7	RESERVED
	8	RESERVED
	9	DELIMITER (always 0)

Table 33 LCC-WRITE-ATTRIBUTE (continued)

WRITE	BIT	Configuration Setting
WRITE2	0	DELIMITER (always 0)
	1	RESERVED
	2	RESERVED
	3	RESERVED
	4	RESERVED
	5	RESERVED
	6	RESERVED
	7	RESERVED
	8	RESERVED
	9	DELIMITER (always 0)
WRITE3	0	DELIMITER (always 0)
	1	RESERVED
	2	RESERVED
	3	RESERVED
	4	RESERVED
	5	RESERVED
	6	RESERVED
	7	RESERVED
	8	RESERVED
	9	DELIMITER (always 0)
WRITE4	0	DELIMITER (always 0)
	1	RESERVED
	2	RESERVED
	3	RESERVED
	4	RESERVED
	5	RESERVED
	6	RESERVED
	7	RESERVED
	8	RESERVED
	9	DELIMITER (always 0)

7.6.2.1.2 OMC – LCC-WRITE-CUSTOM

646 WRITE-CUSTOM is intended for stand-alone test purposes only and therefore does not require protocol support. Provision is made for two WRITE-CUSTOM LCCs addressing the O-RX and O-TX individually. Given the proprietary nature of this feature, and that no interoperability is required, the configuration field length is undefined.

7.6.2.2 OMC – LCC-READ

647 Support for OMC LCC-READ commands is optional (see ***Table 36***). However, if a MODULE includes a particular OMC LCC-READ command, it shall implement it as described in the appropriate section.

648 Upon receiving an LCC-READ command the OMC shall transmit a four byte configuration field containing OMC-specific data. This read function provides a mechanism for the PHY to read data from the OMC. Three read commands are available, READ-CAPABILITY, which is used to recover data about the OMC's capabilities and is shown in ***Table 34***, READ-MFG-INFO, which is used to retrieve manufacturing ID and vendor-specific information, and READ-CUSTOM, which provides a configuration field that is left to the implementer's definition.

649 Following an LCC-READ command the M-TX shall transmit four PWM-b1 delimited bytes to complement the configuration field, illustrated in ***Figure 62***. A PWM-b1 delimited byte shall consist of eight PWM-b1s delimited by PWM-b0s. These bytes shall take the common construction of eight PWM-b1s delimited by a PWM-b0 at the beginning and end to make ten PWM bits. The M-TX transmitted PWM-b1 bytes can be used by the OMC to time the READ data onto the O-RX data outputs to the M-RX.

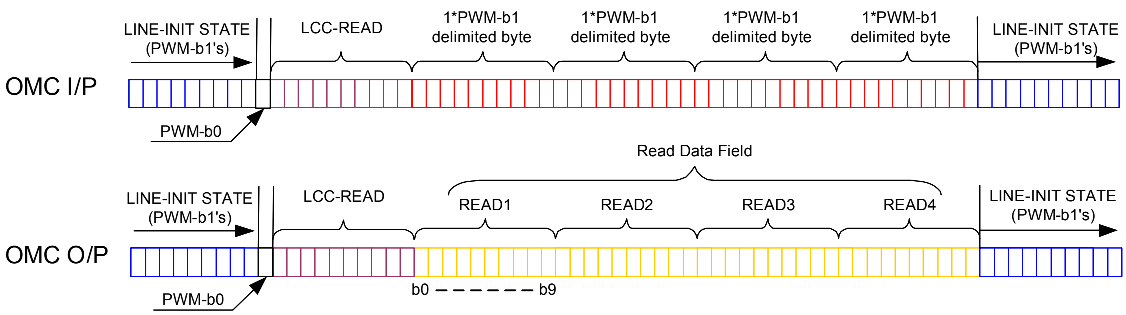


Figure 62 OMC READ Function

7.6.2.2.1 OMC – LCC-READ-CAPABILITY

650 The READ-CAPABILITY function can be used to retrieve an OMC's capabilities for PHY configuration. Following an LCC-READ-CAPABILITY the OMC shall transmit a four byte field of capability data to the M-RX as defined in ***Table 34***.

651 Details on the setting of the attributes listed in ***Table 34*** are defined in ***Section 8.4***.

Table 34 LCC-READ-CAPABILITY Supported Capabilities Bit Definitions

READ	BIT	Capabilities
READ1	0	DELIMITER (always 0)
	1	MC_HSMODE_Capability
	2	MC_HSGEAR_Capability (up to which GEAR) – bit0 (LSB)
	3	MC_HSGEAR_Capability (up to which GEAR) – bit1
	4	MC_HS_START_TIME – Var – bit0 (LSB)
	5	MC_HS_START_TIME – Var – bit1
	6	MC_HS_START_TIME – Var – bit2
	7	MC_HS_START_TIME – Var – bit3
	8	MC_HS_START_TIME – Range – bit0
	9	DELIMITER (always 0)

Table 34 LCC-READ-CAPABILITY Supported Capabilities Bit Definitions (continued)

READ	BIT	Capabilities
READ2	0	DELIMITER (always 0)
	1	MC_HSGEAR_Capability (up to which GEAR) - bit2 (MSB)
	2	RESERVED
	3	MC_RX_SA_Capability
	4	MC_RX_LA_Capability
	5	MC_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH – bit0 (LSB)
	6	MC_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH – bit1
	7	MC_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH – bit2
	8	MC_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH – bit3
	9	DELIMITER (always 0)
READ3	0	DELIMITER (always 0)
	1	MC_PWMG0_Capability
	2	MC_PWMGEAR_Capability (up to which GEAR) – bit0 (LSB)
	3	MC_PWMGEAR_Capability (up to which GEAR) – bit1
	4	MC_PWMGEAR_Capability (up to which GEAR) – bit2
	5	MC_HS_Unterminated_Capability
	6	MC_LS_Terminated_Capability
	7	MC_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Capability
	8	MC_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Capability
	9	DELIMITER (always 0)
READ4	0	DELIMITER (always 0)
	1	OMC_TYPE_Capability (Advanced = 0)
	2	RESERVED
	3	RESERVED
	4	RESERVED
	5	RESERVED
	6	RESERVED
	7	RESERVED
	8	RESERVED
	9	DELIMITER (always 0)

7.6.2.2.2 OMC – LCC-READ-MFG-INFO and LCC-READ-VEND-INFO

652 The READ-MFG-INFO function can be used to retrieve the Manufacturing ID and vendor-specific information from an OMC. The Manufacturing ID two byte field shall be constructed as defined in ***[ITUT01]***. There are two LCCs assigned for this function that follow the four byte format as defined in ***Section 7.6.2.2***.

653 After receiving an LCC-READ-MFG-INFO an OMC shall transmit two delimited bytes containing Manufacturing ID in the fields READ1 and READ2, followed by two delimited bytes containing vendor-specific information in fields READ3 and READ4, defined in ***Table 35***.

654 After receiving an LCC-READ-VEND-INFO an OMC shall transmit an additional four delimited bytes containing vendor-specific information as defined in ***Table 35***. This additional vendor-specific information complements the two bytes transmitted during an LCC-READ-MFG-INFO triggered read.

655 The content of vendor-specific information is not defined further in this specification to allow full implementation flexibility. For example, the field could be fixed, reporting IC revision data, or programmable, using Non-Volatile Memory, supporting OMC revision data.

656 Further description of the bytes listed in ***Table 35***is defined in ***Table 57***

Table 35 LCC-READ-MFG-INFO and LCC-READ-VEND-INFO Byte Map

Byte	READ-MFG-INFO	READ-VEND-INFO
READ1	MC_MFG_ID_Part1	MC_Vendor_Info_Part1
READ2	MC_MFG_ID_Part2	MC_Vendor_Info_Part2
READ3	MC_PHY_MajorMinor_Release_Capability	MC_Vendor_Info_Part3
READ4	MC_PHY_Editorial_Release_Capability	MC_Vendor_Info_Part4

7.6.2.2.3 OMC – LCC-READ-CUSTOM

657 The READ-CUSTOM function is intended for stand-alone test purposes only and therefore does not require protocol support. Provision is made for two READ-CUSTOM LCCs addressing the O-RX and O-TX individually. This read function shall follow the four byte format as defined in ***Section 7.6.2.2***.

7.7 OMC – M-PHY Conformance

658 There are different levels of M-PHY conformance for an OMC as defined in ***Table 36***.

659 An OMC shall support the features in ***Table 36*** labeled “Required”. An OMC may support features labeled “Optional”. An OMC shall not support features labeled as “Not Supported”.

Table 36 OMC M-PHY Conformance

Feature	Support
SLEEP State	Required
PWM-BURST-MODE – GEAR1	Required
PWM-BURST-MODE GEARs other than GEAR1	Optional
HS-BURST-MODE	Optional
STALL State	Required If HS-BURST-MODE is supported
LINE-CFG State	Required
WRITE-ATTRIBUTE Command	Required
WRITE-CUSTOM Command	Optional
READ-CAPABILITY Command	Required for Advanced OMC
READ-CUSTOM Command	Optional

Table 36 OMC M-PHY Conformance (continued)

Feature	Support
READ-MFG-INFO and READ-VEND-INFO	Required for Advanced OMC
LINE-RESET State	Required
HIBERN8 State	Required
SYS-BURST-MODE	Not Supported

7.8 OMC – Test Methodology

660 An OMC shall be tested against the M-PHY-specified electrical characteristics. The OMC shall provide a signal at its outputs that conforms to all M-RX requirements for any valid input signals provided by an M-TX, except as provided for in this section. For conformance testing this requirement is inclusive of the galvanic connection between the OMC and MODULE.

661 Parameters requiring special attention for the OMC use-case, i.e. jitter, propagation delay, POR timing etc, have test conditions or notes outlined within ***Section 7***. These conditions can be found alongside the appropriate parameter definition.

8 The Protocol Interface

662 This section defines the Protocol Interface of M-PORTs. This interface connects an M-PORT with the Protocol Layer that utilize M-PHY for the Physical Layer. Protocols applying M-PHY technology include UniPro℠ and DigRF℠ v4. The M-PORT Protocol Interface is represented in ***Figure 63***.

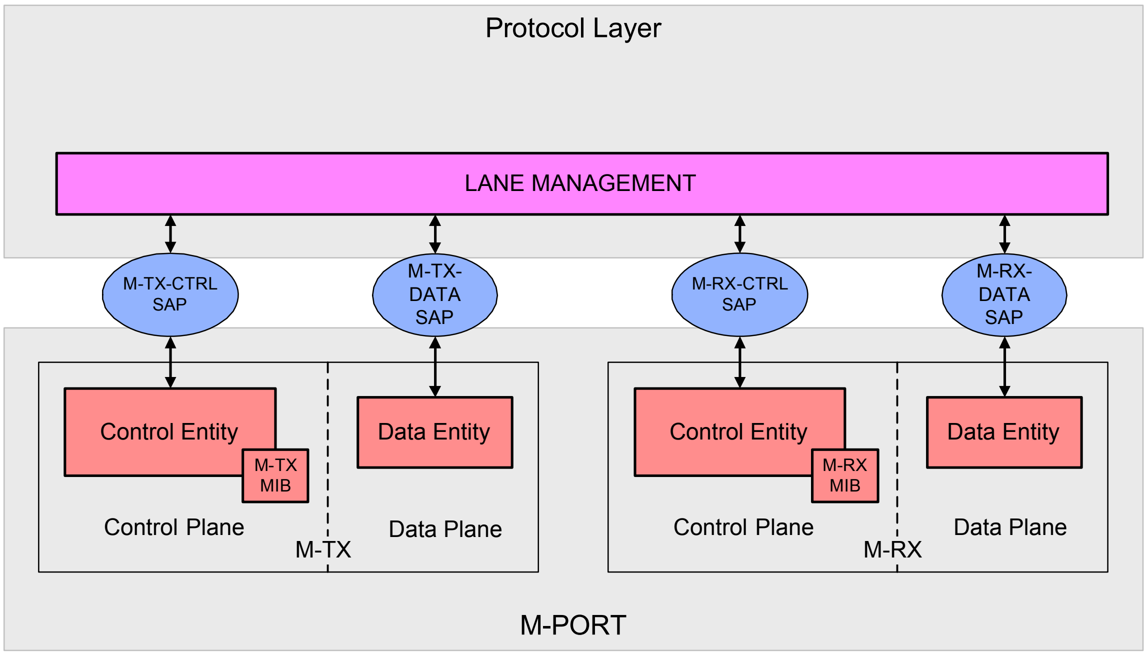


Figure 63 M-PORT Protocol Interface

663 The normative interface specification is based on service access points (SAPs) and service primitives. M-TX-DATA SAP (M-TX Data Service Access Point) and M-RX-DATA SAP (M-RX Data Service Access Point) provide access to the data services of an M-TX and an M-RX, respectively. M-TX-CTRL SAP (M-TX Control Service Access Point) and M-RX-CTRL SAP (M-RX Control Service Access Point) provide access to configuration and reset services of an M-TX and M-RX, respectively.

664 All data transported across LANEs goes through, and is controlled by, the M-TX-DATA and M-RX-DATA SAPs, while the M-TX and M-RX local RESET, LINE-RESET, mode and parameter settings (configuration) are controlled through the M-TX-CTRL and M-RX-CTRL SAPs.

665 An M-PORT may consist of one or more M-TXs and one or more M-RXs. All individual M-TXs and M-RXs in an M-PORT are independent from the Protocol Interface perspective and each MODULE has its own DATA and CTRL SAP. Constraints on supported MODULE functionality of multi-LANE SUB-LINKS are specified in ***Section 4.9***. LINK composition and usage of LANEs shall be defined by protocols that utilize M-PHY technology for the Physical Layer.

8.1 Service Primitive Naming Convention

666 This document uses an OSI-conforming naming convention for service primitives. Service primitive names are structured as follows:

667 <service-primitive>::= <name-of-service-primitive> ({<parameter>, }*)

668 <name-of-service-primitive> ::= <layer-identifier> - <service-primitive-name> . <primitive>

669 <parameter> ::= <service control information> | <service user data>

670 <layer-identifier> ::= M (or M-LANE or M-CTRL)

671 <service-primitive-name> ::= e.g. SYMBOL | PREPARE | CFGGET | CFGSET | …

672 <primitive> ::= request | indication | response | confirm

673 Services are specified by describing the service primitives and parameters that characterize them. A service may have one or more related primitives that constitute the activity that is related to that particular service. Each service primitive may have zero or more parameters that convey the information required to provide the service.

674 A primitive can be one of four generic types:

675 • Request: The request primitive is passed from the Protocol Layer to a MODULE to request that a service is initiated by the MODULE.

676 • Indication: The indication primitive is passed from a MODULE to the Protocol Layer to indicate an event that is significant to the Protocol Layer. This event may be logically related to a remote service request, or it may be caused by a LANE event.

677 • Response: The response primitive is passed from Protocol Layer to a MODULE to complete a procedure previously invoked by an indication primitive.

678 • Confirm: The confirm primitive is passed from a MODULE to the Protocol Layer to convey the results of one or more associated previous service requests.

8.2 M-TX-DATA and M-RX-DATA SAP

679 The M-TX-DATA SAP and M-RX-DATA SAP contain service primitives for data transfer between the Protocol Layer and the MODULEs of an M-PORT. More specifically, M-TX-DATA SAP provides service primitives for sending data, FILLER symbols, changing the LINE state between BURST-SAVE loop, and sending programmable synchronization pattern during SYNC period of HS-BURST. M-RX-DATA SAP provides service primitives to transfer received data, indicate LINE state change between BURST-SAVE loop and reception of FILLER symbols to the Protocol Layer. Each MODULE (M-TX or M-RX) shall have its own SAP (M-TX-DATA SAP or M-RX-DATA SAP, respectively). ***Table 37*** and ***Table 38*** give an overview of the service primitives provided by the M-TX-DATA SAP and the M-RX-DATA SAP, respectively, and displays the respective section numbers.

Table 37 M-TX-DATA SAP Service Primitives

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
M-LANE-SYMBOL	***8.2.1***	n/a	n/a	***8.2.3***
M-LANE-PREPARE	***8.2.4***	n/a	n/a	***8.2.6***
M-LANE-SYNC	***8.2.7***	n/a	n/a	***8.2.8***
M-LANE-BurstEnd	***8.2.9***	n/a	n/a	***8.2.11***
M-LANE-SaveState	n/a	***8.2.13***	n/a	n/a
M-LANE-AdaptStart	***8.2.15***	n/a	n/a	***8.2.16***
M-LANE-AdaptComplete	n/a	***8.2.17***	n/a	n/a

Table 38 M-RX-DATA SAP Service Primitives

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
M-LANE-SYMBOL	n/a	***8.2.2***	n/a	n/a

Table 38 M-RX-DATA SAP Service Primitives (continued)

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
M-LANE-PREPARE	n/a	***8.2.5***	n/a	n/a
M-LANE-BurstEnd	n/a	***8.2.10***	n/a	n/a
M-LANE-HIBERN8Exit	n/a	***8.2.12***	n/a	n/a
M-LANE-AdaptComplete	n/a	***8.2.17***	n/a	n/a

680 There are parameters associated with some of these primitives. ***Table 39*** defines the names, types and valid ranges of these parameters.

Table 39 Parameters of M-TX-DATA SAP and M-RX-DATA Service Primitives

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
DataN_Ctrl	Boolean	FALSE, TRUE	Data symbol or control symbol selector
DataValue	Integer	0 to 1023	Normal PAYLOAD data. When 8b10b coding is enabled, the valid range is 0 to 255.
MarkerN_Filler	Boolean	FALSE, TRUE	MARKER or FILLER control symbol selection
MarkerNumber	Integer	0 to 6	Type of MARKER symbol selector
3b4b_Error	Boolean	FALSE, TRUE	3b4b Sub-block coding error
5b6b_Error	Boolean	FALSE, TRUE	5b6b Sub-block coding error
Res_Error	Boolean	FALSE, TRUE	Reserved symbol error
RD_Error	Boolean	FALSE, TRUE	Running Disparity error
State	Enum	SLEEP, STALL	Entering SAVE state
Status	Boolean	ACCEPTED, BUSY	Indicates acceptance of symbol
SyncData	Integer	0 to 1023	Data for programmable synchronization sequence
WaitType	Enum	NoConfig, Config	Indicates minimum waiting time in SAVE state

681 The following sections define the meaning of M-TX-DATA SAP and M-RX-DATA SAP service primitives and their associated parameters.

8.2.1 M-LANE-SYMBOL.request

682 This primitive requests the transmission of either a PAYLOAD data symbol or a control symbol from the Protocol Layer to an M-TX. The control symbol can be either a MARKER symbol or a FILLER symbol. See ***Section 4.5.2*** and ***Section 4.7.2*** for constraints on MARKER usage by the Protocol.

8.2.1.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

683 The semantics of the M-LANE-SYMBOL.request are as follows:

```
684 M-LANE-SYMBOL.request (
685                        DataN_Ctrl,
686                        DataValue,
687                        MarkerN_Filler,
688                        MarkerNumber
```

689)

690 ***Table 40*** specifies the parameters for the M-LANE-SYMBOL request primitive.

Table 40 Parameters for the M-LANE-SYMBOL.request Primitive

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
DataN_Ctrl	Boolean	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1	DataN_Ctrl set to "FALSE" selects value associated with the DataValue parameter for transmission; DataN_Ctrl set to "TRUE" chooses either a MARKER or a FILLER control symbol based on the value of MarkerN_Filler parameter for transmission.
DataValue	Integer	0 to 1023	Normal PAYLOAD data. When 8b10b coding is enabled, the valid range is 0 to 255. This parameter shall be ignored when DataN_Ctrl set to "TRUE".
MarkerN_Filler	Boolean	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1	MarkerN_Filler set to "FALSE" selects MARKER symbol based on the value of MarkerNumber parameter for transmission; MarkerN_Filler set to "TRUE" selects the FILLER symbol for transmission; This parameter shall be ignored when DataN_Ctrl set to "FALSE".
MarkerNumber	Integer	0 to 6	MarkerNumber set to n selects MKn for transmission, where n is any number in the valid range. For example, if MarkerNumber = 0, MK0 is selected. This parameter shall be ignored when DataN_Ctrl is set to "FALSE" or MarkerN_Filler is set to "TRUE".

8.2.1.2 When Generated

691 This primitive shall be generated by the Protocol Layer in order to transmit a data symbol, a MARKER symbol or a FILLER symbol over the LINE. This primitive, with details as M-LANE-SYMBOL.request (FALSE, DataValue, X, X), where DataValue takes valid range as defined in ***Table 40*** and X means ignore that parameter, shall be generated by the Protocol Layer in order to transmit a symbol over the LINE.

692 Since MARKER0 symbol is needed to achieve symbol boundary synchronization at M-RX, before actual PAYLOAD data transmission starts, the Protocol Layer shall generate this primitive with MARKER0 symbol details, i.e., M-LANE-SYMBOL.request (TRUE, X, FALSE, 0), where X means ignore that parameter, at the very beginning of a data transmission BURST. In other words, the Protocol Layer shall generate this primitive with MARKER0 symbol details after issuing an M-LANE-PREPARE.request, but before issuing this primitive with details other than MARKER0 symbol.

693 This primitive with MKn symbol details, i.e., M-LANE-SYMBOL.request (TRUE, X, FALSE, n), where X means ignore a parameter and n is the MarkerNumber, is used by the Protocol Layer to request a MARKERn during a BURST.

694 Protocol Layer may request transmission of a FILLER symbol, explicitly, by using this primitive with FILLER symbol details, i.e., M-LANE-SYMBOL.request (TRUE, X, TRUE, X), where X means ignore that parameter. Note that M-TX will insert FILLER symbols autonomously in a BURST state as described in the ***Section 4.7.2.4***.

695 The Protocol Layer shall not exceed the valid range of any parameter. The Protocol Layer shall not request this primitive with DataN_Ctrl set to "TRUE" when 8b10b coding is disabled. If this primitive is requested

with DataN_Ctrl set to “TRUE” when 8b10b coding is disabled, the MODULE might not behave properly. A MODULE shall not verify the validity of any parameter value. Out of range values might lead to malfunction of a MODULE.

8.2.1.3 Effect on Receipt

696 When this primitive is requested with DataN_Ctrl set to “FALSE” and 8b10b encoding is enabled, the M-TX shall encode the DataValue byte into an 8b10b Data symbol and then transfer the symbol over the LINE.

697 When this primitive is requested with DataN_Ctrl set to “FALSE” and 8b10b coding is disabled, the M-TX shall transfer the symbol in DataValue unchanged over the LINE.

698 When this primitive is requested with DataN_Ctrl set to “TRUE”, MarkerN_Filler set to “FALSE”, MarkerNumber set to a valid MARKER symbol number, and 8b10b encoding is enabled, the M-TX shall transmit an 8b10b control symbol corresponding to the requested MARKER symbol over the LINE.

699 When this primitive is requested with DataN_Ctrl set to “TRUE” and MarkerN_Filler set to “TRUE”, and 8b10b coding is enabled, the M-TX shall transmit the 8b10b control symbol corresponding to the FILLER symbol over the LINE.

700 Refer to ***Section 4.5*** for encoding and serialization process.

8.2.2 M-LANE-SYMBOL.indication

701 This primitive reports the reception of a data PAYLOAD byte or a MARKER or a FILLER symbol over the LINE.

8.2.2.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

702 The semantics of the M-LANE-SYMBOL.indication primitive are as follows:

```
703 M-LANE-SYMBOL.indication(
704                             DataN_Ctrl,
705                             DataValue,
706                             MarkerN_Filler,
707                             MarkerNumber,
708                             3b4b_Error,
709                             5b6b_Error,
710                             RD_Error,
711                             Res_Error
712                         )
```

713 ***Table 41*** specifies the parameters for the M-LANE-SYMBOL.indication primitive.

Table 41 Parameters for the M-LANE-SYMBOL.indication Primitive

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
DataN_Ctrl	Boolean	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1	When DataN_Ctrl set to “FALSE”, the value associated with the DataValue parameter shall be considered as a received PAYLOAD symbol; When DataN_Ctrl is set to “TRUE”, the value of MarkerN_Filler shall be used to identify the type of control symbol received
DataValue	Integer	0 to 1023	Indicates normal PAYLOAD data, one symbol in length. When 8b10b decoding is enabled, the valid range is 0 to 255. This parameter shall be ignored when DataN_Ctrl set to “TRUE”

Table 41 Parameters for the M-LANE-SYMBOL.indication Primitive (continued)

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
MarkerN_Filler	Boolean	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1	If the value set to MarkerN_Filler is "FALSE", then the value associated with a MarkerNumber parameter shall be used in identifying the type of MARKER symbol received; When MarkerN_Filler is set to "TRUE", it shall be considered as reception of a FILLER symbol over the LINE; This parameter shall be ignored when DataN_Ctrl set to "FALSE"
MarkerNumber	Integer	0 to 6	MarkerNumber set to n indicates MKn is received, where n is any number in the valid range. For example, if MarkerNumber = 0, MK0 is received. This parameter shall be ignored when DataN_Ctrl is set to "FALSE" or MarkerN_Filler is set to "TRUE".
3b4b_Error	Boolean	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1	3b4b Sub-block coding error; FALSE: No error detected TRUE: Error detected
5b6b_Error	Boolean	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1	5b6b Sub-block coding error; FALSE: No error detected TRUE: Error detected
RD_Error	Boolean	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1	Running Disparity error; FALSE: No error detected TRUE: Error detected
Res_Error	Boolean	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1	Reserved symbol error; FALSE: No error detected TRUE: Error detected

8.2.2.2 When Generated

714 This primitive shall be generated by the M-RX when an 8b10b data symbol or a control symbol corresponding to any valid MARKER symbol, or FILLER is received over the LINE.

715 When 8b10b decoding is disabled, DataN_Ctrl shall be set to "FALSE", DataValue shall carry the symbol as received and all other fields shall be ignored.

716 When 8b10b decoding is enabled, if the received 8b10b symbol is a valid data symbol, DataValue shall carry the decoded PAYLOAD byte. In this case, 3b4b_Error, 5b6b_Error, Res_Error and DataN_Ctrl shall be set to "FALSE", and all other parameter values, except DataValue, shall be ignored

717 When 8b10b decoding is enabled, if the received 8b10b symbol is a MARKER symbol, then the M-RX shall set DataN_Ctrl to "TRUE", MarkerN_Filler to "FALSE", and MarkerNumber to a number corresponding to the received MARKER symbol. DataValue may be set to "0". The Protocol Layer shall ignore DataValue. All error parameters shall be set to "FALSE".

718 When 8b10b decoding is enabled, if the received 8b10b symbol is a FILLER symbol, then the M-RX shall set DataN_Ctrl to "TRUE" and MarkerN_Filler to "TRUE". DataValue and MarkerNumber may be set to "0". The Protocol Layer shall DataValue and MarkerNumber. All error parameters shall be set to "FALSE".

719 When 8b10b decoding is enabled, if the received 8b10b symbol is an invalid symbol, DataValue shall carry the remapped PAYLOAD byte, with potentially incorrect bits for the invalid sub-block, but correct bits of the

valid sub-block. In this case, 3b4b_Error or 5b6b_Error shall be set to “TRUE”, depending on which of the sub-blocks was in error.

720 When 8b10b decoding is enabled, if the received 8b10b symbol is a valid, but reserved symbol (i.e. not equal to a data symbol, a MARKER symbol or FILLER), DataValue shall carry the remapped PAYLOAD byte. In this case, Res_Error shall be set to “TRUE”.

721 When 8b10b decoding is enabled, if the Running Disparity (RD) in the M-RX (See ***Section 4.5.3***) computes an RD error for the currently received 8b10b symbol, the RD_Error parameter shall be set to “TRUE”. This setting shall not depend on the other error parameters described above.

8.2.2.3 Effect on Receipt

722 On receipt of the M-LANE-SYMBOL.indication primitive, the Protocol Layer is notified of the availability of inbound data byte, or the reception of a MARKER symbol or FILLER symbol, by the M-RX and generating a corresponding MARKER number or FILLER indication, and error information at M-RX. The Protocol Layer shall consume the data byte or a MARKER number along with error information, and may carry out appropriate Protocol action.

723 The Protocol Layer shall ignore MarkerN_Filler and MarkerNumber when DataN_Ctrl is set to “FALSE”, and it shall ignore DataValue when DataN_Ctrl is set to “TRUE”. The Protocol Layer shall ignore MarkerNumber when MarkerN_Filler is set to “TRUE”.

8.2.3 M-LANE-SYMBOL.confirm

724 This primitive informs the Protocol Layer that the M-TX has completed the previously issued M-LANE-SYMBOL.request.

8.2.3.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

725 The semantics of M-LANE-SYMBOL.confirm primitive are as follows

```
726 M-LANE-SYMBOL.confirm(
727                     Status
728                     )
```

729 ***Table 42*** specifies the parameters for the M-LANE-SYMBOL.confirm primitive.

Table 42 Parameters for the M-LANE-SYMBOL.confirm Primitive

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
Status	Boolean	ACCEPTED = 0, BUSY = 1	Status = ACCEPTED means that M-TX has accepted the previously requested symbol for transmission and ready for new request to be served. Status = BUSY means that M-TX has rejected the previously requested symbol; the Protocol Layer may issue the request again.

8.2.3.2 When Generated

730 This primitive shall be generated when the M-TX has either accepted or rejected the previously issued M-LANE-SYMBOL.request primitive. It also confirms that the M-TX may accept another request to transfer a PAYLOAD byte or a MARKER or a FILLER symbol from the Protocol Layer.

8.2.3.3 Effect on Receipt

731 Following the issuing of an M-LANE-SYMBOL.request and prior to the reception of an M-LANE-SYMBOL.confirm primitive, the Protocol Layer shall not trigger a new

M-LANE-SYMBOL.request primitive. Upon receiving this primitive the Protocol Layer may issue a new data or MARKER symbol, or configuration request or retry the previously rejected symbol request.

8.2.4 M-LANE-PREPARE.request

732 This primitive requests the M-TX to enter into a BURST state, either HS-BURST, PWM-BURST or SYS-BURST depending upon the mode of operation, from the power saving state. See ***Section 4*** for more details on BURST state, power saving state and operating modes.

8.2.4.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

733 The semantics of the M-LANE-PREPARE.request primitive are as follows:

734 `M-LANE-PREPARE.request (`
735 `)`

736 This primitive has no parameter.

8.2.4.2 When Generated

737 The Protocol Layer shall issue this primitive to request the M-TX to enter from power saving state to BURST state corresponding to the M-TX mode of operation. This primitive shall only be issued when the M-TX is in power saving state.

8.2.4.3 Effect on Receipt

738 The M-TX shall enter into the BURST state following the sequence of operation as described in ***Section 4.7.2***.

8.2.5 M-LANE-PREPARE.indication

739 This primitive informs the Protocol Layer that the M-RX is coming out of power saving state and entering into a BURST state (HS-BURST, PWM-BURST, or SYS-BURST) or ADAPT state depending on the M-RX mode of configuration. See ***Section 4*** for more details on BURST state, power saving state and operating modes.

8.2.5.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

740 The semantics of the M-LANE-PREPARE.indication primitive are as follows:

741 `M-LANE-PREPARE.indication (`
742 `)`

743 This primitive has no parameter.

8.2.5.2 When Generated

744 The M-RX shall issue this primitive to the Protocol Layer when M-RX detects the start of the PREPARE sub-state period while it is in power saving state.

8.2.5.3 Effect on Receipt

745 The Protocol Layer shall accept M-RX entering to the BURST state corresponding to the M-RX mode of operation and shall be prepared to receive data.

8.2.6 M-LANE-PREPARE.confirm

746 This primitive informs the Protocol Layer that the M-TX has started entering into BURST state following the reception of M-LANE-PREPARE.request.

8.2.6.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

747 The semantics of M-LANE-PREPARE.confirm primitive are as follows

748 `M-LANE-PREPARE.confirm(`
749 `                    )`

750 This primitive has no parameter.

8.2.6.2 When Generated

751 This primitive shall be generated by the M-TX when it enters into a PREPARE period upon the reception of an M-LANE-PREPARE.request primitive.

8.2.6.3 Effect on Receipt

752 Upon receiving this primitive the Protocol Layer may issue a programmable synchronization sequence through M-LANE-SYNC.request primitive when the M-TX is configured to receive external synchronization pattern from the protocol. Otherwise, the Protocol Layer may issue MARKER0 symbol request at any time during the SYNC period.

8.2.7 M-LANE-SYNC.request

753 This primitive requests the transmission of a programmable sync pattern byte wise over the LINE. For more details on SYNC sequences see ***Section 4.7.2.2***.

8.2.7.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

754 The semantics of the M-LANE-SYNC.request primitive are as follows:

755 `M-LANE-SYNC.request (`
756 `                    SyncData`
757 `                    )`

758 ***Table 43*** specifies the parameters for the M-LANE-SYNC.request primitive

Table 43 Parameters for M-LANE-SYNC.request Primitive

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
SyncData	Integer	0 to 1023	A byte of data from the programmable sync sequence

8.2.7.2 When Generated

759 This primitive shall be generated by the Protocol Layer to request the transmission of a synchronization pattern to be provided by the protocol. This primitive only has effect if the M-TX is configured to send a programmable synchronization sequence (i.e., TX_SYNC_Source is EXTERNAL_SYNC and the configured GEAR requires a synchronization pattern). The synchronization sequence shall be issued to the M-TX one byte at a time using this primitive. The Protocol Layer shall wait for the M-LANE-SYNC.confirm primitive before issuing this primitive again. The first issue of this primitive shall only take place after the Protocol Layer receives M-LANE-PREPARE.confirm primitive from the M-TX to the previously issued M-LANE-PREPARE.request primitive and before SYNC period starts.

8.2.7.3 Effect on Receipt

760 When 8b10b coding is enabled, the M-TX shall encode SyncData byte as an 8b10b symbol and then transfer the symbol over the LINE. When 8b10b coding is disabled, the M-TX shall transfer the symbol in SyncData unchanged over the LINE. Upon transmission of SyncData byte the M-TX shall issue an M-LANE-SYNC.confirm primitive to the Protocol Layer.

8.2.8 M-LANE-SYNC.confirm

761 This primitive informs the Protocol Layer that the M-TX has completed the previously issued service request M-LANE-SYNC.request.

8.2.8.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

762 The semantics of M-LANE-SYNC.confirm primitive are as follows

```
763 M-LANE-SYNC.confirm(
764                     )
```

765 This primitive has no parameter.

8.2.8.2 When Generated

766 This primitive shall be generated when the M-TX has completed serving the previously issued M-LANE-SYNC.request primitive and is ready to accept another synchronization sequence symbol from the Protocol Layer to transfer.

8.2.8.3 Effect on Receipt

767 The Protocol Layer may issue a new synchronization symbol or MARKER symbol request upon receiving this primitive. The Protocol Layer shall not issue a new M-LANE-SYNC.request until a previously issued M-LANE-SYNC.request has been responded with this primitive.

8.2.9 M-LANE-BurstEnd.request

768 This primitive requests the M-TX to send TAIL-OF-BURST sequence.

8.2.9.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

769 The semantics of the M-LANE-BurstEnd.request primitive are as follows:

```
770 M-LANE-BurstEnd.request (
771                     )
```

772 This primitive has no parameter.

8.2.9.2 When Generated

773 The Protocol Layer shall issue this primitive to request the M-TX end BURST state and enter a SAVE state or LINE-CFG state.

8.2.9.3 Effect on Receipt

774 The M-TX shall end the BURST state following the sequence of operation as described in ***Section 4.7.2.5***.

8.2.10 M-LANE-BurstEnd.indication

775 This primitive reports the reception of a BURST CLOSURE condition to the Protocol as described in ***Section 4.7.2.5***.

8.2.10.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

776 The semantics of the M-LANE-BurstEnd.indication primitive are as follows:

```
777 M-LANE-BurstEnd.indication(
778                         )
```

779 This primitive has no parameter.

8.2.10.2 When Generated

780 This primitive shall be generated by the M-RX to the Protocol Layer when M-RX detects a sequence of b0 or b1 on LINE over the period defined in ***Section 4.7.2.5*** while it is in BURST state.

8.2.10.3 Effect on Receipt

781 Protocol Layer shall accept end of the BURST state and shall consider that the M-RX is entering either into LINE-CFG state when sequence of b1 received over a period as described in ***Section 4.7.2.5.2*** or SAVE state when sequence of b0 received over a period as described in ***Section 4.7.2.5.1***.

8.2.11 M-LANE-BurstEnd.confirm

782 This primitive informs the Protocol Layer that the M-TX has started sending a TAIL-OF-BURST sequence following the reception of M-LANE-BurstEnd.request.

8.2.11.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

783 The semantics of M-LANE-BurstEnd.confirm primitive are as follows:

784 `M-LANE-BurstEnd.confirm( WaitType )`

785 ***Table 44*** specifies the parameters for the M-LANE-BurstEnd.confirm primitive

Table 44 Parameters for M-LANE-BurstEnd.confirm Primitive

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
WaitType	Enum	NoConfig = 0, Config = 1	Indicates minimum wait time before new BURST is requested

8.2.11.2 When Generated

786 The M-TX shall generate this primitive once it starts sending a TAIL-OF-BURST sequence after the reception of an M-LANE-BurstEnd.request primitive.

8.2.11.3 Effect on Receipt

787 Upon receiving this primitive, the Protocol Layer shall wait before asserting M-LANE-PREPARE.request for at least TX_Min_SAVE_Config_Time_Capability if any configuration request is made (i.e. WaitType is “Config”) or at least TX_Min_SLEEP_NoConfig_Time_Capability in SLEEP state, or TX_Min_STALL_NoConfig_Time_Capability in STALL state, when no configuration request is made (i.e. WaitType is “NoConfig”) after M-LANE-SaveState.indication primitive issued by M-TX.

8.2.12 M-LANE-HIBERN8Exit.indication

788 This primitive reports the exit of HIBERN8 state to the Protocol as described in ***Section 4.7.1.3***.

8.2.12.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

789 The semantics of the M-LANE-HIBERN8Exit.indication primitive are as follows:

```
790 M-LANE-HIBERN8Exit.indication(
791                              )
```

792 This primitive has no parameter.

8.2.12.2 When Generated

793 This primitive shall be generated by the M-RX to the Protocol Layer when M-RX detects exit of HIBERN8 state as defined in ***Section 4.7.1.3*** while M-RX is in HIBERN8 state.

8.2.12.3 Effect on Receipt

794 Protocol Layer shall accept exit of HIBERN8 state and shall consider that the M-RX is entering either to SLEEP or to STALL state based on the value of RX_MODE attribute. The Protocol Layer may use this primitive to get out of hibernation.

8.2.13 M-LANE-SaveState.indication

795 This primitive reports entry into a SAVE state to the Protocol.

8.2.13.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

796 The semantics of the M-LANE-SaveState.indication primitive are as follows:

797 `M-LANE-SaveState.indication( State )`

798 ***Table 45*** specifies the parameters for the M-LANE-SaveState.indication primitive

Table 45 Parameters for M-LANE-SaveState.indication Primitive

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
State	Enum	SLEEP = 0, STALL = 1	SAVE state

8.2.13.2 When Generated

799 This primitive shall be generated by an M-TX when the M-TX enters either SLEEP state or STALL state.

8.2.13.3 Effect on Receipt

800 Protocol Layer shall accept entry of the M-TX into either SLEEP or STALL state.

8.2.14 M-LANE-MRXSaveState.indication

801 This primitive reports M-RX entry into a SAVE state to the Protocol.

8.2.14.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

802 The semantics of the M-LANE-MRXSaveState.indication primitive are as follows:

803 `M-LANE-MRXSaveState.indication( State )`

804 ***Table 46*** specifies the parameters for the M-LANE-MRXSaveState.indication primitive

Table 46 Parameters for M-LANE-MRXSaveState.indication Primitive

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
State	Enum	SLEEP = 0, STALL = 1	SAVE state

8.2.14.2 When Generated

805 This primitive shall be generated by an M-RX when the M-RX enters either SLEEP state or STALL state.

8.2.14.3 Effect on Receipt

806 Protocol Layer shall accept entry of the M-RX into either SLEEP or STALL state.

8.2.15 M-LANE-AdaptStart.request

807 This primitive requests the transmission of the ADAPT sequence as described in ***Section 4.7.2.3***.

8.2.15.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

808 The semantics of the M-LANE-AdaptStart.request primitive are as follows:

809 `M-LANE-AdaptStart.request (`
810 `)`

811 This primitive has no parameter.

8.2.15.2 When Generated

812 This primitive shall be generated by the Protocol Layer to request the ADAPT sub-state upon completion of the PREPARE sub-state. The Protocol Layer shall issue this primitive when M-TX is configured in HS-MODE and is in STALL state. The Protocol Layer may control the duration of the ADAPT sequence period by setting the appropriate value of TX_HS_ADAPT_LENGTH prior to issuing this primitive.

8.2.15.3 Effect on Receipt

813 M-TX shall prepare to transition from the STALL state to the PREPARE sub-state upon receiving this primitive. After completion of the PREPARE period, the M-TX shall transmit the ADAPT sequence for T_{ADAPT} as described in ***Section 4.7.2.3***.

8.2.16 M-LANE-AdaptStart.confirm

814 This primitive confirms the Start of the ADAPT sequence initiated due to the previously issued M-LANE-AdaptStart.request primitive.

8.2.16.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

815 The semantics of the M-LANE-AdaptStart.confirm primitive are as follows:

816 `M-LANE-AdaptStart.confirm (`
817 `)`

818 This primitive has no parameter.

8.2.16.2 When Generated

819 This primitive shall be generated by M-TX upon entering the PREPARE sub-state due to reception of the M-LANE-AdaptStart.request primitive.

8.2.16.3 Effect on Receipt

820 The Protocol Layer shall wait for completion of the ADAPT sequence indicated by M-TX through generation of the M-LANE-AdaptComplete.indication service primitive and shall not request a new burst in between.

8.2.17 M-LANE-AdaptComplete.indication

821 This primitive indicates the completion of the ADAPT sequence.

8.2.17.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

822 The semantics of the M-LANE-AdaptComplete.indication primitive are as follows:

823 `M-LANE-AdaptComplete.indication (`
824 `)`

825 This primitive has no parameter.

8.2.17.2 When Generated

826 This primitive shall be generated by the M-TX and by the M-RX upon completion of the ADAPT sequence as described in ***Section 4.7.2.3***. After the ADAPT sequence, MODULE shall return to the STALL state, without going through LINE-CFG.

8.2.17.3 Effect on Receipt

827 The Protocol Layer shall consider completion of the ADAPT sequence when it receives this primitive. The Protocol Layer may start a new burst.

8.2.18 Sequence of Service Primitives

828 The possible relationships among primitives at M-TX-DATA SAP and M-RX-DATA SAP are illustrated by the given time sequence diagrams shown in ***Figure 64***. They also indicate a possible logical relationship in terms of time. Primitives that occur earlier in time and connected by dotted lines are logical predecessors of subsequent primitives.

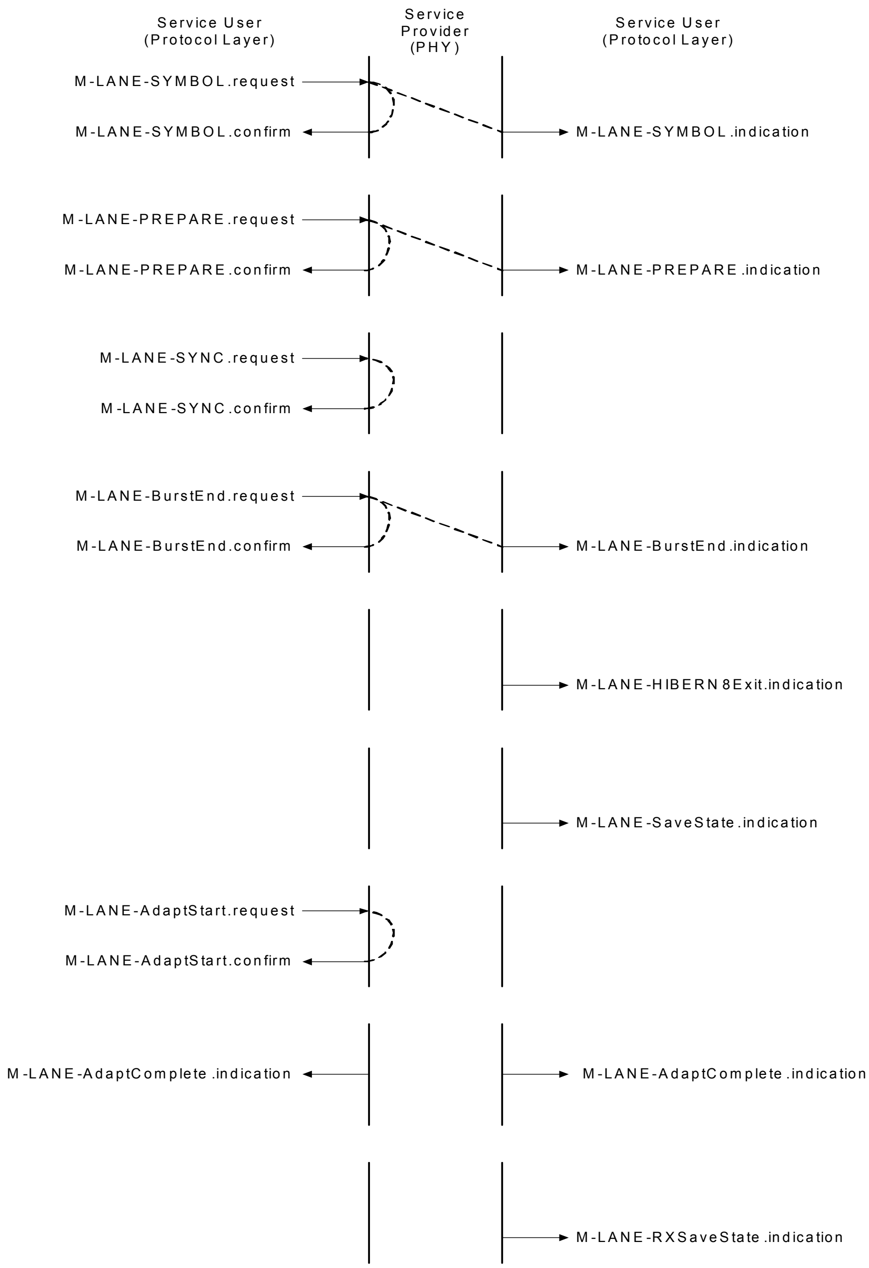


Figure 64 Sequence of Primitives at M-TX-DATA SAP and M-RX-DATA SAP

8.3 M-TX-CTRL SAP and M-RX-CTRL SAP

829 M-TX-CTRL SAP and M-RX-CTRL SAP contain service primitives for configuring M-TX and M-RX, respectively, and obtaining capability and status information from these MODULEs. ***Table 47*** and ***Table 48*** give an overview of the service primitives provided by M-TX-CTRL SAP and M-RX-CTRL SAP, respectively, and display the respective section numbers. There are parameters associated with these primitives. ***Section 8.4*** defines the name, type and valid range of these parameters.

Table 47 M-TX-CTRL SAP Service Primitives

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
M-CTRL-CFGGET	***8.3.1***	n/a	n/a	***8.3.2***
M-CTRL-CFGSET	***8.3.3***	n/a	n/a	***8.3.4***
M-CTRL-CFGREADY	***8.3.5***	n/a	n/a	***8.3.6***
M-CTRL-RESET	***8.3.7***	n/a	n/a	***8.3.8***
M-CTRL-LINERESET	***8.3.9***	n/a	n/a	***8.3.11***

Table 48 M-RX-CTRL SAP Service Primitives

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
M-CTRL-CFGGET	***8.3.1***	n/a	n/a	***8.3.2***
M-CTRL-CFGSET	***8.3.3***	n/a	n/a	***8.3.4***
M-CTRL-CFGREADY	***8.3.5***	n/a	n/a	***8.3.6***
M-CTRL-RESET	***8.3.7***	n/a	n/a	***8.3.8***
M-CTRL-LINERESET	n/a	***8.3.10***	n/a	n/a
M-CTRL-LCCReadStatus	n/a	***8.3.12***	n/a	n/a

830 The parameters associated with these primitives are defined in ***Table 49*** with the name, type and valid range.

Table 49 Parameters of M-TX-CTRL SAP and M-RX-CTRL SAP Service Primitives

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
MIBattribute	Attribute name	Any AttributeID as defined in ***Section 8.4***	The name of the MIB attribute
MIBvalue	Depends on attribute	Depends on the attribute as defined in ***Section 8.4***	The value of the MIB attribute
TActivateControl	Enum	ProtocolControlled = 0, PhyControlled = 1	Indicates which Layer controls $T_{ACTIVATE}$ time and driving DIF-N. TActivateControl is an optional parameter. The default value is ProtocolControlled.

831 The following sections define the meaning of M-TX-CTRL SAP and M-RX-CTRL SAP service primitives and their associated parameters.

8.3.1 M-CTRL-CFGGET.request

832 This primitive requests information about a MIB attribute, which are defined in ***Section 8.4***.

8.3.1.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

833 The semantics of the M-CTRL-CFGGET.request primitive are as follows:

834 `M-CTRL-CFGGET.request(`

```
835                     MIBattribute
836                     )
```

837 The primitive parameter is defined in ***Table 49***.

8.3.1.2 When Generated

838 This primitive is generated by the Protocol Layer to obtain information of an MIBattribute from a MODULE's MIB. The Protocol Layer shall ensure that the requested MIBattribute exists. The MODULE may not check the validity of an MIBattribute. Undefined attribute names may result in malfunctioning of a MODULE. After issuing an M-CTRL-CFGGET.request primitive, the Protocol Layer shall wait for the M-CTRL-CFGGET.confirm primitive reception before issuing a new configuration service request.

8.3.1.3 Effect on Receipt

839 The MODULE retrieves value of the requested attribute from its MIB and responds with M-CTRL-CFGGET.confirm that gives the result.

8.3.2 M-CTRL-CFGGET.confirm

840 This primitive reports the result of a service request on MIBattribute.

8.3.2.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

841 The semantics of the M-CTRL-CFGGET.confirm primitive are as follows:

```
842 M-CTRL-CFGGET.confirm(
843                     MIBvalue
844                     )
```

845 The primitive parameters are defined in ***Table 49***.

8.3.2.2 When Generated

846 This primitive shall be generated by a MODULE in response to the most recent M-CTRL-CFGGET.request by the Protocol Layer. The MIBvalue parameter shall contain the value of the requested MIBattribute.

8.3.2.3 Effect on Receipt

847 The Protocol Layer shall accept this primitive in order to receive the value of the requested MIBattribute. The MIBvalue parameter will carry this value.

8.3.3 M-CTRL-CFGSET.request

848 This primitive requests to set an MIB attribute indicated by the parameter MIBattribute to the value hold by the parameter MIBvalue.

8.3.3.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

849 The semantics of the M-CTRL-CFGSET.request primitive are as follows:

```
850 M-CTRL-CFGSET.request(
851                     MIBattribute,
852                     MIBvalue
853                     )
```

854 The primitive parameters are defined in ***Table 49***.

8.3.3.2 When Generated

855 The Protocol Layer shall generate this primitive to set an MIB attribute indicated by MIBattribute parameter with the value of MIBvalue parameter. The Protocol Layer shall ensure that the requested MIBattribute exists and the MIBvalue is in valid range of the requested MIBattribute. A MODULE may not check the validity of

MIBattribute and MIBvalue. Undefined attribute names or out of range attribute values may result in malfunctioning of the MODULE. After issuing an M-CTRL-CFGSET.request primitive, the Protocol Layer shall wait for the M-CTRL-CFGSET.confirm primitive reception before issuing a new configuration service request.

8.3.3.3 Effect on Receipt

856 The MODULE shall set the specified MIBattribute with the value carried by MIBvalue in its MIB registry. If setting the value of an MIBattribute implies a specific action, then this action shall not be performed until the M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request primitive is received. The MODULE shall respond with M-CTRL-CFGSET.confirm after registering the MIBvalue for the requested attribute.

8.3.4 M-CTRL-CFGSET.confirm

857 This primitive confirms registering the attribute value based on the last issued request to set the value of an attribute in the MIB.

8.3.4.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

858 The semantics of the M-CTRL-CFGSET.confirm primitive are as follows:

```
859 M-CTRL-CFGSET.confirm(
860                         )
```

861 This primitive has no parameter.

8.3.4.2 When Generated

862 This primitive shall be generated by a MODULE in response to the most recent M-CTRL-CFGSET.request by the Protocol Layer after setting the value of the requested MIBattribute.

8.3.4.3 Effect on Receipt

863 The Protocol Layer is informed about serving the M-CTRL-CFGSET.request issued previously. The Protocol Layer may issue another service request upon receiving this primitive.

8.3.5 M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request

864 This primitive requests a MODULE to update the operation settings of MIB attribute(s) with the corresponding MIB values that are issued through previous M-CTRL-CFGSET.request.

8.3.5.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

865 The semantics of the M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request primitive are as follows:

```
866 M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request(
867                         )
```

868 This primitive has no parameter.

8.3.5.2 When Generated

869 The Protocol Layer shall issue this primitive after sending all setting requests to MIB attributes that compose a consistent new configuration parameter set. Issuing this primitive enables the MODULE to perform specific actions based on the MIB attributes set and the values assigned to these attributes. If a MODULE is in BURST state when this primitive is issued, then the Protocol Layer shall bring the MODULE into power saving state before specific actions can be taken and the new setting become effective.

8.3.5.3 Effect on Receipt

870 The MODULE shall perform specific actions, if any, required upon receiving this primitive, based on the configuration set requests received before. These actions shall be performed, if needed, when the MODULE is entering into or in power saving state.

8.3.6 M-CTRL-CFGREADY.confirm

871 This primitive reports the reception of M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request to update the operation settings to the configured MIB attribute(s).

8.3.6.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

872 The semantics of the M-CTRL-CFGREADY.confirm primitive are as follows:

```
873 M-CTRL-CFGREADY.confirm(
874                         )
```

875 This primitive has no parameter.

8.3.6.2 When Generated

876 This primitive shall be generated by the MODULE in response to the reception of M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request by the Protocol Layer.

8.3.6.3 Effect on Receipt

877 The Protocol Layer is informed about registering the M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request issued previously. Upon receiving this primitive, if the MODULE is in BURST state, then the Protocol Layer shall request the MODULE enter into power saving state.

8.3.7 M-CTRL-RESET.request

878 This primitive requests the MODULE reset to its Power-on Reset state. All previous configuration settings are lost.

8.3.7.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

879 The semantics of the M-CTRL-RESET.request primitive are as follows:

```
880 M-CTRL-RESET.request(
881                      )
```

882 This primitive has no parameter.

8.3.7.2 When Generated

883 The Protocol Layer issues this request when it is desired to reset the MODULE to its default state and settings.

8.3.7.3 Effect on Receipt

884 When the Protocol Layer issues this request, the MODULE shall enter into DISABLED state specified in ***Section 4.7.1.4***.

8.3.8 M-CTRL-RESET.confirm

885 This primitive shall only be utilized for modeling purposes of Protocol Layer.

886 This primitive informs the Protocol Layer that the MODULE has completed previously requested RESET action and ready to service any request.

8.3.8.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

887 The semantics of the M-CTRL-RESET.confirm primitive are as follows

888 `M-CTRL-RESET.confirm(`

889 `)`

890 This primitive has no parameter.

8.3.8.2 When Generated

891 After a request from the Protocol Layer to reset the MODULE, the MODULE shall generate this primitive upon completion of initialization and ready to receive a service request.

8.3.8.3 Effect on Receipt

892 Upon receiving this primitive the Protocol Layer should aware that the MODULE has completed initialization, reset all configuration settings to default values and entered HIBERN8 state.

8.3.9 M-CTRL-LINERESET.request

893 This primitive requests an M-TX perform a LINE-RESET action. All configuration settings (rates, amplitudes, etc.) are lost and reset to default values. The M-TX also asserts a signal on the LINE so that the remote M-RX recognizes the LINE-RESET state and acts as defined in ***Section 4.7.4.1***.

8.3.9.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

894 The semantics of the M-CTRL-LINERESET.request primitive are as follows:

895 `M-CTRL-LINERESET.request(`

896 `TActivateControl`

897 `)`

898 The primitive parameter is defined in ***Table 49***.

8.3.9.2 When Generated

899 The Protocol Layer shall issue M-LANE-BurstEnd.request and wait for $T_{ACTIVATE}$ after the M-TX has generated M-LANE-SaveState.indication before issuing M-CTRL-LINERESET.request with TActivateControl set to "ProtocolControlled".

900 If M-CTRL-LINERESET.request with TActivateControl set to "PhyControlled" is issued when the M-TX is in BURST state, the Protocol Layer shall be aware the PAYLOAD of an ongoing BURST is interrupted immediately, and the M-TX might not trigger the proper BURST closure condition.

8.3.9.3 Effect on Receipt

901 Upon receiving this request with TActivateControl set to "ProtocolControlled", the M-TX shall immediately drive the LINE-RESET condition as described in ***Section 4.7.4.1***.

902 If this request is received with TActivateControl set to "PhyControlled", the M-TX shall immediately drive DIF-N on the LINE for $T_{ACTIVATE}$ before driving the LINE-RESET condition.

8.3.10 M-CTRL-LINERESET.indication

903 This primitive reports to the Protocol Layer that the M-RX has been reset by a LINE-RESET

8.3.10.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

904 The semantics of the M-CTRL-LINERESET.indication primitive are as follows:

905 `M-CTRL-LINERESET.indication(`

906 `)`

907 This primitive has no parameter.

8.3.10.2 When Generated

908 When M-RX detects LINE-RESET as described in ***Section 4.7.4.1***, it shall indicate the same to the Protocol Layer using this primitive.

8.3.10.3 Effect on Receipt

909 When the Protocol Layer receives this primitive, it should be aware that the LANE is reset by a LINE-RESET and both M-TX and M-RX on this LANE will be in default state with default attribute values.

8.3.11 M-CTRL-LINERESET.confirm

910 This primitive informs the Protocol Layer that the MODULE has completed a previously requested LINE-RESET action.

8.3.11.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

911 The semantics of the M-CTRL-LINERESET.confirm primitive are as follows:

```
912 M-CTRL-LINERESET.confirm(
913                                 )
```

914 This primitive has no parameter.

8.3.11.2 When Generated

915 After a request from the Protocol Layer to an M-TX to reset the LANE by a LINE-RESET, the M-TX shall issue this primitive upon completion of the LINE-RESET operation as described in ***Section 4.7.4.1***.

916 After exiting LINE-RESET, the Protocol Layer shall keep the M-TX for a given LANE in SLEEP state for the greater of the local TX_Min_SAVE_Config_Time_Capability and, if known, the remote RX_Min_SAVE_Config_Time_Capability.

8.3.11.3 Effect on Receipt

917 Upon receiving this primitive the Protocol Layer should aware that the M-TX has completed LINE-RESET activity and reset all configuration settings to default values while entering into SLEEP state.

8.3.12 M-CTRL-LCCReadStatus.indication

918 This primitive informs the Protocol Layer that M-RX is received result of LCC-READ command, which is initiated at M-TX and the received result is set in the corresponding OMC Status attributes.

8.3.12.1 Semantics of the Service Primitive

919 The semantics of the M-CTRL-LCCReadStatus.indication primitive are as follows

```
920 M-CTRL-LCCReadStatus.indication(
921                                 )
```

922 This primitive has no parameter.

8.3.12.2 When Generated

923 M-RX shall generate this primitive when it has received at least one LCC-READ sequence from the OMC and has updated all pending OMC Status attributes addressed by the LCC-READ sequences indicated by an LCC-MODE exit. The OMC status register consists of those OMC attributes listed in ***Table 57***.

8.3.12.3 Effect on Receipt

924 This primitive indicates to the Protocol Layer that an LCC-READ operation has been initiated at M-TX and the corresponding LCC-READ result is available through OMC Status attributes. Protocol Layer may read the value of OMC Status attributes using M-CTRL-CFGGET.request primitive before they are overwritten.

925 Whenever any member of a group is read via LCC-READ, all the members of the group are updated. Since a group of attributes are read at the same time, the OMC status attributes output might change after receiving another M-CNTRL-CFGGET.request primitive for that group.

8.3.13 Sequence of Service Primitives

926 The possible relationships among primitives at M-TX-CTRL SAP and M-RX-CTRL SAP are illustrated by the given time sequence diagrams shown in ***Figure 65***. They also indicate a possible logical relationship in terms of time. Primitives that occur earlier in time and connected by dotted lines are logical predecessors of subsequent primitives.

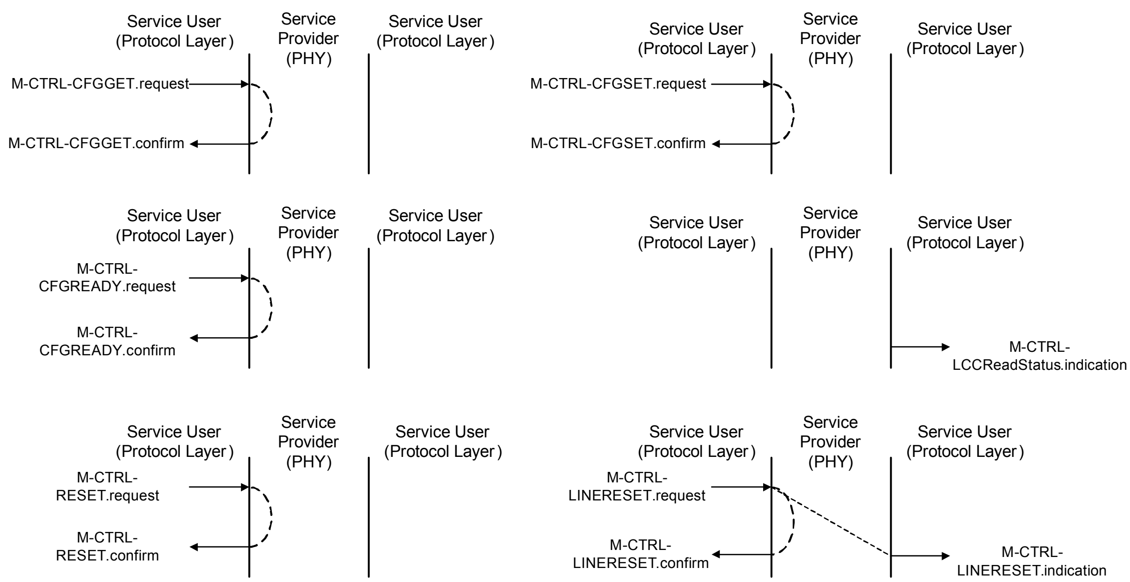


Figure 65 Sequence of Service Primitives at M-TX-CTRL SAP and M-RX-CTRL SAP

8.4 M-TX and M-RX Attributes

927 Capability, configuration and status attributes for an M-TX are listed in ***Table 50***, ***Table 51***, and ***Table 52***, respectively, and for an M-RX these attributes are listed in ***Table 54***, ***Table 55***, and ***Table 56***, respectively. Write-only and status attributes relevant to OMC are listed in ***Table 53***, and ***Table 57***, respectively. Capability attributes describe the capabilities of an implementation and shall be read-only. Currently, only one status attribute is defined for a MODULE to provide the current operating state of the MODULE. In case of an OMC, status attributes that are accessible at M-RX provide the result of an LCC-READ operation initiated at M-TX. No request, such as M-CTRL-CFGSET.request, shall be made by Protocol to write any value to any capability or status attribute. Any write request, such as M-CTRL-CFGSET.request, to a capability or status attribute shall be ignored and shall not be responded by a MODULE.

928 Configuration attributes are used for configuring a MODULE based on applicable capabilities, if there are any, to control its behavior. Configuration attributes shall be readable and writable. A write request, such as M-CTRL-CFGSET, to a configuration attribute shall hold a valid AttributeID and attribute value corresponding to that AttributeID. The attribute value shall not violate range of values of applicable capabilities, if any, for that attribute. Validity check of AttributeID and its corresponding value for a write request may not be performed in a MODULE. A read request, such as M-CTRL-CFGGET, to a configuration or capability attribute shall hold a valid AttributeID. Validity check of AttributeID for a read request may not be performed in a MODULE.

929 Write-only attributes of an OMC are used for configuring the OMC; there is no read function for reading configured write attribute data from an OMC to the M-RX. No request, such as M-CTRL-CFGGET.request,

shall be made by the Protocol Layer to read a value from a write-only attribute. Any read request, such as M-CTRL-CFGGET.request, to a write-only attribute shall be ignored and shall not be responded by a MODULE.

930 The "Attribute Name" column in the tables specifies a symbolic name in a human readable form for an attribute.

931 The "AttributeID" column contains a hexadecimal code for an attribute which shall be used in read or write request made to an attribute. The parameter MIBattribute of M-CTRL-CFGGET.request and M-CTRL-CFGSET.request service primitives shall contain AttributeID of an attribute.

932 The "Description" column of an attribute provides a brief description of the attribute and four optional fields.

933 • The "*Existence depends on*" field of an attribute contains capability attributes that are applicable for its existence. An attribute becomes an Existence-dependant attribute if the "Description" contains an "Existence Depends on" field. An Existence-dependent attribute exists if all attributes listed in its "Existence Depends on" field are "TRUE". Before making any read or write access to an existence dependant attribute, the Protocol shall ensure that all the applicable attributes for its existence are realizable to logical "TRUE" condition. If any of the attributes listed in the "Existence Depends on" field of an Existence-dependant attribute results in a logical "FALSE" condition then no access shall be made to that Existence-dependant attribute. For example, before accessing TX_HSGEAR_Capability attribute, TX_HSMODE_Capability attribute's value is verified because the latter attribute is listed in the former attribute's "Existence Depends on" field (see ***Table 50***). The TX_HSGEAR_Capability attribute is accessed if and only if TX_HSMODE_Capability attribute's value is "TRUE".

934 • The "*Value depends on*" field of an attribute contains capability attributes that are applicable for defining its value. While writing to an attribute that has a "Value Depends on" field, the value being written to the attribute shall not exceed the worst case value limits defined for those capability attributes that are listed in its "Value Depends on" field. For example, to set TX_PWMGEAR attribute's value, TX_PWMGEAR_Capability and TX_PWMG0_Capability attribute values must be read as these attributes are listed in the former attribute's "Value Depends on" field. For example, if the value of the TX_PWMGEAR_Capability attribute is 5 and TX_PWMG0_Capability is NO, then the value of TX_PWMGEAR attribute must be in the range [1, 5] (worst case value limit).

935 • The "*Req'd Values*" field is applicable only to configuration attributes. If a configuration attribute is supported by a MODULE, then the MODULE shall support all values or range of values specified in the The "*Req'd Values*" field of that configuration attribute.

936 • The "*Reset Value*" field is applicable to configuration attributes only and specifies the default value of an attribute. A configuration attribute shall hold this default value after exiting the DISABLED state.

937 The "FSM" column of an attribute contains those FSM types that this attribute shall be applicable. So, this column specifies the validity of an attribute to be used in either TYPE-I or TYPE-II or both (TYPE-I and TYPE-II).

938 The "Type" column of an attribute specifies the type of data (as used in most common programming languages) it holds.

939 The "Bits" column of an attribute either recommends or mandates which bits to use for representing the possible values listed inside an attribute's value range.

940 The "Range" column of an attribute specifies permissible limits of range of values that an attribute can take. Supported value range for an attribute shall not exceed the range of values specified in the "Range" column of that attribute.

Table 50 M-TX Capability Attributes

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_HSMODE_Capability	0x01	Specifies support for HS-MODE.	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1
TX_HSGEAR_Capability	0x02	Specifies supported HS-GEARs. *Existence depends on:* *TX_HSMODE_Capability*	Both	Enum	B[2:0][1]	HS_G1_ONLY = 1, HS_G1_TO_G2 = 2, HS_G1_TO_G3 = 3 HS_G1_TO_G4 = 4
TX_PWMG0_Capability	0x03	Specifies support for PWM-G0.	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
TX_PWMGEAR_Capability	0x04	Specifies support for PWM-GEARs other than PWM-G0.	TYPE-I	Enum	B[2:0][1]	PWM_G1_ONLY = 1, PWM_G1_TO_G2 = 2, PWM_G1_TO_G3 = 3, PWM_G1_TO_G4 = 4, PWM_G1_TO_G5 = 5, PWM_G1_TO_G6 = 6, PWM_G1_TO_G7 = 7
TX_Amplitude_Capability	0x05	Specifies supported signal amplitude levels.	Both	Enum	B[1:0][1]	SMALL_AMPLITUDE_ONLY = 1, LARGE_AMPLITUDE_ONLY = 2, LARGE_AND_SMALL_AMPLITUDE = 3
TX_ExternalSYNC_Capability	0x06	Specifies support for external SYNC pattern. *Existence depends on:* *TX_HSMODE_Capability* OR *TX_PWMGEAR_Capability = 6* OR *TX_PWMGEAR_Capability = 7*	Both	Bool	B[0]	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1

Table 50 M-TX Capability Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Capability	0x07	Specifies whether or not M-TX supports driving an unterminated LINE in HS-MODE. *Existence depends on: TX_HSMODE_Capability*	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
TX_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Capability	0x08	Specifies whether or not M-TX supports driving a terminated LINE in LS-MODE.	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
TX_Min_SLEEP_NoConfig_Time_Capability	0x09	Specifies minimum time (in SI) in SLEEP state needed when inline configuration was not performed.	Both	Int	B[3:0][1]	1 to 15
TX_Min_STALL_NoConfig_Time_Capability	0x0A	Specifies minimum time (in SI) in STALL state needed when inline configuration was not performed.	Both	Int	B[7:0][1]	1 to 255
TX_Min_SAVE_Config_Time_Capability[2]	0x0B	Specifies minimum reconfiguration time (in 40 ns steps). This applies only to SLEEP and STALL states.	Both	Int	B[7:0]	1 to 250 (10000 ns)
TX_REF_CLOCK_SHARED_Capability	0x0C	Specifies support for a shared reference clock.	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
TX_PHY_MajorMinor_Release_Capability	0x0D	Specifies the major and minor numbers of the M-PHY version supported by the M-TX.	Both	Int	B[7:4]	Major version number, 0 to 9
					B[3:0]	Minor version number, 0 to 9
TX_PHY_Editorial_Release_Capability	0x0E	Specifies the sequence number of the M-PHY version supported by the M-TX.	Both	Int	B[7:0]	0 to 99
TX_Hibern8Time_Capability	0x0F	Specifies minimum time (in 100 μs steps) in HIBERN8 state.	Both	Int	B[7:0]	1 to 128 (100 μs to 12.8 ms)

Table 50 M-TX Capability Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability	0x10	Support and degree of fine granularity steps for a reduced time in HIBERN8 state. If a finer granularity is specified, all coarser granularities shall be supported.	Both	Int	B[2:1]	step size b00 = 4 µs, b01 = 8 µs, b10 = 16 µs, b11 = 32 µs
					B[0]	supports fine granularity steps: No = 0 (100 µs step), Yes = 1
TX_Advanced_Hibern8Time_Capability	0x11	Specifies minimum time in HIBERN8 state when advanced granularity is supported in steps defined by TX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability. *Existence depends on:* *TX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability*	Both	Int	B[7:0]	1 to 128
TX_HS_Equalizer_Setting_Capability	0x12	Support for transmit path de-emphasis for HS-MODE *Existence depends on:* *TX_HSMODE_Capability*	Both	Int	B[1:0]	B[0] = 0: De-emphasis of 3.5dB not supported, B[0] = 1; De-emphasis of 3.5dB supported, B[1] = 0; De-emphasis of 6dB not supported, B[1] = 1; De-emphasis of 6dB supported

1. *Recommended bit assignment.*
2. *There is a potential timing mismatch between the setting of this capability, implementation width of RMMI when the prior gear is PWM-G0 or PWM-G1. As neither timing nor width is defined at the RMMI interface, if such a hazard exists for an M-PHY implementation, then the M-PHY IP has to advertise this in its data sheet. This allows the implementer to ensure the protocol and the selected M-PHY IP are in a good match and allows sufficient time for attributes to be updated. Since the sensitivity is only in PWM-G0 or PWM-G1, the protocol has to take the current GEAR into account while computing the minimum time between BURSTs after a configuration change.*

Table 51 M-TX Configuration Attributes

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_MODE	0x21	M-TX operating mode. *Existence depends on:* *TX_HSMODE_Capability* *Req'd Value:* LS_MODE *Reset Value:* LS_MODE	Both	Enum	B[1:0][1]	LS_MODE = 1, HS_MODE = 2
TX_HSRATE_Series	0x22	HS mode RATE series value of M-TX. *Existence depends on:* *TX_HSMODE_Capability* *Req'd Value:* A and B *Reset Value:* A	Both	Enum	B[1:0][1]	A = 1, B = 2
TX_HSGEAR	0x23	HS-GEAR value of M-TX. *Existence depends on:* *TX_HSMODE_Capability* *Value depends on:* TX_HSGEAR_Capability *Req'd Value:* HS_G1 *Reset Value:* HS_G1	Both	Enum	B[2:0][1]	HS_G1 = 1, HS_G2 = 2, HS_G3 = 3 HS_G4 = 4
TX_PWMGEAR	0x24	PWM-GEAR value of M-TX. *Value depends on:* TX_PWMGEAR_Capability, TX_PWMG0_Capability *Req'd Value:* PWM_G1 *Reset Value:* PWM_G1	TYPE-I	Enum	B[2:0][1]	PWM_G0 = 0, PWM_G1 = 1, PWM_G2 = 2, PWM_G3 = 3, PWM_G4 = 4, PWM_G5 = 5, PWM_G6 = 6, PWM_G7 = 7
TX_Amplitude	0x25	Type of drive strength on PINs at M-TX. *Value depends on:* *TX_Amplitude_Capability* *Reset Value:* LARGE_AMPLITUDE	Both	Enum	B[1:0][1]	SMALL_AMPLITUDE = 1, LARGE_AMPLITUDE = 2

Table 51 M-TX Configuration Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_HS_SlewRate	0x26	Slew Rate control of M-TX output driver. *Existence depends on:* *TX_HSMODE_Capability* *Reset Value:* see [2]	Both	Int	B[7:0][3]	0 to 255[4]
TX_SYNC_Source	0x27	Source of synchronization pattern at M-TX. *Existence depends on:* *(TX_HSMODE_Capability* OR *TX_PWMGEAR_Capability = 6* OR *TX_PWMGEAR_Capability = 7)* AND *TX_ExternalSync_Capability* *Req'd Value:* INTERNAL_SYNC *Reset Value:* INTERNAL_SYNC	Both	Enum	B[0][1]	INTERNAL_SYNC = 0, EXTERNAL_SYNC = 1
TX_HS_SYNC_LENGTH	0x28	High Speed Synchronization pattern length of M-TX in SI. *Existence depends on:* *TX_HSMODE_Capability* *Req'd Values:* FINE, COARSE, 0 to 15 *Reset Values:* COARSE, 15	Both	Int	B[7:6]	SYNC_range FINE = 0, COARSE = 1
					B[5:0]	SYNC_length[5] 1 to 15 for FINE, 0 to 15 for COARSE
TX_HS_PREPARE_LENGTH[6]	0x29	HS PREPARE length multiplier for M-TX. *Existence depends on:* *TX_HSMODE_Capability* *Req'd Values:* 0 to 15[6] *Reset Value:* 15[6]	Both	Int	B[3:0][1]	0 to 15
TX_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH[7]	0x2A	PWM-BURST or SYS-BURST PREPARE length multiplier for M-TX. *Req'd Values:* 0 to 15[7] *Reset Value:* 10[7]	Both	Int	B[3:0][1]	0 to 15

Table 51 M-TX Configuration Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_HIBERN8_Control	0x2B	M-TX HIBERN8 state control. *Req'd Values:* ENTER, EXIT *Reset Value:* ENTER for Local RESET EXIT for LINE-RESET	TYPE-I TYPE-II[8]	Bool	B[0][1]	EXIT = 0, ENTER = 1
TX_LCC_Enable	0x2C	LCCs support by the M-TX. This attribute setting is immediately effective upon receipt of M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request (see ***Section 4.7.4.2***). *Req'd Values:* YES, NO *Reset Value:* NO[9]	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
TX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Extension	0x2D	BURST CLOSURE sequence duration in SI. The value shall be greater than, or equal to, the value of RX_PWM_Burst_ Closure_Length_Capability. *Req'd Values:* 0 to 255 *Reset Value:* 32	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:0][1]	0 to 255
TX_BYPASS_8B10B_Enable	0x2E	Bypass 8b10b encoding operation at M-TX. *Req'd Value:* FALSE *Reset Value:* FALSE	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1
TX_DRIVER_POLARITY	0x2F	M-TX output driver polarity. *Req'd Values:* NORMAL, INVERTED *Reset Value:* NORMAL for local RESET. LINE-RESET shall not reset the value of this attribute.	Both	Enum	B[0][1]	NORMAL = 0, INVERTED = 1

Table 51 M-TX Configuration Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Enable	0x30	Enable M-TX to drive unterminated LINE in HS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* *TX_HSMODE_Capability* AND *TX_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Capability* *Req'd Values:* NO, YES *Reset Value:* NO	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
TX_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Enable	0x31	Enable M-TX to drive terminated LINE in LS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* *TX_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Capability* *Req'd Values:* NO, YES *Reset Value:* NO	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1

Table 51 M-TX Configuration Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_LCC_Sequencer	0x32	To set bits for carrying out multiple LCC-READ or LCC-WRITE operations. To perform an LCC operation the corresponding bit for this attribute shall be set. TX_LCC_Sequencer bits are cleared by M-TX when it issues the associated LCC request. This attribute setting is immediately effective upon receipt of M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request (see ***Section 4.7.4.2***). *Req'd Values:* *READ-CAPABILITY,* *READ-MFG-INFO,* *READ-VEND-INFO,* *WRITE-ATTRIBUTE* *Reset Values:* *0 (no READ or WRITE operation requested)*	TYPE-I	Enum	B[7:0]	B[0] = 1: LCC READ-CAPABILITY requested, B[0] = 0: LCC READ-CAPABILITY not requested, B[1] = 1: LCC READ-MFG-INFO requested, B[1] = 0: LCC READ-MFG-INFO not requested, B[2] = 1: LCC READ-VEND-INFO requested, B[2] = 0: LCC READ-VEND-INFO not requested, B[6:3]: Reserved and shall be set to 0b0000, B[7] = 1: LCC WRITE-ATTRIBUTE requested, B[7] = 0: LCC WRITE-ATTRIBUTE not requested.

Table 51 M-TX Configuration Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_Min_ActivateTime	0x33	Specifies minimum activate time needed in 100 µs steps. If an OMC is not present, this value must be greater than or equal to the smaller of RX_Min_ActivateTime_Capability or RX_Advanced_Min_ActivateTime_Capability from the remote M-RX. If an OMC is present, this value must be greater than or equal to the smaller of RX_Min_ActivateTime_Capability + 1 (i.e., the Protocol Layer shall add 100 µs when an OMC is present) or RX_Advanced_Min_ActivateTime_Capability + 100 µs. *Reset Values:* 15	Both	Int	B[3:0]	1 to 15
TX_PWM_G6_G7_SYNC_LENGTH	0x34	Synchronization pattern length of M-TX, in SI, for PWM-G6 and PWM-G7 in LS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* *TX_PWMGEAR_Capability* *Req'd Values:* FINE, COARSE, 0 to 15. *Reset Values:* COARSE, 15	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:6]	SYNC_range FINE = 0, COARSE = 1
					B[5:0]	SYNC_length[5] 0 to 15
TX_Advanced_Granularity_Step	0x35	Support and degree of fine granularity steps for $T_{ACTIVATE}$ *Reset Value: 0*	Both	Int	B[2:1]	step size b00 = 4 µs, b01 = 8 µs, b10 = 16 µs, b11 = 32 µs
					B[0]	Supports advanced granularity No = 0, Yes = 1

Table 51 M-TX Configuration Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_Advanced_Granularity	0x36	Specifies minimum activate time when advanced granularity is supported in steps defined by TX_Advanced_Granularity_Step. The configured value has to meet the requirements of $T_{ACTIVATE}$ in ***Table 5***. *Reset Value: 15*	Both	Int	B[3:0]	1 to 15
TX_HS_Equalizer_Setting	0x37	HS Transmit path de-emphasis value selection. *Existence depends on: TX_HSMODE_Capability AND TX_HS_Equalizer_Setting_Capability* *Value depends on: TX_HS_Equalizer_Setting_Capability* *Required Values: Support for de-emphasis of 3.5 dB or 6 dB* *Reset Value: 0 for local RESET.* LINE-RESET shall not reset the value of this attribute.	Both	Int	B[2:0]	b000: No de-emphasis selected, b001: De-emphasis of 3.5 dB selected, b010: De-emphasis of 6 dB selected, b011 to b111: Reserved
TX_Min_SLEEP_NoConfig_Time	0x38	This amount of time (in SI) ensures M-RX has transitioned to termination disable entering SLEEP. Greater than or equal to the larger of TX_Min_SLEEP_NoConfig_Time_Capability and RX_Min_SLEEP_NoConfig_Time_Capability. *Reset Value: 15.*	Both	Int	B[3:0]	1 to 15

Table 51 M-TX Configuration Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_Min_STALL_NoConfig_Time	0x39	This amount of time (in SI) ensures M-RX has transitioned to termination disable entering STALL. Greater than or equal to the larger of TX_Min_STALL_NoConfig_Time_Capability and RX_Min_STALL_NoConfig_Time_Capability. *Reset Value: 255.*	Both	Int	B[7:0]	1 to 255
TX_HS_ADAPT_LENGTH	0x3A	High Speed adaptation pattern length of M-TX. *Existence depends on: TX_HSMODE_Capability* *Required Values: FINE, COARSE, 0 to 127* *Reset Values: COARSE, 17*	Both	Int	B[7]	ADAPT_type FINE = 0, COARSE = 1
					B[6:0]	ADAPT_length[10] 0 to 127 for FINE 0 to 17 for COARSE

1. *Recommended bit assignment*
2. *Implementation should ensure that the TX_HS_SlewRate value does not violate other parameter specifications*
3. *256 steps monotonically decreasing*
4. *“0” represents the fastest slew rate value and “255” represents the slowest slew rate value. Maximum number of possible steps are 256 (0 to 255). An implementation may support less than 256 steps but be able to interpret the 8-bit range.*
5. *Actual SYNC length is calculated using the formula for* T_{SYNC} *in* ***Table 7***
6. *Actual HS PREPARE length is calculated using the formula for* $T_{HS\_PREPARE}$ *in* ***Table 7*** *with TX_HSGEAR*
7. *Actual PWM PREPARE length is calculated using the formula for* $T_{PWM\_PREPARE}$ *in* ***Table 7*** *with TX_PWMGEAR*
8. *TYPE-II with embedded HIBERN8 exit control. See* ***Section 4.7.1.3***
9. *The Reset Value was changed from YES to NO from M-PHY version v4.1 onward*
10. *Actual ADAPT length is calculated using the formula for* T_{ADAPT} *in* ***Table 7***

Table 52 M-TX Status Attributes

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
TX_FSM_State	0x41	To read out the current state of M-TX	Both	Enum	B[3:0][1]	DISABLED = 0, HIBERN8 = 1, SLEEP = 2, STALL = 3, LS-BURST = 4, HS-BURST = 5, LINE-CFG = 6 LINE-RESET = 7

1. *Recommended bit assignment*

Table 53 OMC Write-only Attributes

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
MC_Output_Amplitude	0x61	Type of drive strength on PINs at OMC output. *Value depends on:* *MC_RX_LA_Capability,* *MC_RX_SA_Capability* *Reset Value:* LARGE_AMPLITUDE if MC_RX_LA_Capability is true, SMALL_AMPLITUDE if MC_RX_LA_Capability is false.	TYPE-I	Enum	B[0][1]	SMALL_AMPLITUDE = 0, LARGE_AMPLITUDE = 1

Table 53 OMC Write-only Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
MC_HS_Unterminated_Enable	0x62	Enable disconnection of resistive termination of O-TX in HS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* *MC_HSMODE_Capability* AND *MC_HS_Unterminated_Capability* *Req'd Value:* OFF *Reset Value:* OFF	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0]	OFF = 0, ON = 1
MC_LS_Terminated_Enable	0x63	Enable O-TX resistive termination in LS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* MC_LS_Terminated_Capability *Req'd Value:* OFF *Reset Value:* OFF	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	OFF = 0, ON = 1
MC_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Enable	0x64	Enable O-RX to drive unterminated LINE in HS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* *MC_HSMODE_Capability* AND *MC_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Capability* *Req'd Value:* OFF *Reset Value:* OFF	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	OFF = 0, ON = 1
MC_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Enable	0x65	Enable O-RX to drive terminated LINE in LS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* MC_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Capability *Req'd Value:* OFF *Reset Value:* OFF	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	OFF = 0, ON = 1

1. *Recommended bit assignment.*

Table 54 M-RX Capability Attributes

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
RX_HSMODE_Capability	0x81	Specifies support for HS-MODE.	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1
RX_HSGEAR_Capability	0x82	Specifies supported HS-GEARs. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSMODE_Capability*	Both	Enum	B[2:0][1]	HS_G1_ONLY = 1, HS_G1_TO_G2 = 2, HS_G1_TO_G3 = 3 HS_G1_TO_G4 = 4
RX_PWMG0_Capability	0x83	Specifies support for PWM-G0.	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
RX_PWMGEAR_Capability	0x84	Specifies supported PWM-GEARs other than PWM-G0.	TYPE-I	Enum	B[2:0][1]	PWM_G1_ONLY = 1, PWM_G1_TO_G2 = 2, PWM_G1_TO_G3 = 3, PWM_G1_TO_G4 = 4, PWM_G1_TO_G5 = 5, PWM_G1_TO_G6 = 6, PWM_G1_TO_G7 = 7
RX_HS_Unterminated_Capability	0x85	Specifies support for disconnection of resistive termination in HS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSMODE_Capability*	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
RX_LS_Terminated_Capability	0x86	Specifies support for enabling resistive termination in LS-MODE.	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
RX_Min_SLEEP_NoConfig_Time_Capability	0x87	Specifies minimum time (in SI) in SLEEP state needed when inline configuration was not performed.	Both	Int	B[3:0][1]	1 to 15
RX_Min_STALL_NoConfig_Time_Capability	0x88	Specifies minimum time (in SI) in STALL state needed when inline configuration was not performed.	Both	Int	B[7:0][1]	1 to 255
RX_Min_SAVE_Config_Time_Capability[2]	0x89	Specifies minimum reconfiguration time (in 40 ns steps). This applies only to SLEEP and STALL states.	Both	Int	B[7:0]	1 to 250 (10000 ns)

Table 54 M-RX Capability Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
RX_REF_CLOCK_SHARED_Capability	0x8A	Specifies support for a shared reference clock.	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
RX_HS_G1_SYNC_LENGTH_Capability	0x8B	High Speed GEAR 1 Synchronization pattern length in SI. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSMODE_Capability*	Both	Int	B[7:6]	SYNC_range FINE = 0, COARSE = 1
					B[5:0]	SYNC_length[3] 1 to 15 for FINE, 0 to 15 for COARSE
RX_HS_G1_PREPARE_LENGTH_Capability[4]	0x8C	HS-G1 PREPARE length multiplier for M-RX. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSMODE_Capability*	Both	Int	B[3:0][1]	0 to 15
RX_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH_Capability[5]	0x8D	PWM-BURST or SYS-BURST PREPARE length multiplier for M-RX.	Both	Int	B[3:0][1]	0 to 15
RX_PWM_Burst_Closure_Length_Capability	0x8E	Specifies minimum burst closure time (in SI) necessary to guarantee complete data processing inside M-RX	TYPE-I	Int	B[4:0]	0 to 31
RX_Min_ActivateTime_Capability	0x8F	Specifies minimum activate time needed in 100 µs steps.	Both	Int	B[3:0]	1 to 9
RX_PHY_MajorMinor_Release_Capability	0x90	Specifies the major and minor numbers of the M-PHY version supported by the M-RX.	Both	Int	B[7:4]	Major version number, 0 to 9
					B[3:0]	Minor version number, 0 to 9
RX_PHY_Editorial_Release_Capability	0x91	Specifies the sequence number of the M-PHY version supported by the M-RX.	Both	Int	B[7:0]	0 to 99
RX_Hibern8Time_Capability	0x92	Specifies minimum time (in 100 µs steps) in HIBERN8 state.	Both	Int	B[7:0]	1 to 128 (100 µs to 12.8 ms)
RX_PWM_G6_G7_SYNC_LENGTH_Capability	0x93	Synchronization pattern length, in SI, for PWM-G6 and PWM-G7 in LS-MODE . *Existence depends on:* *RX_PWMGEAR_Capability*	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:6]	SYNC_range FINE = 0, COARSE = 1
					B[5:0]	SYNC_length[3] 0 to 15

Table 54 M-RX Capability Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
RX_HS_G2_SYNC_LENGTH_Capability	0x94	High Speed GEAR 2 Synchronization pattern length in SI. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSGEAR_Capability*	Both	Int	B[7:6]	SYNC_range FINE = 0, COARSE = 1
					B[5:0]	SYNC_length[3] 1 to 15 for FINE, 0 to 15 for COARSE
RX_HS_G3_SYNC_LENGTH_Capability	0x95	High Speed GEAR 3 Synchronization pattern length in SI. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSGEAR_Capability*	Both	Int	B[7:6]	SYNC_range FINE = 0, COARSE = 1
					B[5:0]	SYNC_length[3] 1 to 15 for FINE, 0 to 15 for COARSE
RX_HS_G2_PREPARE_LENGTH_Capability[4]	0x96	HS-G2 PREPARE length multiplier for M-RX. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSGEAR_Capability*	Both	Int	B[3:0][1]	0 to 15
RX_HS_G3_PREPARE_LENGTH_Capability[4]	0x97	HS-G3 PREPARE length multiplier for M-RX. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSGEAR_Capability*	Both	Int	B[3:0][1]	0 to 15
RX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability	0x98	Support and degree of fine granularity steps for $T_{HIBERN8}$ and $T_{ACTIVATE}$.	Both	Int	B[2:1]	step size b00 = 4 µs, b01 = 8 µs, b10 = 16 µs, b11 = 32 µs
					B[0]	supports fine granularity steps No = 0 (100 µs step), Yes = 1
RX_Advanced_Hibern8Time_Capability	0x99	Specifies minimum time in HIBERN8 state when advanced granularity is supported in steps defined by RX_advanced_Granularity_Capability. *Existence depends on:* *RX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability*	Both	Int	B[7:0]	1 to 128

Table 54 M-RX Capability Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
RX_Advanced_Min_ActivateTime_Capability	0x9A	Specifies minimum activate time when advanced granularity is supported in steps defined by RX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability. *Existence depends on:* *RX_Advanced_Granularity_Capability*	Both	Int	b[3:0]	1 to 14
RX_HS_G4_SYNC_LENGTH_Capability	0x9B	High Speed GEAR 4 Synchronization pattern length in SI. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSGEAR_Capability*	Both	Int	B[7:6]	SYNC_range FINE = 0, COARSE = 1
					B[5:0]	SYNC_length[3] 1 to 15 for FINE, 0 to 15 for COARSE
RX_HS_G4_PREPARE_LENGTH_Capability[4]	0x9C	HS-G4 PREPARE length multiplier for M-RX. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSGEAR_Capability*	Both	Int	B[3:0][1]	0 to 15
RX_HS_Equalizer_Setting_Capability	0x9D	Support for receiver path channel equalization for HS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSMODE_Capability*	Both	Int	B[0]	B0 = 0: No equalization B0 = 1: Yes equalization
RX_HS_ADAPT_REFRESH_Capability	0x9E	REFRESH is used for RX adaptation refresh. High Speed adaptation pattern length of M-RX. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HS_Equalizer_Setting_Capability*	Both	Int	B[7]	ADAPT_type FINE=0, COARSE=1
					B[6:0]	ADAPT_length[6] 0 to 127 for FINE, 0 to 17 for COARSE
RX_HS_ADAPT_INITIAL_Capability	0x9F	INITIAL is used for initial RX adaptation. High Speed adaptation pattern length of M-RX. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HS_Equalizer_Setting_Capability*	Both	Int	B[7]	ADAPT_type FINE=0, COARSE=1
					B[6:0]	ADAPT_length[6] 0 to 127 for FINE, 0 to 17 for COARSE

1. *Recommended bit assignment.*

2. *There is a potential timing mismatch between the setting of this capability, implementation width of RMMI when the prior gear is PWM-G0 or PWM-G1. As neither timing nor width is defined at the RMMI interface, if such a hazard exists for an M-PHY implementation, then the M-PHY IP has to advertise this in its data sheet. This allows the implementer to ensure the protocol and the selected M-PHY IP are in a good match and allows sufficient time for attributes to be updated. Since the sensitivity is only in PWM-G0 or PWM-G1, the protocol has to take the current GEAR into account while computing the minimum time between BURSTs after a configuration change.*
3. *Actual SYNC length is calculated using the formula for T_{SYNC} in **Table 7**.*
4. *Actual HS PREPARE length is calculated using the formula for $T_{HS\_PREPARE}$ in **Table 7** with RX_HXGEAR.*
5. *Actual PWM PREPARE length is calculated using the formula for $T_{PWM\_PREPARE}$ in **Table 7** with RX_PWMGEAR.*
6. *Actual ADAPT length is calculated using the formula for T_{ADAPT} in **Table 7***

Table 55 M-RX Configuration Attributes

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
RX_MODE	0xA1	Operating mode. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSMODE_Capability* *Req'd Value:* LS_MODE *Reset Value:* LS_MODE	Both	Enum	B[1:0][1]	LS_MODE = 1, HS_MODE = 2
RX_HSRATE_Series	0XA2	HS mode RATE series value. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSMODE_Capability* *Req'd Values:* A and B *Reset Value:* A	Both	Enum	B[1:0][1]	A = 1, B = 2
RX_HSGEAR	0xA3	Current HS-GEAR. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSMODE_Capability* *Value depends on:* *RX_HSGEAR_Capability* *Req'd Value:* HS_G1 *Reset Value:* HS_G1	Both	Enum	B[2:0][1]	HS_G1 = 1, HS_G2 = 2, HS_G3 = 3 HS_G4 = 4
RX_PWMGEAR	0xA4	Current PWM-GEAR. *Req'd Value:* PWM_G1 *Reset Value:* PWM_G1	TYPE-I	Enum	B[2:0][1]	PWM_G0 = 0, PWM_G1 = 1, PWM_G2 = 2, PWM_G3 = 3, PWM_G4 = 4, PWM_G5 = 5, PWM_G6 = 6, PWM_G7 = 7

Table 55 M-RX Configuration Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
RX_LS_Terminated_Enable	0xA5	Enable resistive termination of M-RX in LS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* *RX_LS_Terminated_Capability* *Req'd Value:* OFF *Reset Value:* OFF	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	OFF = 0, ON = 1
RX_HS_Unterminated_Enable	0xA6	Enable disconnection of resistive termination of M-RX in HS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* *RX_HSMODE_Capability* AND *RX_HS_Unterminated_Capability* *Req'd Value:* OFF *Reset Value:* OFF	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	OFF = 0, ON = 1
RX_Enter_HIBERN8	0xA7	M-RX entry to HIBERN8 state control. *Req'd Values:* YES, NO *Reset Value:* YES for Local RESET, NO for LINE-RESET	TYPE-I TYPE-II[2]	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0: Protocol Layer shall not set the value of this attribute to "NO". When the M-RX is in HIBERN8 state, upon squelch detection the M-RX exits HIBERN8 state (to SLEEP or STALL state) and resets this attribute value to NO, YES = 1: Can be set by the Protocol. The M-RX enters from SLEEP or STALL state to HIBERN8 state, if it is not already in HIBERN8 state.
RX_BYPASS_8B10B_Enable	0xA8	Bypass 8b10b Decoding at the M-RX. *Req'd Value:* FALSE *Reset Value:* FALSE	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1

Table 55 M-RX Configuration Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
RX_Termination_Force_Enable	0xA9	Force connection of differential termination resistance, R_{DIF_RX}, to enabled state, for RX S-Parameter test purposes. *Req'd Value:* NO *Reset Value:* NO	Both	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
RX_ADAPT_Control[3]	0xAA	M-RX ADAPT sub-state control and ADAPT_type. *Req'd Values:* ADAPT Control: ADAPT, SYNC ADAPT Type: REFRESH, INITIAL *Reset Value:* INITIAL, SYNC	Both	Int	B[1]	ADAPT_type INITIAL = 0, REFRESH = 1
					B[0]	ADAPT_control ADAPT = 0, SYNC = 1
RX_RECEIVER_POLARITY	0xAB	M-RX receiver polarity. *Req'd Values:* NORMAL, INVERTED *Reset Value:* NORMAL for local RESET. LINE-RESET shall not reset the value of this attribute.	Both	Enum	B[0]	NORMAL = 0, INVERTED = 1

1. *Recommended bit assignment.*
2. *TYPE-II with embedded HIBERN8 exit control. See **Section 4.7.1.3**.*
3. *The local module sets to SYNC after completion of the ADAPT sub-state.*

Table 56 M-RX Status Attributes

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
RX_FSM_State	0xC1	To read out the current state of M-RX	Both	Enum	B[3:0][1]	DISABLED = 0, HIBERN8 = 1, SLEEP = 2, STALL = 3, LS-BURST = 4, HS-BURST = 5, LINE-CFG = 6 LINE-RESET = 7

1. *Recommended bit assignment*

Table 57 OMC Status Attributes

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
OMC_TYPE_Capability	0xD1	Specifies the type of OMC present.	TYPE-I	Enum	B[0][1]	ADVANCED = 0, BASIC = 1
MC_HSMODE_Capability	0xD2	Specifies whether or not OMC supports HS-MODE.	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1
MC_HSGEAR_Capability	0XD3	Specifies which HS-GEARs that OMC supports. *Existence depends on:* *MC_HSMODE_Capability*	TYPE-I	Enum	B[2:0][1]	HS_G1_ONLY = 1, HS_G1_TO_G2 = 2, HS_G1_TO_G3 = 3, HS_G1_TO_G4 = 4
MC_HS_START_TIME_Var_Capability[2]	0xD4	Specifies High Speed start up time of OMC. *Existence depends on:* *MC_HSMODE_Capability*	TYPE-I	Int	B[3:0][1]	0 to 15

Table 57 OMC Status Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
MC_HS_START_TIME_Range_ Capability	0xD5	Specifies the granularity that High Speed start up time OMC takes. *Existence depends on: MC_HSMODE_Capability*	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	FINE = 0, COARSE = 1
MC_RX_SA_Capability	0xD6	Specifies whether or not OMC supports Small Amplitude	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1
MC_RX_LA_Capability	0xD7	Specifies whether or not OMC supports Large Amplitude	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	FALSE = 0, TRUE = 1
MC_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH[2]	0xD8	PWM-BURST PREPARE length multiplier for OMC.	TYPE-I	Bool	B[3:0]	0 to 15
MC_PWMG0_Capability	0xD9	Specifies whether or not OMC supports PWM-G0.	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
MC_PWMGEAR_Capability	0xDA	Specifies which PWM-GEARs other than PWM-G0 are supported by OMC	TYPE-I	Enum	B[2:0][1]	PWM_G1_ONLY = 1, PWM_G1_TO_G2 = 2, PWM_G1_TO_G3 = 3, PWM_G1_TO_G4 = 4, PWM_G1_TO_G5 = 5, PWM_G1_TO_G6 = 6, PWM_G1_TO_G7 = 7
MC_LS_Terminated_Capability	0xDB	Specifies whether or not O-TX supports enabling of resistive termination in PWM-MODE	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
MC_HS_Unterminated_Capability	0xDC	Specifies support for disconnection of resistive termination in HS-MODE by O-TX. *Existence depends on: MC_HSMODE_Capability*	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1

Table 57 OMC Status Attributes (continued)

Attribute Name	AttributeID	Description	FSM	Type	Bits	Range
MC_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Capability	0xDD	Specifies whether or not O-RX supports driving a terminated LINE in PWM-MODE.	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
MC_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Capability	0xDE	Specifies whether or not O-RX supports driving a unterminated LINE in HS-MODE. *Existence depends on:* *MC_HSMODE_Capability*	TYPE-I	Bool	B[0][1]	NO = 0, YES = 1
MC_MFG_ID_Part1	0xDF	Manufacturer identification least significant byte	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:0]	0 to 255
MC_MFG_ID_Part2	0xE0	Manufacturer identification most significant byte	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:0]	0 to 255
MC_PHY_MajorMinor_Release_Capability	0xE1	Specifies the major and minor numbers of the M-PHY version supported by the OMC.	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:4]	Major version number, 0 to 9
					B[3:0]	Minor version number, 0 to 9
MC_PHY_Editorial_Release_Capability	0xE2	Specifies the sequence number of the M-PHY version supported by the OMC.	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:0]	0 to 99
MC_Vendor_Info_Part1	0xE3	Vendor-specific information least significant byte	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:0]	0 to 255
MC_Vendor_Info_Part2	0xE4	Vendor-specific information second least significant byte	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:0]	0 to 255
MC_Vendor_Info_Part3	0xE5	Vendor-specific information third least significant byte	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:0]	0 to 255
MC_Vendor_Info_Part4	0xE6	Vendor-specific information most significant byte	TYPE-I	Int	B[7:0]	0 to 255

1. *Recommended bit assignment.*
2. *Actual HS SYNC length is calculated using the formula for T_{SYNC} in **Table 7**.*

Annex A Signaling Interface Description (normative)

941 The signaling interface described in this annex, the Reference M-PHY MODULE Interface (RMMI), is optional. However, if a MODULE includes the RMMI it shall implement it as described in this annex.

942 The RMMI signaling interface for a MODULE (M-TX or M-RX) consists of two independent interfaces for control service primitives (M-TX-CTRL SAP and M-RX-CTRL SAP) and for data transfer service primitives (M-TX-DATA SAP and M-RX-DATA SAP). An M-PORT with multiple M-TXs or M-RXs uses a set of signals defined for M-TX or M-RX for each MODULE. To keep the same structure used for SAP definitions, the signaling interface of a MODULE is divided into DATA and CTRL signaling interfaces.

943 A shadow memory bank inside the MODULE implements the INLINE-CR registry as defined in ***Section 4.8.1***, and a separate effective configuration bank implements the INLINE-SET and OFFLINE-SET registries. Both the shadow memory and the effective configuration banks are written sequentially. However, the entire contents of the shadow memory bank can be uploaded to the effective configuration bank in a single, Protocol Layer-requested operation.

944 Due to the high data rates supported in M-PHY implementations, the width of the data buses conveying data to and from the Physical Layer can be increased, and different parallelization options are provided.

945 Finally, testability extensions to the CTRL signal interface are also included in this specification. However, the definition of the internal M-RX and M-TX structures controlled by these extensions is out of scope for this document.

946 ***Section A.2*** and ***Section A.3*** define the signals used in the signaling interface of an M-TX, and M-RX, respectively. While the CTRL signaling interfaces for M-TXs and M-RXs cannot be identical, this annex provides a common signal definition for M-TX-CTRL SAP and M-RX-CTRL SAP to the furthest extent possible. M-TX-DATA SAP and M-RX-DATA SAP signaling interfaces are, by their nature, substantially different.

A.1 One-Hot Coding of Control Symbols

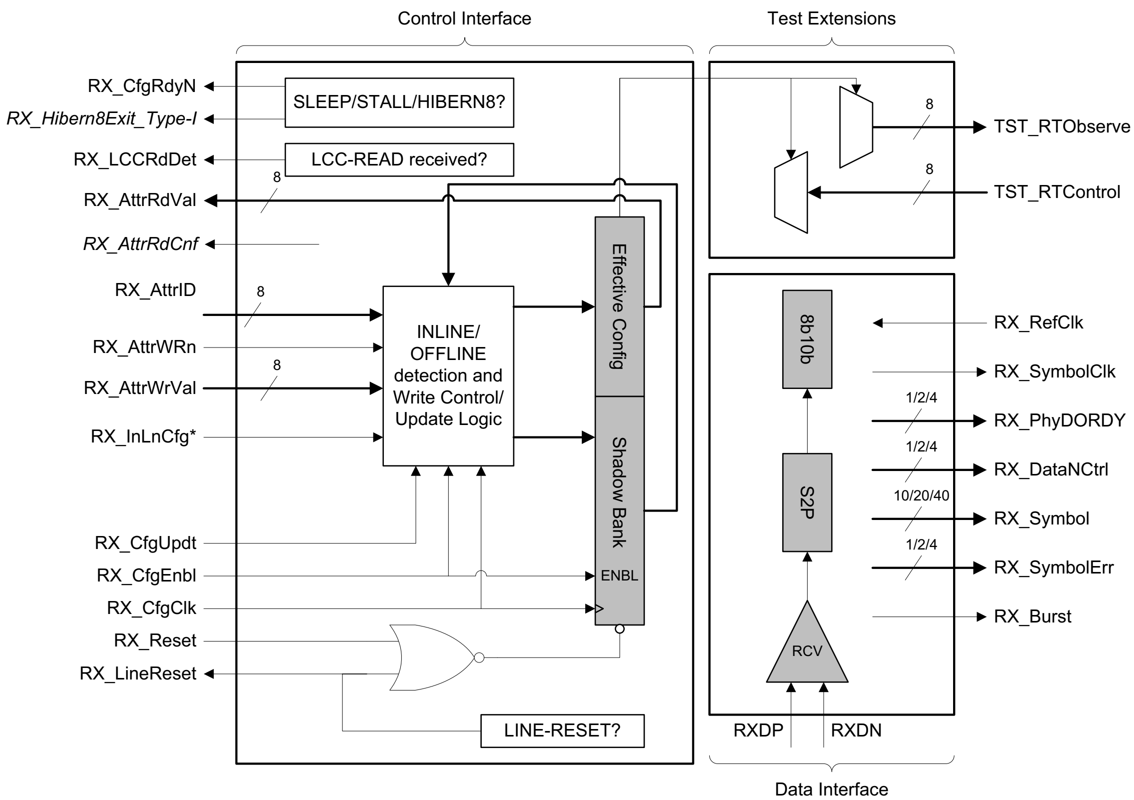
947 ***Table 58*** defines the One-Hot coding of control symbols.

Table 58 One-Hot Coding of Control Symbols

One-Hot Code	Type of Control Symbol at TX	Type of Control Symbol at RX
0000 0000	Reserved	Reserved
0000 0001	MARKER0	MARKER0
0000 0010	MARKER1	MARKER1
0000 0100	MARKER2	MARKER2
0000 1000	MARKER3	MARKER3
0001 0000	MARKER4	MARKER4
0010 0000	MARKER5	MARKER5
0100 0000	MARKER6	MARKER6
1000 0000	FILLER	FILLER

A.2 The M-RX Signaling Interface

948 A schematic overview of the M-RX signaling interface is shown in ***Figure 66***.



RX_InLnCfg* - This signal is optional. Implementations may choose appropriate fixed value for backward compatibility.

Figure 66 M-RX Signal Interfaces Diagram

A.2.1 M-RX Signal Description

949 In ***Table 59*** through ***Table 61***, entries in the “Direction” column specifies the direction of each signal from the perspective of the M-RX. An input signal (abbreviated as “I”) is driven by the Protocol Layer. An output signal (abbreviated as “O”) is driven by the M-RX.

950 The “Detection Type” column indicates the relevant condition for a given signal. A Detection Type of “Level” means the relevant information is either a high or low level on the signal. A Detection Type of “Transition” means a change from high-to-low or low-to-high causes the described action. A Detection Type of “Clock” indicates the signal is used to synchronize other signals on the interface. A Detection Type of “Asynch” means the signal changes state asynchronously to the relevant clock signal.

Table 59 M-RX-CTRL Interface Signals

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
RX_CfgClk	I	Clock	1	Control Interface Clock. All M-RX-CTRL interface signals, with the exception of RX_Reset and *RX_Hibern8Exit_Type-I*, are synchronous with this signal. The exact frequency of RX_CfgClk is implementation specific. Choice of frequency should consider squelch detection, adequate measurement of $T_{LINE\text{-}RESET}$, LCC-READ event signaling and minimizing interface access latencies. RX_CfgClk may change frequency depending on state, but is expected to be available in all M-RX states except DISABLED and UNPOWERED.
RX_Reset	I	Asynch	1	RX_Reset is the active-high asynchronous reset for all logic inside the M-RX. RX_Reset implements the local RESET function as defined in ***Section 4.7***. The Protocol Layer, or other source, shall set RX_Reset to “1” for at least 100 ns.
RX_LineReset	O	Transition	1	RX_LineReset indicates the status of the LINE-RESET action in the M-RX. M-RX shall set RX_LineReset to “1” when LINE-RESET is detected. M-RX shall set RX_LineReset to “0” once it has transitioned to the LINE-RESET exit state (see ***Section 4.7.4.1***).
RX_AttrID	I	Level	8	RX_AttrID carries the AttributeID of M-RX Configuration attributes for read or write operations, or M-RX Capability attribute or OMCS Status Attributes for read operation.
RX_AttrRdVal	O	Level	8	RX_AttrRdVal carries the attribute value read from an M-RX-MIB attribute specified by RX_AttrID. The M-RX-MIB attribute value should be held on this bus until a subsequent read command is issued by the protocol. When RX_AttrRdCnf is not implemented, the M-RX shall provide the specified attribute value within one-half of the RX_CfgClk period.
RX_AttrRdCnf	O	Level	1	RX_AttrRdCnf confirms that RX_AttrRdVal carries a new value. M-RX shall set RX_AttrRdCnf to "1" for a single RX_CfgClk cycle to inform the Protocol Layer that RX_AttrRdVal carries a recently requested attribute read value. RX_AttrRdCnf is an optional signal.

Table 59 M-RX-CTRL Interface Signals (continued)

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
RX_AttrWrVal	I	Level	8	RX_AttrWrVal carries the attribute value to write to an M-RX-MIB attribute specified by RX_AttrID.
RX_AttrWRn	I	Level	1	RX_AttrWRn specifies the operation, read or write, to perform on an M-RX-MIB attribute. The Protocol Layer shall set RX_AttrWRn to “0” to indicate a read operation. The Protocol Layer shall set RX_AttrWRn to “1” to indicate a write operation.
RX_CfgEnbl	I	Level	1	Config Enable The Protocol Layer shall set RX_CfgEnbl to “1” for a single RX_CfgClk cycle to perform an attribute read, or write, operation. The Protocol Layer shall set RX_CfgEnbl, RX_AttrID, RX_AttrWRn and RX_AttrWrVal in the same RX_CfgClk cycle.
RX_CfgUpdt	I	Transition	1	RX_CfgUpdt transfers the contents of the INLINE-CR registry to the effective configuration bank during a SAVE state. RX_CfgUpdt indicates the completion of the required configuration settings to the MODULE for effectuating configuration change requests atomically. The Protocol Layer shall set RX_CfgUpdt to “1” for a single RX_CfgClk cycle to trigger the upload of the entire M-RX shadow memory contents to the effective configuration bank. The Protocol Layer shall move the MODULE into a SAVE state, if not already in a SAVE state, before the new settings become effective.

Table 59 M-RX-CTRL Interface Signals (continued)

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
RX_CfgRdyN	O	Level	1	RX_CfgRdyN indicates the M-RX cannot process a register write command to its effective configuration bank. The M-RX shall set this signal to “1” in the same RX_CfgClk cycle that triggers its internal FSM exit from SLEEP, STALL, or HIBERN8 state to any other state. The M-RX may also set this signal to “1” while it is processing a Protocol-issued change to its effective configuration bank. The M-RX shall set this signal to “0” when its internal FSM is in SLEEP, STALL, or HIBERN8 state and the MODULE is ready to accept a register write command to any register of its effective configuration bank. For a RX_Reset (local RESET command), the M-RX shall set RX_CfgRdyN to “1” asynchronously. If the Protocol Layer issues write commands to the M-RX effective configuration bank (including RX_CfgUpdt) while RX_CfgRdyN is set to “0”, the M-RX shall process those commands immediately. If the Protocol Layer issues write commands to the M-RX effective configuration bank while RX_CfgRdyN is set to “1”, the specific M-RX behavior is dependent on the command itself addressing an OFFLINE-SET or INLINE-SET attribute. The M-RX shall execute a write command to an OFFLINE-SET Attribute in the effective configuration bank. The M-RX shall redirect a write command to an INLINE-SET attribute in the effective configuration bank to the associated shadow register. The M-RX shall not ignore a write command or Rx_CfgUpdt request from the Protocol Layer except in UNPOWERED and DISABLED states, or when local RESET is asserted. The M-RX shall respond to read commands from the Protocol Layer regardless of the value of RX_CfgRdyN. The M-RX shall process register write commands to its shadow memory bank regardless of the value of RX_CfgRdyN.
RX_Hibern8Exit_Type-I	O	Transition, Asynch	1	*RX_Hibern8Exit_Type-I* indicates the M-RX is exiting HIBERN8. The M-RX sets *RX_Hibern8Exit_Type-I* to “1” when it detects a HIBERN8 exit condition on the LINE (see ***Section 4.7.1.3*** and ***Figure 12***). The M-RX sets *RX_Hibern8Exit_Type-I* to “0” when the M-RX is in either HIBERN8 or DISABLED state. A Type-I implementation shall include this signal.

Table 59 M-RX-CTRL Interface Signals (continued)

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
RX_LCCRdDet	O	Transition	1	RX_LCCRdDet indicates the M-RX received at least one LCC-READ sequence, and has updated all corresponding attributes of the pending LCC-READ sequences. Upon exiting LCC-MODE following a LCC-READ sequence, the M-RX shall set RX_LCCRdDet to "1" for a single RX_CfgClk cycle.

Table 60 M-RX-DATA Interface Signals

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
RX_RefClk	I	Clock	1	Reference Clock. RX_RefClk may not be accessible in the M-RX-DATA interface for an M-PHY implementation that comprises an integrated clock multiplier. RX_RefClk shall have no specific phase relationship requirement to any signal in the M-RX-DATA interface.
RX_SymbolClk	O	Clock	1	Symbol Clock. All M-RX-DATA interface signals are synchronous with this signal. The M-RX may disable RX_SymbolClk generation when the M-RX is not in LINE-CFG, PWM-BURST, SYS-BURST, or HS-BURST states. The M-RX shall provide the minimum number of cycles to transfer all M-RX data to the Protocol Layer. At the end of BURST, the M-RX shall provide a minimum of two additional clock cycles beyond the de-assertion of RX_Burst. In HS-MODE and SYS-MODE, RX_SymbolClk shall have a period of 10 UI for a 10-bit RX_Symbol bus, 20 UI for a 20-bit RX_Symbol bus, or 40 UI for a 40-bit RX_Symbol bus. In PWM-MODE, RX_SymbolClk shall have a period of 10 $T_{PWM\text{-}RX}$ for a 10-bit RX_Symbol bus, 20 $T_{PWM\text{-}RX}$ for a 20-bit RX_Symbol bus, or 40 $T_{PWM\text{-}RX}$ for a 40-bit RX_Symbol bus. The behavior of RX_SymbolClk must be glitch-free even when this signal is being enabled or disabled. The M-RX shall not provide a RX_SymbolClk "1" or "0" pulse with a duration less than one-quarter of the nominal RX_SymbolClk period.

Table 60 M-RX-DATA Interface Signals (continued)

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
RX_Symbol	O	Level	10, 20, or 40	RX_Symbol is used for BURST data transfer to the Protocol Layer. The contents of this bus depend on the interface width (10, 20 or 40 bits, corresponding to 1, 2 and 4 parallel symbols, respectively), and also on whether or not the 10b8b decoding function is bypassed. When the 10b8b decoding function is disabled, RX_Symbol carries the raw data as received on the LINEs, parallelized according to the implemented width. The LSb of RX_Symbol shall correspond to the earliest received bit. When the 10b8b decoding function is enabled, only the 8, 16, or 32 LSbs of RX_Symbol are used to carry the decoded DATA or control symbol. The M-RX shall set the remaining MSbs to “0”. Control symbols shall be decoded as listed in ***Table 58***.
RX_PhyDORDY	O	Level	1, 2 or 4	PHY Data Output Ready. RX_PhyDORDY indicates data is available in the corresponding RX_Symbol bus range. The width of RX_PhyDORDY is one, two or four bits depending on the RX_Symbol bus width of 10, 20, or 40 bits, respectively. Each bit in RX_PhyDORDY corresponds to a 10b8b symbol in RX_Symbol bus. RX_PhyDORDY bitRX_Symbol bits (10b8b enabled) 0 bits[9:0] (bits[7:0]) 1 bits[19:10] (bits[15:8]) 2 bits[29:20] (bits[23:16]) 3 bits[39:30] (bits[31:24]) The M-RX shall set each bit of RX_PhyDORDY to “1” for every RX_SymbolClk cycle that the corresponding RX_Symbol bus range contains new data. The M-RX shall set each bit of RX_PhyDORDY bit to “0” for every RX_SymbolClk cycle that the corresponding RX_Symbol bus range does not contain new data. The Protocol Layer shall always be ready to consume the data from the M-RX. During ADAPT, the RX_Phy_DORDY signal shall be set to zero.

Table 60 M-RX-DATA Interface Signals (continued)

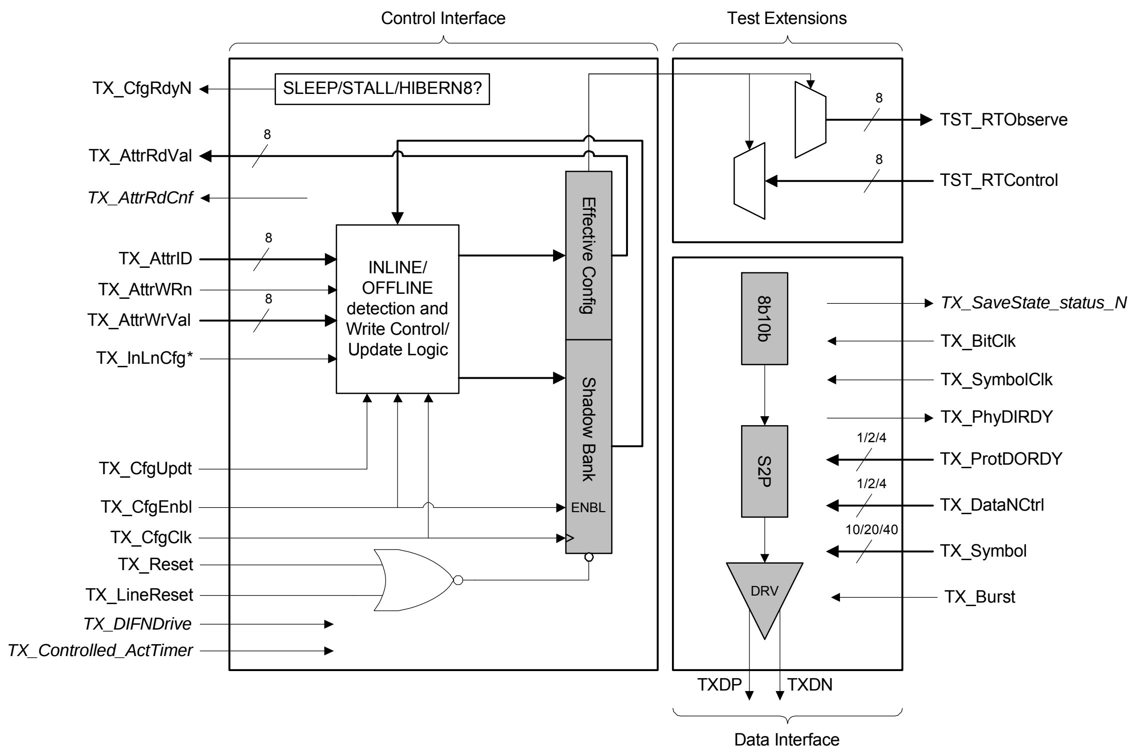
Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
RX_DataNCtrl	O	Level	1, 2 or 4	RX_DataNCtrl indicates the type of symbol on the indicated range of RX_Symbol. The width of RX_DataNCtrl is one, two or four bits depending on the RX_Symbol bus width of 10, 20, or 40 bits, respectively. RX_DataNCtrl are mapped the same as RX_PhyDORDY. The M-RX shall set the corresponding bit of RX_DataNCtrl to “0” when the related RX_Symbol bus range carries a data symbol. The M-RX shall set the corresponding bit of RX_DataNCtrl to “1” when the related RX_Symbol bus range carries a control symbol or a reserved symbol. The M-RX shall set all bits of RX_DataNCtrl to “0” when 10b8b decoding is bypassed.
RX_SymbolErr	O	Level	1, 2 or 4	The width of RX_SymbolErr is one, two or four bits depending on the RX_Symbol bus width of 10, 20, or 40 bits, respectively. The M-RX shall set each bit of RX_SymbolErr to “1” for one RX_SymbolClk cycle when any of the following conditions on the corresponding RX_Symbol bus range are “TRUE”: • The 3b4b sub-block is in error while decoding the related 8b10b symbol received over the LINE • The 5b6b sub-block is in error while decoding the related 8b10b symbol received over the LINE • The Running Disparity algorithm computes an RD error for the related 8b10b symbol received over the LINE • The related 8b10b symbol received over the LINE is a reserved symbol The M-RX shall set all bits of RX_SymbolErr to “0” for all other conditions. RX_Symbol shall carry, in the corresponding bus range, the remapped PAYLOAD byte. The M-RX shall set all bits of RX_SymbolErr to “0” when 10b8b decoding is bypassed.
RX_Burst	O	Transition	1	RX_Burst provides a framing window to the Protocol Layer for received BURSTs. The M-RX shall set RX_Burst to “1” when it detects the start of a PREPARE period. The M-RX shall set RX_Burst to “0” when it detects any of the BURST exit conditions and all 8b10b PAYLOAD data has been sent to the Protocol Layer via RX_Symbol (see ***Section 4.7.2.5***). The M-RX shall set RX_Burst to “0” when it detects the ADAPT sub-state exit condition (see ***Section 4.7.2.3***).

Table 61 M-RX Test Extensions

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
TST_RTObserve	O	Asynch	8	TST_RTObserve makes internal M-RX real-time signals observable, e.g. through DMA, by the Protocol Layer, or external test equipment. These signals are asynchronous to any clock on the M-RX-DATA or M-RX-CTRL interfaces. Signals are selected by programming implementation-specific M-RX registers using the M-RX-CTRL interface. The M-RX implementation shall not require TST_RTObserve for normal operation.
TST_RTControl	I	Asynch	8	TST_RTControl carries real-time signals to control implementation-specific signals, e.g. test features, inside the M-RX. These signals are asynchronous to any clock on the M-RX-DATA or M-RX-CTRL interfaces. Internal multiplexers with signals on this bus are selected by programming implementation-specific M-RX registers using the M-RX-CTRL interface. The M-RX implementation shall not require any specific behavior or value on TST_RTControl for normal operation.

A.3 The M-TX Signaling Interface

951 A schematic overview of the M-TX signaling interface is shown in ***Figure 67***.



TX_InLnCfg* - This signal is optional. Implementations may choose appropriate fixed value for backward compatibility.

Figure 67 M-TX Signal Interfaces Diagram

A.3.1 M-TX Signal Description

952 In ***Table 62*** through ***Table 64***, entries in the "Direction" column specifies the direction of each signal from the perspective of the M-TX. An input signal (abbreviated as "I") is driven by the Protocol Layer. An output signal (abbreviated as "O") is driven by the M-TX.

953 The "Detection Type" column indicates the relevant condition for a given signal. A Detection Type of "Level" means the relevant information is either a high or low level on the signal. A Detection Type of "Transition" means a change from high-to-low or low-to-high causes the described action. A Detection Type of "Clock" indicates the signal is used to synchronize other signals on the interface. A Detection Type of "Asynch" means the signal changes state asynchronously to the relevant clock signal.

Table 62 M-TX-CTRL Interface Signals

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
TX_CfgClk	I	Clock	1	Identical behavior as RX_CfgClk
TX_Reset	I	Asynch	1	Identical behavior as RX_Reset
TX_AttrID	I	Level	8	Identical behavior as RX_AttrID

Table 62 M-TX-CTRL Interface Signals (continued)

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
TX_AttrRdVal	O	Level	8	Identical behavior as RX_AttrRdVal
TX_AttrRdCnf	O	Level	1	Identical behavior as RX_AttrRdCnf. TX_AttrRdCnf is an optional signal.
TX_AttrWrVal	I	Level	8	Identical behavior as RX_AttrWrVal
TX_AttrWRn	I	Level	1	Identical behavior as RX_AttrWRn
TX_CfgEnbl	I	Level	1	Identical behavior as RX_CfgEnbl
TX_CfgUpdt	I	Transition	1	Identical behavior as RX_CfgUpdt. Protocol shall not issue TX_CfgUpdt between the protocol setting TX_Burst to "1" and the M-TX setting TX_SaveState_Status_N to "1”.
TX_CfgRdyN	O	Level	1	Identical behavior as RX_CfgRdyN
TX_LineReset	I	Transition	1	TX_LineReset triggers the M-TX to issue a LINE-RESET condition. When TX_Controlled_ActTimer is set to “0”, or TX_Controlled_ActTimer is not implemented, the Protocol Layer shall set TX_Burst to “0” and wait for $T_{ACTIVATE}$ after the M-TX sets TX_SaveState_Status_N to “0” before it sets TX_LineReset to “1” for one TX_CfgClk cycle. After the Protocol Layer sets TX_LineReset to “1” for one TX_CfgClk cycle, the M-TX shall immediately drive the LINE-RESET condition (see ***Section 4.7.4.1***). When TX_Controlled_ActTimer is set to “1”, after the Protocol Layer sets TX_LineReset to “1” for one TX_CfgClk cycle, the M-TX shall immediately drive DIF-N for $T_{ACTIVATE}$, irrespective of its current state, before it drives the LINE-RESET condition.
TX_Controlled_ ActTimer	I	Level	1	*TX_Controlled_ActTimer* informs the M-TX which Layer controls the $T_{ACTIVATE}$ time. *TX_Controlled_ActTimer* is an optional signal. The Protocol Layer shall set *TX_Controlled_ActTimer* to “1” to inform the M-TX to drive DIF-N for at least $T_{ACTIVATE}$, irrespective of the current M-TX state, before driving DIF-P for $T_{LINE\text{-}RESET}$ after TX_LineReset is asserted. The M-TX shall also control the $T_{ACTIVATE}$ time upon HIBERN8 exit. When *TX_Controlled_ActTimer* is set to “0”, the Protocol Layer shall wait $T_{ACTIVATE}$ after M-TX sets TX_SaveState_Status_N to “0” before asserting TX_LineReset. If *TX_Controlled_ActTimer* is set to “0”, when TX_LineReset is asserted, the M-TX shall immediately drive the LINE-RESET condition. The Protocol Layer shall also control the $T_{ACTIVATE}$ time upon HIBERN8 exit.

Table 62 M-TX-CTRL Interface Signals (continued)

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
TX_DIFNDrive	I	Level	1	Required only if *TX_Controlled_ActTimer* is 0 and M-TX supports RSE_PO_TX. When set to 1, supports the protocol control of M-TX output resistance to RSE_TX. If *TX_Controlled_ActTimer* is 0, the protocol shall set this signal to 1 for at least T_ACTIVATE before issuing a pulse on TX_LineReset or on exiting HIBERN8.

Table 63 M-TX-DATA Interface Signals

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
TX_SaveState_Status_N	O	Level	1	*TX_SaveState_Status_N* indicates the M-TX is entering or exiting a SAVE state. The Protocol Layer can use this signal to understand when the M-TX is not transmitting PREPARE, SYNC, HOB, PAYLOAD, TOB, BURST Extension or LINE-CFG information. The M-TX sets *TX_SaveState_Status_N* to “0” when it enters into a SAVE state. The M-TX sets *TX_SaveState_Status_N* to “1” when it exits a SAVE state. A Type-I implementation shall include this signal. Though not required, a Type-II implementation should include this signal. There may be a delay between the LINE state change and the indication of SAVE state entry.
TX_BitClk	I	Clock	1	Bit Clock TX_BitClk is used to transmit data bits over the LINEs. TX_BitClk may not be accessible in the M-TX-DATA interface for M-PHY implementations that comprise an integrated clock multiplier. TX_BitClk shall have no specific phase relationship requirement to any signal in the M-TX-DATA interface.
TX_SymbolClk	I	Clock	1	Symbol Clock All M-TX-DATA interface signals are synchronous with this signal. The Protocol Layer may disable TX_SymbolClk generation when the M-TX is not in LINE-CFG, PWM-BURST, SYS-BURST, or HS-BURST states. For this purpose, the Protocol Layer shall read the M-TX FSM state attribute. In HS-MODE and SYS-MODE, TX_SymbolClk shall have a period of 10 UI for a 10-bit TX_Symbol bus, 20 UI for a 20-bit TX_Symbol bus, or 40 UI for a 40-bit TX_Symbol bus. In PWM-MODE, TX_SymbolClk shall have a period of 10 T_{PWM_TX} for a 10-bit TX_Symbol bus, 20 T_{PWM_TX} for a 20-bit RX_Symbol bus, or 40 T_{PWM_TX} for a 40-bit TX_Symbol bus. The behavior of TX_SymbolClk must be glitch-free even when this signal is being enabled or disabled. TX_SymbolClk shall not have a “1” or “0” pulse with a duration less than one-quarter of the nominal TX_SymbolClk period.

Table 63 M-TX-DATA Interface Signals (continued)

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
TX_PhyDIRDY	O	Level	1	PHY Data Input Ready TX_PhyDIRDY indicates the M-TX is ready to accept new data on the TX_Symbol bus. The M-TX shall set TX_PhyDIRDY to “1” when the M-TX is ready to consume data. The M-TX shall set TX_PhyDIRDY to “0” when the M-TX is busy. The Protocol Layer should not update TX_Symbol while TX_PhyDIRDY is “0” and TX_Burst is “1”.
TX_Symbol	I	Level	10, 20 or 40	TX_Symbol is used for BURST data transfer to the M-TX. The contents of this bus depend on the interface width (10, 20 or 40 bits, corresponding to 1, 2 and 4 parallel symbols, respectively), and also on whether the 8b10b encoding function in the M-TX is bypassed. When the M-TX 8b10b encoding function is bypassed, TX_Symbol carries the raw data to send on the LINEs, parallelized according to the implemented width. The LSb of TX_Symbol shall correspond to the earliest transmitted bit. When the M-TX 8b10b encoding function is enabled, only the 8, 16, or 32 LSbs of TX_Symbol are used to carry the unencoded DATA or control symbol. The M-TX shall ignore the unused MSbs of TX_Symbol. The Protocol Layer should set the unused MSbs to “0”. Control symbols shall be encoded as listed in ***Table 58***. TX_Symbol is accepted by the M-TX on every TX_SymbolClk cycle in which TX_ProtDORDY, TX_PhyDIRDY and TX_Burst are “1”.

Table 63 M-TX-DATA Interface Signals (continued)

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
TX_ProtDORDY	I	Level	1, 2 or 4	Protocol Data Output Ready TX_ProtDORDY indicates data is available in the corresponding TX_Symbol bus range. The width of TX_ProtDORDY is one, two or four bits depending on the TX_Symbol bus width of 10, 20, or 40 bits, respectively. Each bit in TX_ProtDORDY corresponds to a range of bits in the TX_Symbol bus. TX_ProtDORDY Bits TX_Symbol bits (8b10b enabled) 0 bits[9:0] (bits[7:0]) 1 bits[19:10] (bits[15:8]) 2 bits[29:20] (bits[23:16]) 3 bits[39:30] (bits[31:24]) When a TX_Symbol bus range contains new data, the Protocol Layer shall set the corresponding bit of TX_ProtDORDY to “1” for each TX_SymbolClk cycle. When a TX_Symbol bus range does not contain new data, the Protocol Layer shall set the corresponding bit of TX_ProtDORDY to “0” for each TX_SymbolClk cycle. When the M-TX 8b10b encoding function is bypassed, the Protocol Layer shall set the applicable bits of TX_ProtDORDY to “1” for each TX_SymbolClk cycle during a BURST.
TX_DataNCtrl	I	Level	1, 2 or 4	TX_DataNCtrl indicates the type of symbol on the indicated range of TX_Symbol. The width of the TX_DataNCtrl is one, two or four bits depending on the TX_Symbol bus width of 10, 20, or 40 bits, respectively. The bits of TX_DataNCtrl are mapped the same as the bits of TX_ProtDORDY. The Protocol Layer shall set the corresponding bit of TX_DataNCtrl to “0” when the related TX_Symbol bus range carries a data symbol. The Protocol Layer shall set the corresponding bit of TX_DataNCtrl to “1” when the related TX_Symbol bus range carries a control symbol. The Protocol Layer should set all bits of TX_DataNCtrl to “0” when 8b10b encoding is bypassed. The M-TX shall ignore all bits of TX_DataNCtrl when 10b8b decoding is bypassed.

Table 63 M-TX-DATA Interface Signals (continued)

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
TX_Burst	I	Transition	1	TX_Burst initiates a BURST. The Protocol Layer shall set TX_Burst to “1” to initiate a BURST, and hold the value for the duration of the BURST. Once TX_Burst is set to “1”, the M-TX shall send the PREPARE sequence (and SYNC sequence in the case of a HS-BURST), followed by data or FILLER symbols. If any bit of TX_ProtDORDY is set to “1”, the M-TX shall send the data present on the corresponding TX_Symbol bus range. If any bit of TX_ProtDORDY is set to “0”, the M-TX shall send one FILLER for each TX_ProtDORDY bit set to 0. Once TX_Burst is set to “0”, the M-TX shall send the TAIL-OF-BURST sequence (see ***Section 4.7.2.4***). TX_Burst shall not be asserted while TX_ADAPT_ACTIVE or TX_ADAPT_REQ are asserted.
TX_ADAPT_ACTIVE	O	Level	1	TX_ADAPT_ACTIVE = 1 indicates to the Protocol that MTX is in ADAPT sub-state. The signal is asserted after PREPARE. The signal is de-asserted with the end of the ADAPT sequence.
TX_ADAPT_REQ	I	Level	1	The Protocol Layer shall set TX_ADAPT_REQ to “1” to initiate an ADAPT sequence. Once set to “1”, the M-TX shall send the PREPARE sequence followed by the ADAPT sequence. The Protocol shall de-assert TX_ADAPT_REQ with TX_ADAPT_ACTIVE = 1 earliest, but latest with the end of the ADAPT sequence when the MTX returns to STALL. The Protocol Layer shall ensure RX_ADAPT_Control set to ADAPT prior to assertion of this signal.

Table 64 M-TX Test Extensions

Signal Name	Direction	Detection Type	Width	Signal Description
TST_RTObserve	O	Asynch	8	Identical behavior as in M-RX interface
TST_RTControl	I	Asynch	8	Identical behavior as in M-RX interface

A.4 Interface Usage Examples

954 To aid in the design of a conformant implementation, the following use-cases are provided depicting the required interface behavior.

A.4.1 Attribute Read from Effective Configuration

955 ***Figure 68*** illustrates an example of an attribute read from the M-RX. The example shows the M-RX effective configuration bank being read regardless of RX_CfgRdyN value.

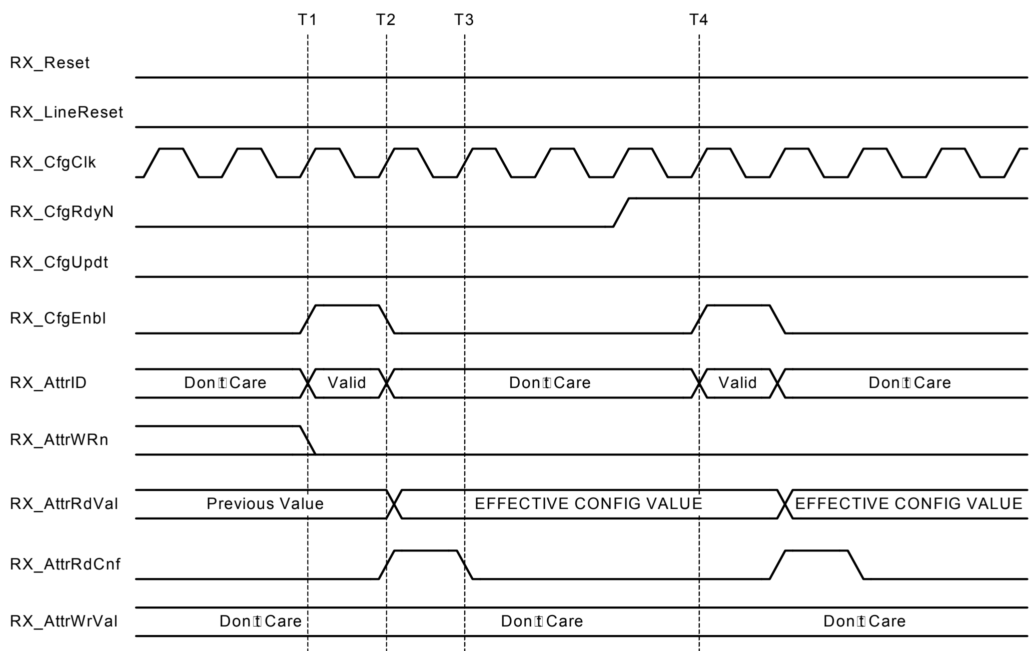


Figure 68 Interface Behavior for Attribute Read Operations

956 At T1, on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk, the Protocol Layer sets RX_CfgEnbl to "1", sets RX_AttrWRn to "0", and sets the value of RX_AttrID to the attribute identifier.

957 At T2, on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk, the M-RX captures the command. In response, the M-RX updates RX_AttrRdVal with the effective configuration bank attribute value and, if implemented, asserts Rx_AttrRdCnf for one RX_CfgClk cycle. Also at T2, the Protocol Layer sets RX_CfgEnbl to "0" on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk.

958 At T3, the Protocol Layer can capture RX_AttrRdVal. The M-RX holds the value on RX_AttrRdVal until a subsequent read operation, or local RESET.

959 At T4, on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk, the Protocol Layer initiates a second read operation. In this instance, the M-RX has set RX_CfgRdyN set to "1" indicating it cannot process a write operation. Note that the read operation is unaffected by the RX_CfgRdyN signal.

A.4.2 Attribute Write to Shadow Memory and Effective Configuration

960 ***Figure 69*** shows two attribute writes to the M-RX. In this use-case, an attribute in the shadow memory bank is updated independently of RX_CfgRdyN, then an effective configuration bank attribute is updated only when RX_CfgRdyN is "0".

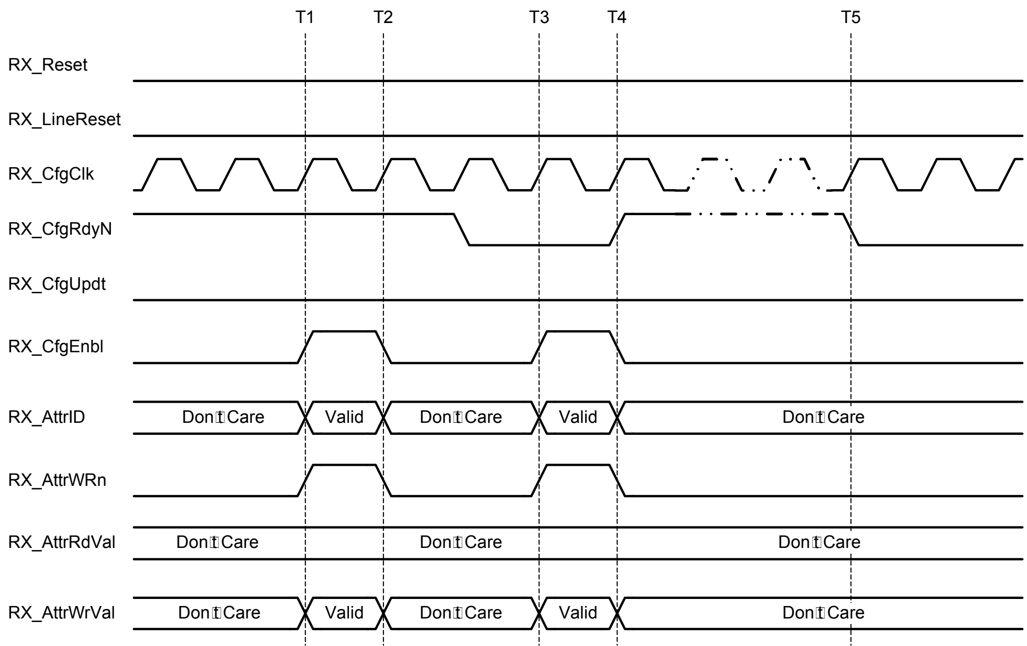


Figure 69 Interface Behavior for Attribute Write Operations

961 At T1, on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk, the Protocol Layer sets RX_CfgEnbl and RX_AttrWRn to "1", and sets the value of RX_AttrID and RX_AttrWrVal.

962 At T2, the M-RX samples these signals on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk and performs the requested operation, in this case updating its shadow memory bank. Since the effective configuration bank is not changed, the M-RX performs the requested operation even though RX_CfgRdyN is "1" at this time. The Protocol Layer, on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk at T2, sets RX_CfgEnbl and RX_AttrWRn to "0", and optionally sets to "0" RX_AttrID and RX_AttrWrVal.

963 At T3, another write operation is performed in the same manner as the first, which causes the M-RX to write either to the effective configuration bank or to the shadow memory bank, depending on the implementation as this operation is performed by the M-RX when RX_CfgRdyN is "0" as illustrated in this use-case.

964 As a result of the operation, the M-RX optionally sets RX_CfgRdyN to "1" at T4, when the write operation is processed. The M-RX optionally holds RX_CfgRdyN at "1" until the change in the configuration is complete. The M-RX then sets RX_CfgRdyN to "0" synchronously with RX_CfgClk at T5. The M-RX is then ready to perform any subsequent write operation.

A.4.3 Effective Configuration Single-step Update and Local RESET

965 ***Figure 70*** shows a single-step (atomic) update of the effective configuration bank followed by a local RESET.

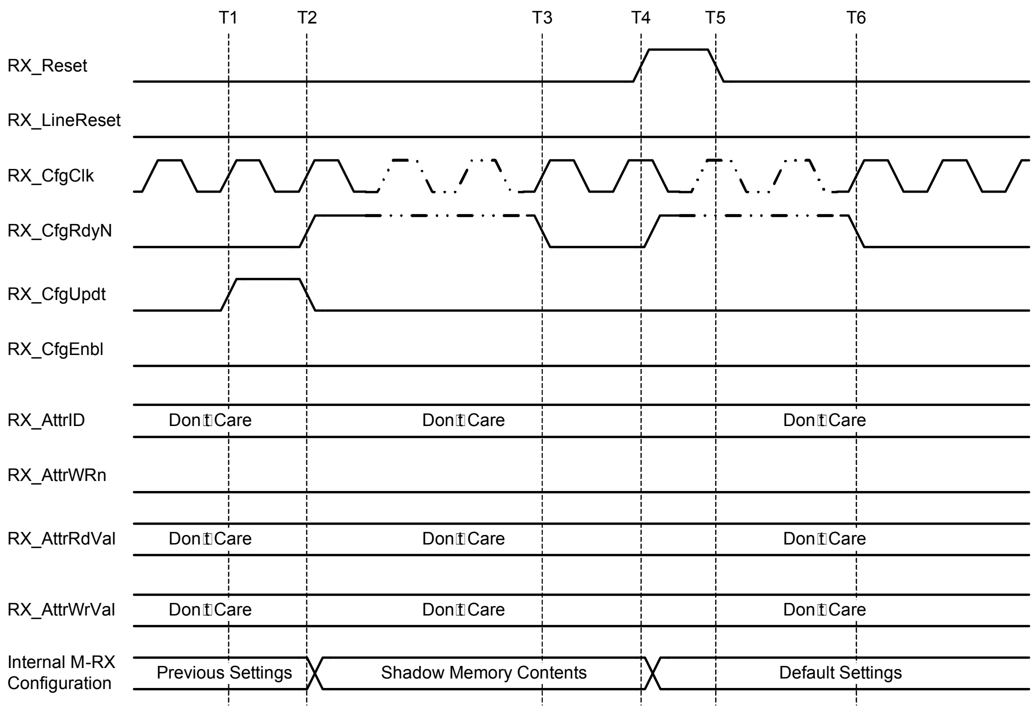


Figure 70 Interface Behavior for RX_CfgUpdt and RX_Reset

966 At T1, the Protocol Layer sets RX_CfgUpdt to "1" for one cycle of RX_CfgClk to upload the entire shadow memory bank into the effective configuration bank in one step. The Protocol Layer holds RX_CfgEnbl at "0" for this operation. RX_AttrID, RX_AttrWRn, and RX_AttrWrVal are ignored by the M-RX.

967 The M-RX processes the command on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk at T2, when the entire shadow memory is uploaded into the effective configuration bank. The M-RX then sets RX_CfgRdyN to "1" and holds the value until the change in the M-RX configuration is complete and the M-RX is ready to perform subsequent write operations.

968 At T3, the M-RX sets RX_CfgRdyN to "0"on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk.

969 At T4, the Protocol Layer sets RX_Reset to "1", asynchronous to RX_CfgClk, causing a local RESET. The M-RX asynchronously sets RX_CfgRdyN to "1" in response, and holds the value until the Protocol Layer sets RX_Reset to "0", which occurs at T5, and it finishes processing the local RESET. Once the M-RX is ready to perform subsequent write operations, it sets RX_CfgRdyN to "0", which occurs synchronously at T6.

A.4.4 Received LCC and LINE-RESET

970 ***Figure 71*** shows a Type-I M-RX receiving an LCC after an HS-BURST or PWM-BURST followed by a LINE-RESET.

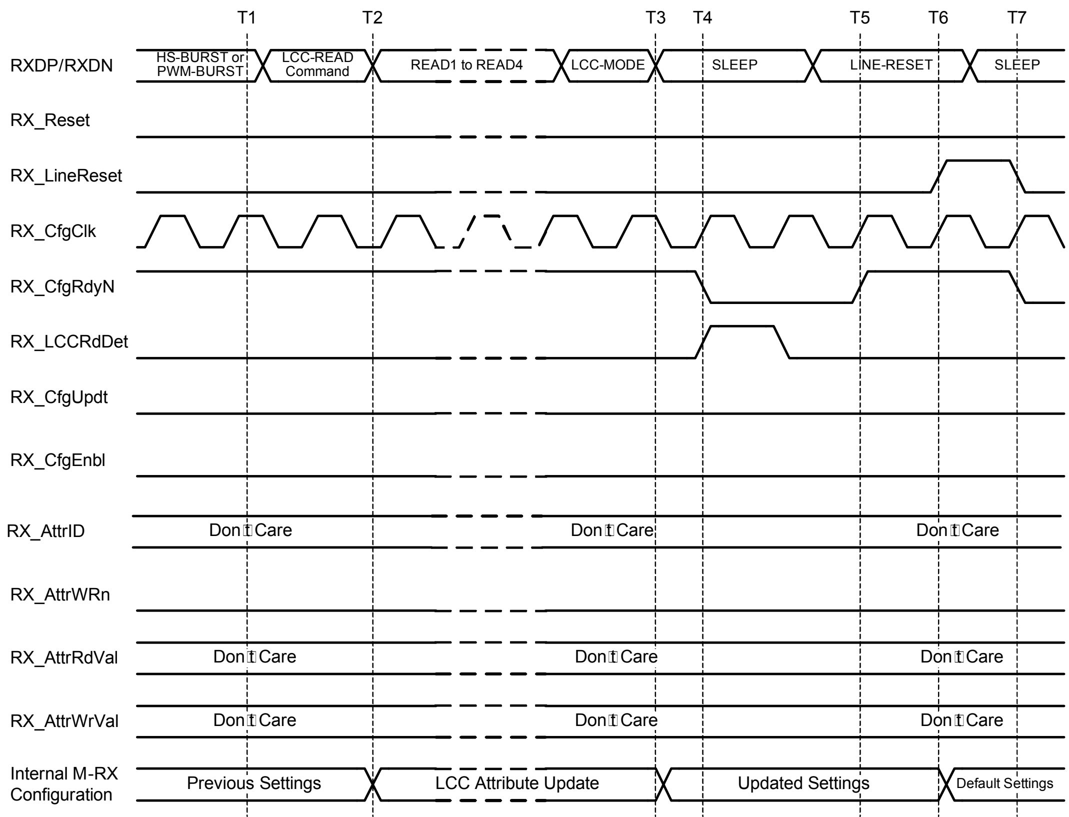


Figure 71 Interface Behavior for LCC Command and LINE-RESET

971 Following an HS-BURST or PWM-BURST, a Type 1 M-RX receives an LCC starting at T1. As shown in the figure, the LCC is asynchronous to RX_CfgClk. Since the LCC follows from HS-BURST or PWM-BURST without passing through STALL, SLEEP or HIBERN8 states, the M-RX holds RX_CfgRdyN at “1”.

972 At T2, the M-RX waits for LCC data from the media convertor.

973 At T3, the M-RX exits LCC-MODE.

974 At T4, on the first rising edge of RX_CfgClk after the end of LCC-MODE, all LCC attributes are updated. The M-RX sets RX_LCCRdDet to “1” for one cycle of RX_CfgClk indicating all LCC-READ sequences have been processed, and sets RX_CfgRdyN to “0” indicating it has entered a SAVE state. Additional PWM edges provided during the LCC-MODE command can be used for clocking data to the signaling interface.

975 At T5, on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk, the M-RX sets RX_CfgRdyN to “1” indicating the LINE is no longer in SLEEP, STALL or HIBERN8 state.

976 At T6, on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk, the M-RX sets RX_LineReset to “1” indicating it has detected the LINE-RESET condition. Both RX_CfgRdyN and RX_LineReset are held at “1” for the duration of the LINE-RESET action.

977 At T7, on the rising edge of RX_CfgClk, the M-RX sets RX_CfgRdyN and RX_LineReset to “0” indicating the LINE is in SLEEP state and the LINE-RESET action is complete.

978 Note:

979 *RX_CfgRdyN and RX_LineReset behaviors are independent. In the use-case shown in **Figure 71**, the M-RX may hold RX_CfgRdyN at “1” at T7 until it is ready to accept subsequent write commands.*

A.4.5 HS Data Reception with 20-bit RX_Symbol Bus

980 ***Figure 72*** shows the interface behavior for an M-RX with a 20-bit interface during HS data reception. 10b8b decoding is enabled in this use-case.

981 In this use-case, the M-RX receives a data transmission from the attached M-TX. An RD error occurs near the end of the transmission.

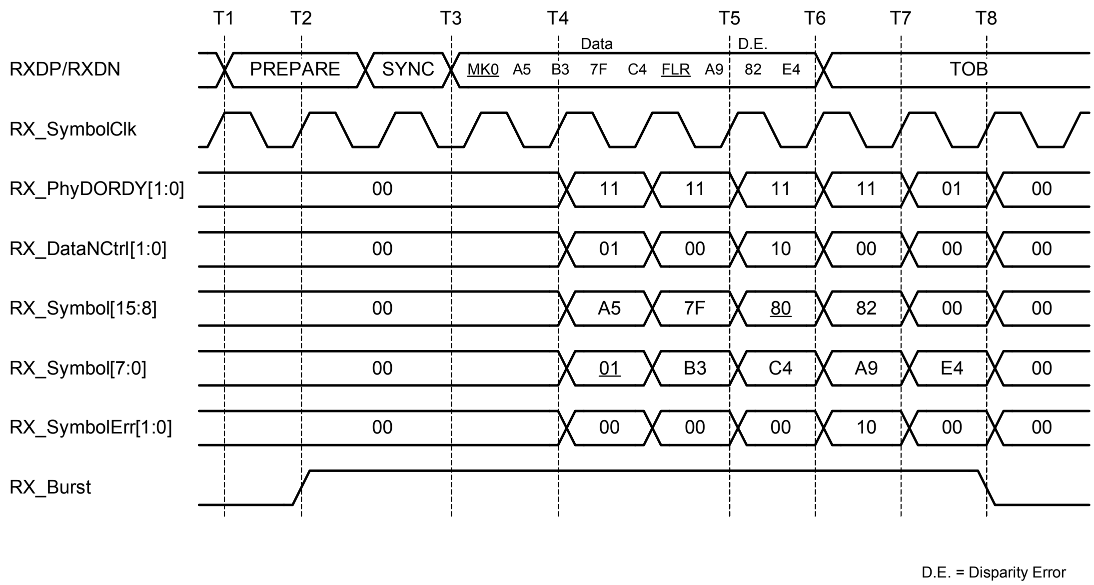


Figure 72 Example 20-bit Interface Behavior for HS Data Reception

982 At T1, the M-RX detects the PREPARE sequence and sets RX_Burst to “1” on the rising edge of RX_SymbolClk at T2.

983 At T3, the SYNC sequence ends. The M-RX receives the first two symbols, a MARKER0 (MK0) and A5 (data).

984 At T4, on the rising edge of RX_SymbolClk, the M-RX sets RX_Symbol[7:0] to “01” (MARKER0) and RX_Symbol[15:8] to “A5”. The M-RX also sets RX_DataNCtrl[0] to “1” indicating a control symbol is on RX_Symbol[7:0], and sets RX_DataNCtrl[1] to “0” indicating data is on RX_Symbol[15:8]. RX_SymbolErr[1:0] is held at “00” indicating no errors on RX_Symbol. Finally, the M-RX sets RX_PhyDORDY[1:] to “11” indicating data is available on RX_Symbol. On the next rising edge of RX_SymbolClk, the M-RX sets RX_Symbol[7:0] and RX_Symbol[15:8] to the next two symbols received, “B3” and “7F”, respectively. The M-RX sets RX_DataNCtrl[1:0] to “00” indicating both symbols are data. The M-RX sets the remaining signals the same as at T4.

985 At T5, the M-RX sets RX_DataNCtrl[1:0] to “10” indicating it received another control symbol. The M-RX also sets RX_Symbol[7:0] to “C4” (data) and RX_Symbol[15:8] to “80” (FILLER). The M-RX sets the remaining signals the same as at T4.

986 Note:

987 *By itself, the FILLER symbol does not cause the M-RX to set RX_PhyDORDY[1] to “0”. However, a midstream deassertion of RX_PhyDORDY is possible in plesiochronous Type-I systems due to, e.g. internal FIFO refills in an M-RX implementation.*

988 The M-RX receives the next two symbols, “A9” and “82”, in the same manner as the first six symbols. However, as shown in ***Figure 72***, the “82” symbol has an RD error.

989 At T6, on the rising edge of RX_SymbolClk, the M-RX sets RX_Symbol[7:0] to “A9”, RX_Symbol[15:8] to “82”, and RX_SymbolErr[1:0] to “10” indicating an error in the data on RX_Symbol[15:8]. Finally, the M-RX sets RX_PhyDORDY[1:0] to “11” indicating data is available on RX_Symbol.

990 At T7, the M-RX detects the end of the BURST and determines it has received an odd number of symbols. It sets RX_Symbol[7:0] to “E4”, RX_Symbol[15:8] to “00”, and RX_PhyDORDY[1:0] to “01” indicating RX_Symbol[15:8] does not contain data. The M-RX also sets RX_DataNCtrl[1:0] to “00” indicating RX_Symbol does not contain any control symbols. Finally, the M-RX sets RX_SymbolErr[1:0] to “00” indicating there are no errors.

991 At T8, on the rising edge of RX_SymbolClk, the M-RX sets RX_Burst to “0” indicating the end of the Burst. “00” on RX_Symbol[15:0] is a don't care condition.

A.4.6 TX_LineReset Behavior

992 ***Figure 73*** shows a LINE-RESET use-case. In this use-case, the Protocol Layer sends a LINE-RESET to initialize the M-TX and M-RX attached to the LINE.

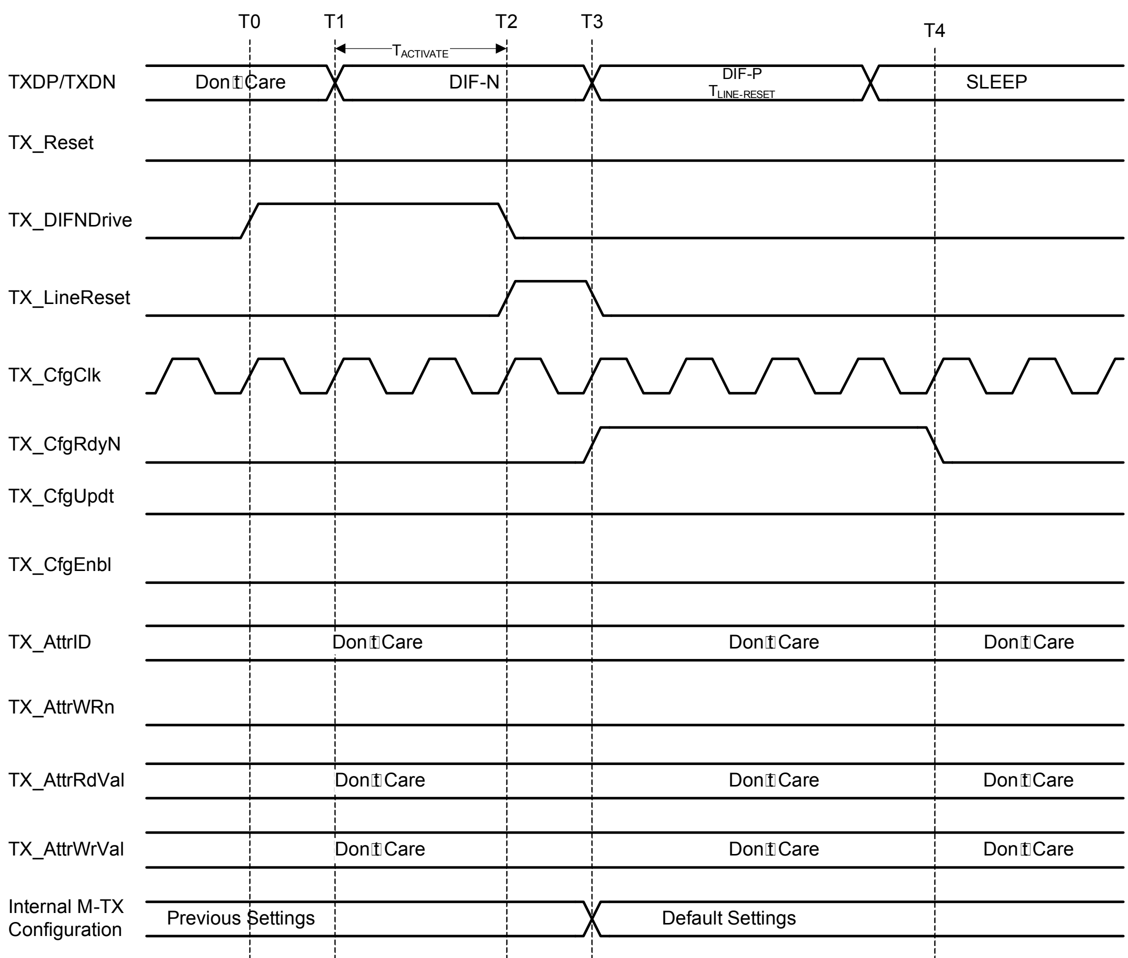


Figure 73 Interface Behavior for a TX_LineReset Command

993 At T0, the Protocol Layer sets TX_DIFNDrive to “1” and holds it to “1” for $T_{ACTIVATE}$ before issuing LINE-RESET.

994 At T1, the Protocol Layer ensures the M-TX is in SLEEP or STALL state, and waits for $T_{ACTIVATE}$ before issuing LINE-RESET. The M-TX detects TX_DIFNDrive at “1” and drives DIF-N on the LINE.

995 At T2, the Protocol Layer sets TX_LineReset to “1” on the rising edge of TX_CfgClk, and optionally sets it to “0” one TX_CfgClk cycle later at T3.

996 At T3, the M-TX sets TX_CfgRdyN to “1”, updates its internal configuration registers to their default values, and starts driving the LINE-RESET condition.

997 The M-TX holds TX_CfgRdyN at “1” while it is processing the LINE-RESET.

998 At T4, on the rising edge of TX_CfgClk, the M-TX sets TX_CfgRdyN to “0” to signal its internal FSM exit to SLEEP state. At this time, the M-TX is ready for any subsequent write command or TX_LineReset pulse.

999 Note:

1000 *The M-TX only monitors the 0-to-1 transition on TX_LineReset to interpret the command. Consequently, the M-TX does not detect whether the Protocol Layer leaves TX_LineReset at “1” or sets it to “0” at T3.*

A.4.7 HS Transmission on 20-bit TX_Symbol Bus with Data Throttled by Protocol Layer

1001 ***Figure 74*** shows an HS transmission with the Protocol Layer controlling the data throughput. 8b10b encoding is enabled in this use-case.

1002 In this use-case, the Protocol Layer cannot supply transmission requests as fast as the M-TX transmissions on the LINE. The Protocol Layer throttles the data throughput by changing the value on TX_ProtDORDY. The M-TX continues to transmit, but inserts FILLER symbols whenever the Protocol Layer does not have new data to send.

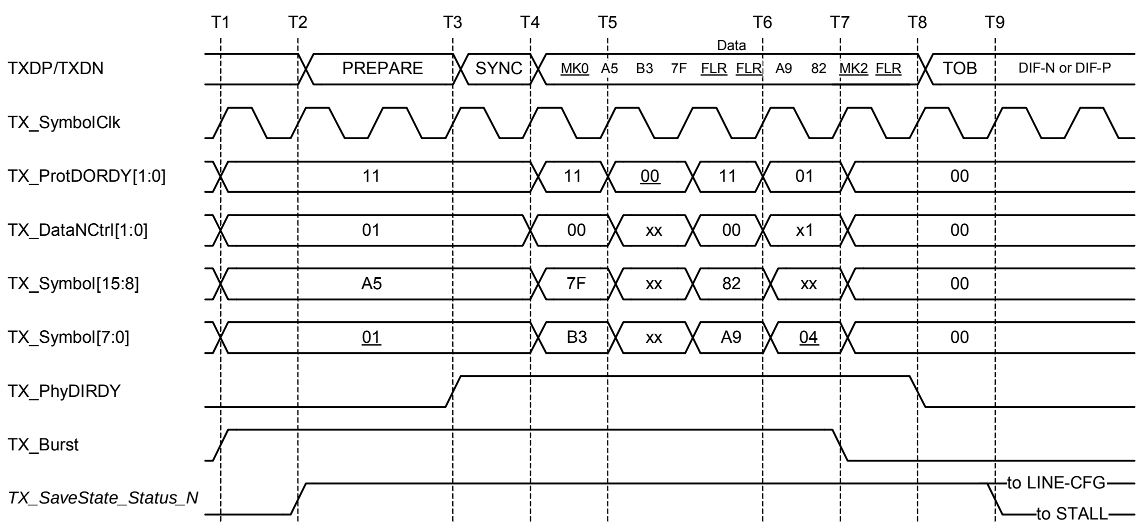


Figure 74 Interface Behavior for HS Transmission with Protocol Layer Throttling Data

1003 At T1, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the Protocol Layer sets TX_ProtDORDY[1:0] to “11”, indicating both TX_Symbol[7:0] and TX_Symbol[15:8] contain data; TX_DataNCtrl[1:0] to “01”, indicating the value on TX_Symbol[7:0] (01) is a control symbol (MARKER0), and the value on TX_Symbol[15:8] (A5) is a data symbol. Finally, the Protocol Layer initiates the HS transmission by setting TX_Burst to “1”.

1004 At T2, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the M-TX reads the Protocol Layer request and issues PREPARE and SYNC sequences. The M-TX also sets *TX_SaveState_Status_N* to “1”.

1005 At T3, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the M-TX sets TX_PhyDIRDY to “1”, far enough in advance of the start of data transmission for the Protocol Layer to read TX_PhyDIRDY at T4.

1006 At T4, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the Protocol Layer holds TX_ProtDORDY[1:0] at “11”, indicating new data is available, and sets TX_DataNCtrl[1:0] to “00”, indicating the values on TX_Symbol[7:0] (B3) and TX_Symbol[15:8] (7F) are data symbols.

1007 At T5, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the Protocol Layer sets TX_ProtDORDY to “00” indicating it does not have new data to send. The M-TX ignores the values on TX_DataNCtrl[1:0] and TX_Symbol[15:0], and inserts two FILLER symbols on the LINE.

1008 At T6, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the Protocol Layer sets TX_ProtDORDY[1:0] to “01”, indicating only TX_Symbol[7:0] has available data, and sets TX_DataNCtrl[1:0] to “01”, indicating the value on TX_Symbol[7:0] (04) is a control symbol (MARKER2).

1009 At T7, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the Protocol Layer sets TX_Burst to “0” indicating the end of the HS-BURST. In this use-case, the M-TX inserts a FILLER symbol after the MARKER2 symbol. “00” on TX_Symbol[15:0] is a don't care condition.

1010 At T8, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the M-TX reads the TX_Burst signal as “0” and begins transmitting the TAIL-OF-BURST sequence on the LINE. The M-TX sets TX_PhyDIRDY to “0”, indicating it is no longer prepared to accept new data to transmit.

1011 At T9, on completion of TOB, the M_TX sets *TX_SaveState_Status_N* to “0” and enters STALL state or proceeds to LINE-CFG, leaving *TX_SaveState_Status_N* at “1”.

A.4.8 HS Transmission on 20-bit TX_Symbol Bus with Data Throttled by M-TX

1012 ***Figure 75*** shows an HS transmission with the M-TX controlling the data throughput. 8b10b encoding is enabled in this use-case.

1013 In this use-case, the M-TX transmissions on the LINE lag the Protocol Layer requests so the M-TX needs to slow down the transfer from the Protocol Layer. The M-TX throttles the data throughput by changing the value on TX_PhyDIRDY.

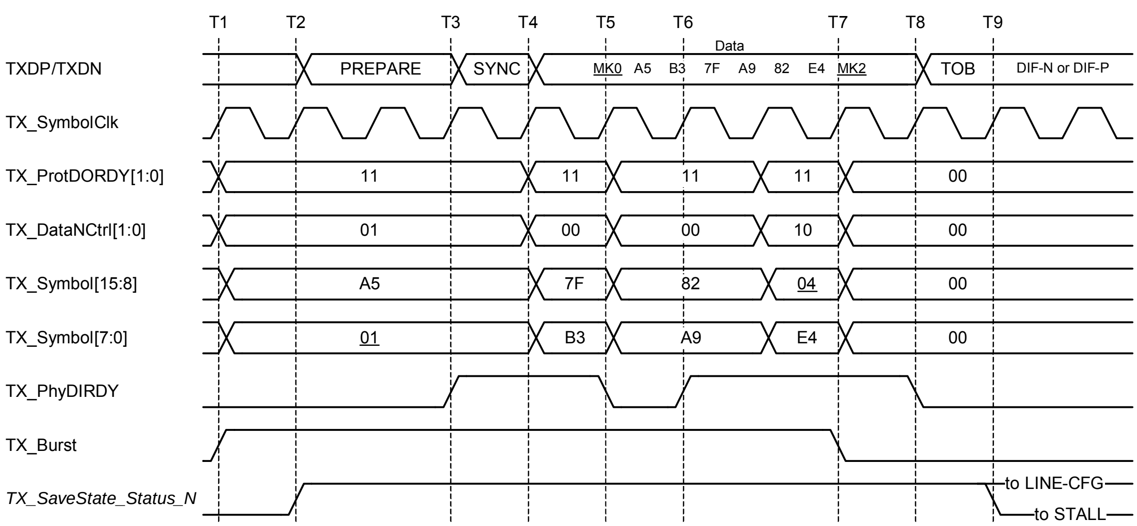


Figure 75 Interface Behavior for HS Transmission with M-TX Throttling Data

1014 At T1, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the Protocol Layer sets TX_ProtDORDY[1:0] to “11”, indicating both TX_Symbol[7:0] and TX_Symbol[15:8] contain data; TX_DataNCtrl[1:0] to “01”, indicating the value on TX_Symbol[7:0] (01) is a control symbol (MARKER0), and the value on TX_Symbol[15:8] (A5) is a data symbol. Finally, the Protocol Layer initiates the HS transmission by setting TX_Burst to “1”.

1015 At T2, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the M-TX reads the Protocol Layer request and issues PREPARE and SYNC sequences. The M-TX also sets *TX_SaveState_Status_N* to “1”.

1016 At T3, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the M-TX sets TX_PhyDIRDY to “1”, far enough in advance of the start of data transmission for the Protocol Layer to read TX_PhyDIRDY.

1017 At T4, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the Protocol Layer sets TX_ProtDORDY[1:0] to “11”, indicating new data is available, and sets TX_DataNCtrl[1:0] to “00”, indicating the values on TX_Symbol[7:0] (B3) and TX_Symbol[15:8] (7F) are data symbols.

1018 At T5, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the M-TX sets TX_PhyDIRDY to “0”, indicating the M-TX is busy. The Protocol Layer holds TX_ProtDORDY at “11” indicating it has new data to send.

1019 At T6, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the M-TX sets TX_PhyDIRDY to “1” indicating it is again available to accept new data. However, the Protocol Layer reads TX_PhyDIRDY as “0”, and consequently holds the values on TX_ProtDORDY[1:0], TX_DataNCtrl[1:0], and TX_Symbol[15:0].

1020 On the next rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the Protocol Layer sets TX_ProtDORDY[1:0] to “11”, and sets TX_DataNCtrl[1:0] to “10”, indicating the value on TX_Symbol[7:0] (E4) is a data symbol and the value on TX_Symbol[15:8] (04) is a control symbol (MARKER2).

1021 At T7, on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, the Protocol Layer sets TX_Burst to “0” indicating the end of the HS-BURST.

1022 At T8, the M-TX reads the TX_Burst signal as “0” on the rising edge of TX_SymbolClk, and begins transmitting the TAIL-OF-BURST sequence on the LINE. The M-TX sets TX_PhyDIRDY to “0”, indicating it is no longer prepared to accept new data to transmit.

1023 At T9, on completion of TOB, the M_TX sets *TX_SaveState_Status_N* to “0” and enters STALL state or proceeds to LINE-CFG, leaving *TX_SaveState_Status_N* at “1”.

Annex B Recommended Test Functionality (informative)

1024 The purpose of this annex is to provide guidelines for testability features for M-PHY applications. Because explicit test modes are not defined within the Physical Layer, most test functionality is left to higher layers to implement. However, this must be done in a manner that produces the necessary behavior at the Physical Layer interface that is needed for performing physical layer measurements with standard laboratory equipment.

1025 This annex describes the functional behavior that should be provided at the Physical Layer interface in order for various classes of measurements to be performed. The behavior is described in an abstract manner, without reference to specific protocols or applications. Because multiple applications of M-PHY technology exist, options for different architectures are discussed. Applications that use M-PHY technology should ensure that sufficient functionality is designed into the higher layer specifications to allow the necessary test functionality to be supported at the Physical Layer interface. Note that this functionality may be supported within the normal operating capabilities of the protocol, or may be implemented via specialized test modes if necessary.

1026 This annex is divided into two main sections, test pattern generation and test pattern verification. Test pattern generation is primarily applicable to transmitter measurements, and test pattern verification is applicable to receiver tolerance measurements. A brief section on interoperability testing is also discussed.

B.1 Test Pattern Generation

B.1.1 General Transmitter Test Approach

1027 In order to perform transmitter signaling measurements such as amplitude (swing), rise and fall times, skew, jitter, etc, it is necessary for the M-PHY Device Under Test (DUT) to transmit known test patterns into a reference termination load. The signals observed at this reference load are captured using an oscilloscope, and measured for conformance.

1028 The reference termination may consist of an external fixture that contains a precision reference termination structure, which is then probed using high-bandwidth active probes. Or in some cases the oscilloscope itself may be used as the reference termination (in cases where a 100 Ω differential termination is required), in which case the signal is sent directly into the instrument, using coaxial cables.

1029 In the case of M-PHY technology, where signals must also be measured into an open (unterminated) termination, active probing must be used, as it is the only way to observe signals under these conditions. Active probing is also preferable for terminated measurements, as it allows the signal to be observed as close to the TX PINs as possible, and with minimal capacitive loading.

1030 An example transmitter test setup is shown in ***Figure 76***, where the DUT is mounted on an SMA-based Test Vehicle Board (TVB), and is connected to a Reference Termination Board (RTB). Each signaling Lane is probed using two active differential probes.

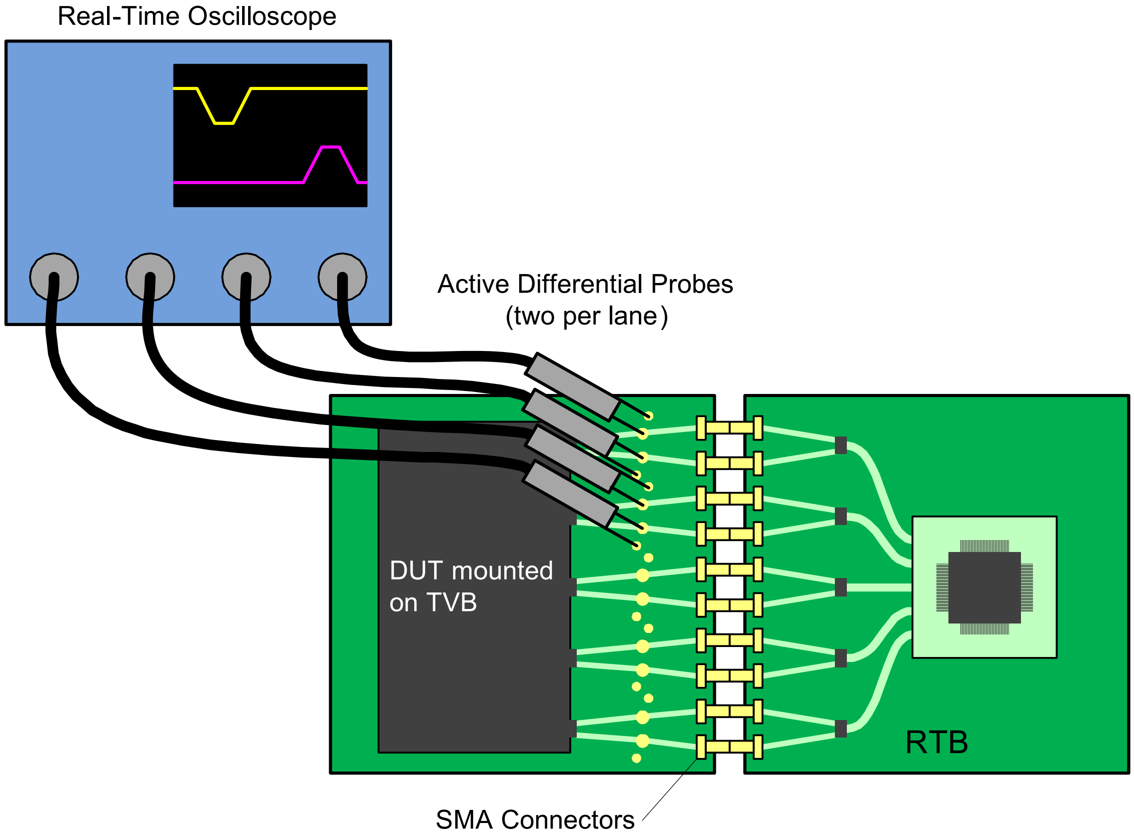


Figure 76 Transmitter Test Setup

B.1.2 Test Patterns

1031 Some transmitter measurements, e.g., rise and fall times, are typically performed on short repeating patterns consisting of a single repeated 10-bit code word, e.g., D30.7, D10.2, etc. Other measurements, such as transmitter jitter, are required to be performed on longer repeating patterns such as CJTPAT and CRPAT (see ***[INC01]***).

1032 As a result, it is desirable for M-PHY devices to support a mode that allows a test pattern (up to 2320 bits in length for CJTPAT, and 1960 bits for CRPAT). For maximum flexibility, this mode should allow arbitrary sequences of validly encoded 8b10b 10-bit codewords up to several thousand bits in length.

B.1.3 Signaling Type and Speed

1033 Two types of signaling are used for an M-PHY implementation, NRZ and PWM. A Type-I MODULE uses NRZ signaling for HS transmission and uses PWM signaling for LS transmission. A Type-II MODULE uses NRZ signaling for LS and HS transmission. In addition, different speed ranges (GEARs) are defined for both HS and LS transmission.

1034 DUTs should provide a mechanism that allows both the signaling type and GEAR to be controlled for test purposes.

B.1.4 Continuous vs. Burst Modes

1035 Under normal operation, data transmission occurs in bursts, with power-saving states occurring between bursts.

1036 Most transmitter measurements can be performed on burst-mode signaling using a real-time oscilloscope. These instruments can capture individual burst waveforms, which can then be post-processed to extract the required measurements.

1037 Note that a second class of oscilloscope exists, known as a sampling oscilloscope, which requires a continuous, repeating pattern in order to observe and measure a signal. These instruments sample multiple instances of the same repeating waveform at different time offsets in order to build a picture of the transmitted signal. These types of instruments are typically capable of higher bandwidths and greater vertical precision than real-time oscilloscopes, however they require a continuous, repeating pattern, and cannot measure burst-mode signaling.

1038 In order to support the widest range of test instruments and greatest measurement flexibility, M-PHY devices should support both burst-based and continuous transmission modes for test pattern generation.

B.1.5 Disconnect

1039 Mechanisms may exist within the protocol to allow configuration of desired test modes and capabilities through the Physical Layer interface. However in these instances, capability must be provided that allows the DUT to remain in the configured test mode once the test mode has been entered, such that it may be disconnected from a protocol-aware LINK partner (that may have been used to perform all or part of the configuration), and reconnected to the test setup. This implies that the DUT maintains the configured transmitter test mode even when no signaling is present at the DUT's receiver. This functionality is often informally referred to as 'disconnect' in the test community, in that if a DUT supports “disconnect”, it will maintain its test modes after being disconnected from a LINK partner.

1040 M-PHY devices should support disconnect for all test modes.

B.1.6 Configuration

1041 One method for implementing such a feature would be to define a special protocol mechanism, which would allow a special frame or command containing the desired pattern to be sent to the DUT via the Physical Layer interface. Upon reception of this packet, the DUT would transmit the provided pattern continuously, using the desired signaling type, gear, and any other desired settings (which could also be specified along with the pattern.) The test pattern could be transmitted continuously until a separate reset packet is received, or the DUT is power cycled.

B.2 Test Pattern Verification

B.2.1 General Receiver Test Approach

1042 The general approach used for verifying receiver conformance involves using a laboratory-grade signal generator to generate signaling that contains controlled amounts of degradation, of various types, per the specification requirements. The signal generator is calibrated by measuring the specified characteristics into a reference termination (which is the same reference termination used for the transmitter conformance measurements). Once the required amount of degradation is calibrated, the signal is removed from the reference termination and applied to the DUT's receiver.

1043 At this point, some observable mechanism must be used to determine whether or not the DUT can successfully decode the received signaling without error. There are several ways that this can be achieved.

B.2.2 Loopback Mode

1044 Loopback mode is one of the most common mechanisms used for receiver testing. In this mode, data that is received at the RX is retransmitted out the TX. The TX signal can then be observed to verify whether or not any bits were received in error (as the error would be propagated to the TX). Note however that different types of loopback modes exist, and the subtleties of these differences can impact their ability to be used with different types of test instruments. The important differences are discussed below:

B.2.2.1 Synchronous vs. Plesiochronous

1045 One of the most important characteristics of a loopback mode pertains to how the clocking architecture is defined with respect to the receiver and transmitter. For a synchronous loopback, the recovered clock from the RX is used to retransmit the signal on the TX. This means there is a bit-for-bit relationship between receiver and transmitter, and the exact bit sequence that was sent into the receiver will appear at the transmitter.

1046 Typically, this type of loopback mode is implemented outside the scope of normal operation, where the standard protocol operation is no longer applicable, and the DUT will simply forward any data received to the transmitter. The received data is typically not 8b10b decoded and re-encoded in the loopback path, which ensures that a single error at the receiver translates to a single error at the transmitter. This behavior allows traditional Bit Error Rate Tester (BERT) instruments to be used to test the receiver (as these instruments typically require a bit-for-bit correlation between the transmitted and received data patterns.)

1047 This document actually specifies this exact type of loopback. The LOOPBACK feature defined in ***Section 4.10.1*** is intended for symmetric architectures that support the same MODE and GEAR settings for the M-RX and M-TX. If this feature is supported, it can actually be used for both receiver and transmitter verification, as most transmitter measurements can be performed on the TX output while the desired test pattern is transmitted into the RX. Note however that this case is not ideal for all transmitter tests, particularly jitter, as measured jitter and frequency while in LOOPBACK are not necessarily the same as during normal operation, as the clock reference is not the same.

1048 Other types of loopback include a plesiochronous loopback (sometimes referred to as a “far-end retimed loopback”), which is similar to the synchronous loopback, except the transmitter and receiver run on separate clock domains, i.e., have separate clock references. This means that the RX and TX are operating at almost the same rate, but are not exactly matched. This is still considered a test mode that operates outside the scope of normal protocol operation, where data must be inserted or deleted from the data being looped back in order to account for the rate difference between RX and TX. This is typically accomplished by inserting or deleting specifically defined control codewords that are not considered part of the CRC-checked frame data stream.

1049 In this scenario, a BERT or other signal source may be used to generate the test signal that is sent into the receiver, however the signal that is retransmitted by the DUT must be checked using a Frame Error Counter, which is a device that can receive the framed data patterns, and compute or check the CRC (which is included as part of the defined pattern.)

B.2.3 Receiver Pattern Checking

1050 Note that the loopback described above can only be used for symmetric architectures, and requires the same MODEs and GEARs to be supported by both the M-RX and M-TX. For M-PHY applications and architectures that are not bidirectional and symmetric, a different approach must be used to verify received data for the purposes of conformance testing.

1051 One option consists of a dedicated RX test mode, whereby a predefined test pattern can be transmitted into the M-RX, and the checking operation is actually performed by the receiver itself. This can be done on a bit-for-bit level (if the expected pattern is known by the receiver). However, an easier approach is to use the CRC functionality that already exists in most devices.

1052 Such a dedicated RX test mode must be simple enough that a majority of the protocol is bypassed. The DUT must be placed into a mode where simple, framed patterns containing valid CRC's can be sent into the receiver, using a non-protocol-aware signal generator. Note that most current lab signal sources contain some degree of sequencing capability that can be used to send startup or configuration information prior to a repeating test sequence. The only limitation to these instruments however is that they cannot be “interactive” in that they cannot detect and react to transmissions coming from the DUT, if timing-sensitive handshaking is required as part of the protocol. In some cases where the timings are known and repeatable, it may be possible to create sequences that can mimic an interactive protocol exchange, however these typically must be created on a per-DUT basis, and require knowledge of the exact timings required.

1053 If a mode exists where a receiver is able to verify CRC-checked frame data, a mechanism must be provided that allows for observation of the results of the checking operation. While this may be achieved though internal vendor-specific registers and counters, it is also possible (and preferable) to allow this to be performed through the Physical Layer interface.

1054 Several options exist to enable this, which are all based on acknowledgement mechanisms, provided the DUT contains a low-speed TX, which may be used to communicate information about the received data.

1055 If sufficient bandwidth exists, the DUT could transmit some form of defined positive acknowledgement for each successfully received frame, and a negative acknowledgement for each frame received in error. If sufficient bandwidth does not exist, the positive acknowledgements can be omitted, and only the negative acknowledgements sent in the error cases (which are assumed to be few). The acknowledgements may be as simple as a single codeword or short pattern, or any other sequence that can be detected and counted using non-protocol-specific laboratory instruments (or possibly a simple FPGA).

1056 In the extreme case, the DUT technically only needs to indicate if any errors were observed over a given period in order for a test to be designed that can verify conformance. If a known amount of data is transmitted to the DUT over a given interval, and the DUT indicates provides a single acknowledgement that no errors were observed, this is a sufficient observable to determine conformance. While knowing an exact error count may certainly be useful for debugging and troubleshooting purposes, such level of detail is not necessary for determining conformance.

1057 Applications that do not or cannot implement LOOPBACK should implement some form of dedicated pattern-checking mode, which is capable of verifying a CRC-checked, framed pattern, and which can provide some form of acknowledgement-based observation mechanism.

B.2.4 Receiver Configuration – Termination

1058 Note that for the dedicated RX pattern checking test mode (and also potentially loopback modes as well), some level of configuration of the receiver must occur. This includes the MODE and GEAR operation of the receiver, as well as the termination mode (terminated or unterminated).

1059 Configuration of the termination mode is another important mechanism. The receiver HS termination is either disabled during normal operation, or enabled such that it is only active during the reception of an HS burst. However, another mode is needed for test purposes, in which the termination can be manually forced into an enabled state.

1060 This mode is necessary in order to perform S-parameter measurements of the receiver termination. Because the measurement cannot be made during reception of an HS burst, the receiver must be placed into a mode where the termination is permanently enabled for the duration of the measurement.

1061 Applications should provide a mechanism that allows manual enabling and disabling of the receiver HS termination.

B.3 Interoperability Testing

1062 Note that the mentioned transmitter and receiver test mechanisms all have been discussed in the context of conformance testing. However, it is important to note that the same mechanisms, e.g., dedicated pattern generation and checking modes, loopback, etc., can also be used to perform physical layer interoperability verification as well.

1063 This is performed in the same manner as conformance testing, however instead of using a lab signal generator to generate the test signals, another M-PHY device is used, which is placed into pattern generation mode. This allows vendor-to-vendor physical layer interoperability testing to be performed using the same methodologies that are used for conformance testing. (Note that this only verifies interoperability of the physical layer, however isolation and verification of just the physical layer functionality is an important component of any interoperability test strategy.)

Annex C SI Dithering (informative)

1064 When constructing systems using the high speed interface to connect a baseband IC (BBIC) with a radio frequency IC (RFIC) noise coupling between the high speed interface and sensitive LNA inputs of the RFIC is a concern. Interface bit rates are at frequencies that may cause EMI near some of the air interface frequencies. The least destructive EMI would occur if the interface data appeared as a random UI rate bit stream with no repeating sub-UI rate patterns. However, the encoding of the interface data into 8b10b symbols causes repetitive 10 UI patterns in an HS-BURST. Analysis has shown that these repeating SI rate patterns can cause spectral peaking in the EMI that exacerbates the noise coupling problem.

1065 SI rate symbol timing can not be changed during a BURST. Symbol boundaries are established at the start of each BURST and must remain on the same 10 UI boundary for the remainder of the BURST. However, 10 UI symbol boundaries may be changed from HS-BURST to HS-BURST. Analysis shows that dithering of the SI starting locations, BURST to BURST, by some fraction of an SI, spreads SI rate EMI enough to offer some EMI benefit.

C.1 Dither Method

1066 Delaying the start of each HS-BURST with reference to the last BURST, some random number of UI, accomplishes the desired dithering. This happens naturally in many implementations, but forced dithering ensures a good distribution of starting locations in any system.

1067 Within the physical interface there is a UI rate divide by ten counter to produce the SI rate symbol boundaries. If this counter is left running during STALL states, then all HS-BURSTs have the same SI boundaries. That is, the SI clock will be coherent from BURST to BURST, producing maximum EMI. In order to accomplish dithering, this counter should be stopped and restarted from BURST to BURST. Stopping the counter during STALL may be a good practice for power efficiency as well. However, even when the counter is restarted for each HS-BURST, it is possible that the “frames to send”, or “start” signal to the physical interface is generated in a way that produces a poor distribution of symbol boundaries from BURST to BURST, the worst case being the same symbol boundary every BURST. To guarantee a good distribution of BURST to BURST SI starting locations, the “start” signal may be delayed a random number of UI intervals before starting the divide by ten counter to establish the new symbol boundary.

1068 In order to adequately randomize the dither delay value, some type of pseudorandom value is needed from BURST to BURST. For example, an 8-bit PRBS might be used to provide the random dither locations. This can be done by ensuring that the PRBS is clocked at least once per HS-BURST. The recommended method is to clock it once at the EOT symbol of each BURST.

1069 ***Figure 77*** is an example of a circuit that accomplishes this BURST to BURST starting location dither.

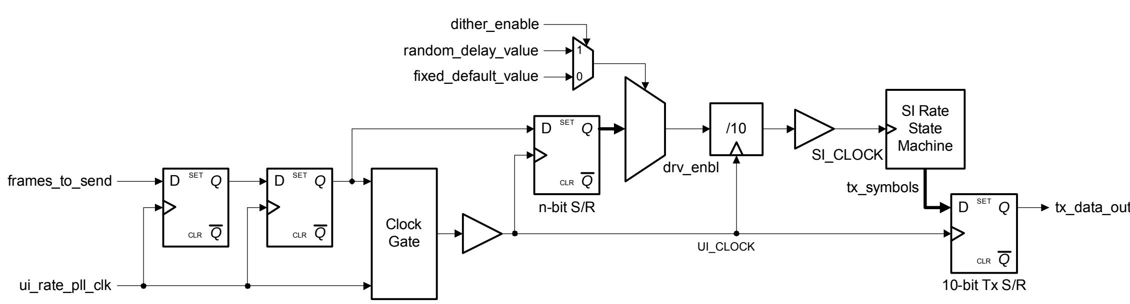


Figure 77 Dithering Circuit Example

C.1.1 Dither Magnitude

1070 Since the SI rate patterns repeat every 10 UI, the maximum useful dithering spreads starting locations over a 10 UI range. The minimum dither possible is two locations. Spreading the starting locations over just two locations showed significant benefit in simulations. ***Table 65*** shows all of the possible useful dithering ranges. Because of the reduced complexity required to produce a flat dithering distribution when using a power-of-2 (2^x) number of starting locations, dithering control is limited to four settings; one location (no dithering), two, four and eight locations. In this case, one, two or three bits of the eight bit PRBS generator can be used directly, with no division of the random number by the dither amount necessary.

Table 65 Dithering Ranges

Number of Random Start Positions	Starting UI Delay Range	Range from Default Delay	Divide Required?
1 (no dither)	4 (default)	[0]	No
2	4-5	[0] [+1]	No
3	3-4-5	[-1] [0] [+1]	Yes
4	3-4-5-6	[-1] [0] [+1] [+2]	No
5	2-3-4-5-6	[-2] [-1] [0] [+1] [+2]	Yes
6	2-3-4-5-6-7	[-2] [-1] [0] [+1] [+2] [+3]	Yes
7	1-2-3-4-5-6-7	[-3] [-2] [-1] [0] [+1] [+2] [+3]	Yes
8	1-2-3-4-5-6-7-8	[-3] [-2] [-1] [0] [+1] [+2] [+3] [+4]	No
9	0-1-2-3-4-5-6-7-8	[-4] [-3] [-2] [-1] [0] [+1] [+2] [+3] [+4]	Yes
10	0-1-2-3-4-5-6-7-8-9	[-4] [-3] [-2] [-1] [0] [+1] [+2] [+3] [+4] [+5]	Yes

1071 In case a HS-BURST is started to issue a real time critical message over the interface, then the random delay inserted between the “start” signal to the physical interface and the actual start of the BURST adds uncertainty to the delivery time of the message. In order to produce the least uncertainty for this message, a default start delay of half of the maximum dither range should be used when dither is disabled. The range of dither delays is then spread equally around this default delay to produce an uncertainty of approximately plus or minus one half of the maximum dither range.

Annex D Setting of Attributes Values (informative)

1072 The purpose of this informative annex is to provide guidelines for setting attribute values of a MODULE at one end of a LANE to their corresponding attribute values of a MODULE at the other end of the LANE in M-PHY applications. Value assignment to the attributes need to be performed in a careful manner in order to have successful operation of a LANE and thus a LINK. Though every effort has been made to keep attribute names identical for M-TX and M-RX thus providing guidance to which attribute pairs need to be matched, for some attributes it might be difficult to deduce values to be set or control. To ensure successful operational behavior of a LANE after reconfiguration, the protocol above M-PHY needs to analyze the capabilities of M-PHY MODULEs (through capability attributes) before setting required values to configurable attributes.

1073 This annex is divided into two main sections, a set of attributes that needs to be matched between M-RXs and M-TXs of a LANE, and a set of attributes that should to be changed when M-PHY speed needs to be changed with implications for changing certain attributes.

D.1 Attribute Pair Matching for MODULEs of a LANE

1074 ***Table 66*** provides a list of attribute pairs that need to be set to the same value for successful LANE operation. If an attribute value of a pair is changed to a new value, then the value of matching attribute in the pair also needs to be changed to the same value. The TX_HIBERN8_Control and RX_Enter_HIBERN8 attributes need to be matched only when the attribute value is set to one of the corresponding values specified after "==" sign, otherwise the attribute values do not need to be matched.

Table 66 Attribute Pairs of a LANE to be Matched

M-TX Configuration Attribute	M-RX Configuration Attribute
TX_MODE	RX_MODE
TX_HSRATE_Series	RX_HSRATE_Series
TX_HSGEAR	RX_HSGEAR
TX_PWMGEAR	RX_PWMGEAR
TX_BYPASS_8B10B_Enable	RX_BYPASS_8B10B_Enable
TX_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Enable	RX_HS_Unterminated_Enable
TX_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Enable	RX_LS_Terminated_Enable
TX_HIBERN8_Control == ENTER	RX_Enter_HIBERN8 == YES

1075 ***Table 67*** lists the M-TX configuration attribute values and their recommended logical relationship with the corresponding M-RX capability attribute values.

Table 67 Relationship between M-TX Configuration and M-RX Capability Attributes

M-TX Configuration Attribute	Logical Relationship	M-RX Capability Attribute
TX_HS_SYNC_LENGTH	≥	RX_HS_Gn_SYNC_LENGTH_Capability[1]
TX_HS_PREPARE_LENGTH	≥	RX_HS_Gn_PREPARE_LENGTH_Capability[1]
TX_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH	≥	RX_LS_PREPARE_LENGTH_Capability
TX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Extension	≥	RX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Length_Capability

Table 67 Relationship between M-TX Configuration and M-RX Capability Attributes

M-TX Configuration Attribute	Logical Relationship	M-RX Capability Attribute
TX_Min_ActivateTime	≥	Min[RX_Min_ActivateTime_Capability, RX_Advanced_Min_ActivateTime_Capability]

1. n = 1, 2 or 3 and depends on the value of RX_HSGEAR.

1076 OMC Write-only attribute values should be set according to the corresponding M-TX or M-RX configuration attributes as shown in ***Table 68***. However, since OMC placement with respect to the corresponding MODULE is not mandated, there could be cases where it is beneficial to set OMC attributes independently. For example, if the distance between a MODULE and its corresponding OMC is longer on one end of a LINK than the other, one OMC might need to be unterminated while the other OMC might need to be terminated.

Table 68 Recommended Settings of OMC Write-only Attributes

OMC_Write-only Attribute	MODULE Configuration Attribute
MC_Output_Amplitude	TX_Amplitude
MC_HS_Unterminated_Enable	RX_HS_Unterminated_Enable
MC_LS_Terminated_Enable	RX_LS_Terminated_Enable
MC_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Enable	TX_HS_Unterminated_LINE_Drive_Enable
MC_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Enable	TX_LS_Terminated_LINE_Drive_Enable

D.2 Attribute Values Changed with LANE Speed Setting

D.2.1 Intra-MODE GEAR Change

1077 The following attribute pairs should be changed when a LANE needs to be switched from one HS_GEAR to another HS_GEAR (Intra-MODE change), while accommodating the restrictions in ***Table 66***:

1078 • TX_HSGEAR and RX_HSGEAR – for a different HS-GEAR in the same RATE series

1079 • TX_HSRATE_Series and RX_HSRATE_Series – for the same HS-GEAR in a different RATE series

1080 • TX_HSGEAR and RX_HSGEAR, TX_HSRATE_Series and RX_HSRATE_Series – for a different HS-GEAR in a different RATE series

1081 TX_PWMGEAR and RX_PWMGEAR attributes should be changed when a LANE needs to be switched from one LS_GEAR to another LS_GEAR, while accommodating the restrictions in ***Table 66***.

D.2.2 Inter-MODE Gear Change

1082 When LANE settings need to be changed from one MODE to another, the TX_MODE and RX_MODE attribute values should be changed, while accommodating the restrictions in ***Table 66***, along with the attribute pairs listed in ***Section D.2.1*** based on the MODE and GEAR being requested.

D.3 Interpretation of Certain Attributes

D.3.1 TX_LCC_Enable

1083 An M-TX should enter SLEEP, STALL or LINE-CFG state based on the value set in TX_LCC_Enable and requests made to change configuration settings. The M-TX should enter LINE-CFG state upon a TOB request (M-LANE_BurstEnd.request) from the Protocol Layer if the value of TX_LCC_Enable is set to “YES” and a configuration request (M-CTRL-CFGSET.request) to any attribute is made, or configuration ready request (M-CTRL-CFGREADY.request) is issued, prior to the M-TX sending the TOB sequence.

Otherwise, the M-TX should enter SLEEP or STALL state based on the current value of TX_MODE upon getting a TOB request. An M-TX may enter LINE-INIT based only on M-CTRL-CFGSET.request.

D.3.2 TX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Extension

1084 The protocol above the M-TX determines the value of the PWM BURST Closure length for the M-TX from the RX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Length_Capability value of the M-RX and requirements of the protocols above the M-RX and M-TX. The RX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Length_Capability value of the M-RX communicates to the local protocol any extra cycles needed by the PHY to flush the pipeline. In case the remote protocol requires additional clock cycles for symbol or PAYLOAD processing, the protocol may adopt any of the following methods.

1085 In the first method, the local protocol at M-TX lengthens PWM-BURST by setting TX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Extension. The value of TX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Extension should be set to greater than, or equal to, the sum of the value of RX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Length_Capability and the number of additional clock cycles required by the remote protocol. The sum of the additional clock cycles needed by the remote protocol at M-RX and the maximum limit of RX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Length_Capability set by the protocol cannot exceed 255 SI.

1086 In addition, the local protocol at M-TX should get the value of RX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Length_Capability of the remote M-RX from the remote protocol. Also, the local protocol at M-TX should get any additional clock cycles required by the remote protocol through protocol level communication.

1087 In the second method, the local protocol at M-TX inserts the needed number of FILLERs before requesting a TAIL-OF-BURST sequence, i.e. before issuing M-LANE-BurstEnd.request, at the end of the last PAYLOAD of a PWM-BURST. The local protocol at M-TX should set the value of TX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Extension to greater than, or equal to, the value of RX_PWM_BURST_Closure_Length_Capability.

D.3.3 M-TX and M-RX Polarity Control

1088 With the TX_DRIVER_POLARITY and RX_RECEIVER_POLARITY attributes, MPHY provides the ability to adapt to any potential MPHY LINE-interface pin-swap at the device level and reduces constraints for routing the high-speed LINE traces on a PCB. Pin swaps and LINE crossing on PCB traces can be compensated by programming TX_DRIVER_POLARITY and/or RX_RECEIVER_POLARITY according to the PCB trace polarity.

1089 TX_DRIVER_POLARITY and RX_RECEIVER_POLARITY are system-dependent attributes that are independent of LINE-RESET. If TX_DRIVER_POLARITY or RX_RECEIVER_POLARITY are changed to new values by the Protocol after the initial local RESET, the Protocol should change these attribute values to the new values after a subsequent local RESET is applied and de-asserted, and before M-TX or M-RX is requested to exit HIBERN8 state.

Annex E Guidance for Protocols on Managing LANE-to-LANE Skew (informative)

1090 This annex provides recommendations for skew parameters in a SUB-LINK with multiple LANEs. As shown in ***Figure 78***, a SUB-LINK subsystem consists of a LANE management controller and M-TX on the transmitting side of the SUB-LINK, interconnect, and LANE management controller and M-RX on the receiving side of the SUB-LINK. The interconnect can be either completely galvanic, or it can contain OMCs and an optical wave guide.

1091 LANE-to-LANE skew (L2L skew) must be considered in the case where there are multiple LANEs transmitting data, and where it is desired to optimally reuse hardware in the LANE management controller. Architecture decisions for the LANE management controller are based on the use of an optimized clocking mechanism, maximum skew possible between Symbol clocks of data LANEs of multiple RMMIs, shift register depth requirements, and possibly a de-skewing mechanism to be adopted along with throughput desired.

1092 M-TX and M-RX skew parameters originate due to clock generation, clock routing skews and analog block skews due to device mismatches. The total skew can be a combination of UI_{HS} lengths and fixed delays in terms of propagation time. Interconnect induced skew parameters are generally independent of GEAR, and are in terms of propagation time. Although this annex does not discuss use-cases involving implementations with a large number of LANEs within a SUB-LINK, a higher number of LANEs tends to correlate with increased skew.

1093 Parameters defined in this document pertaining to skew parameters, and the sections where the definitions can be found, are shown in ***Table 69***.

Table 69 LANE-to-LANE Skew Parameters

Parameter	Section	Description
HS-TX	***5.1.2.4***	M-TX in HS-MODE
PWM-TX	***5.1.3.3***	M-TX in PWM-MODE
SYS-TX	***5.1.4.2***	M-TX in SYS-MODE
HS-RX	***5.2.2.1***	M-RX in HS-MODE
PWM-RX	***5.2.3.4***	M-RX in PWM-MODE
SYS-RX	***5.2.4.1***	M-RX in SYS-MODE

1094 A graphical representation of the point of measurement for each parameter is shown in ***Figure 78***. A skew parameter is the aggregate skew possible at the indicated interface in the figure.

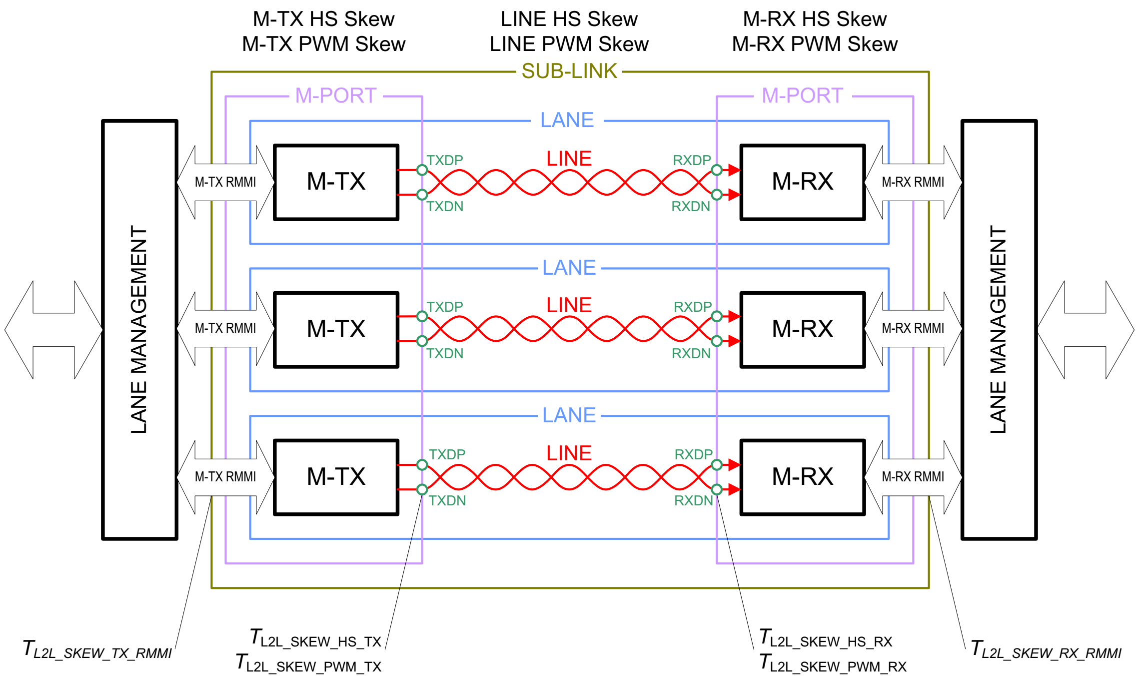


Figure 78 Measurement Points

1095 HS-MODE skew equations:

$$\text{M-TX HSSkew} = T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_TX}} - T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_TX\_RMMI}} \quad \text{(Equation 42)}$$

$$\text{Interconnect HS Skew} = T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_RX}} - T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_TX}} \quad \text{(Equation 43)}$$

$$\text{M-RX HSSkew} = T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_RX\_RMMI}} - T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_RX}} \quad \text{(Equation 44)}$$

1096 PWM-MODE Skew equations:

$$\text{M-TX PWM Skew} = T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_TX}} - T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_TX\_RMMI}} \quad \text{(Equation 45)}$$

$$\text{Interconnect PWM Skew} = T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_RX}} - T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_TX}} \quad \text{(Equation 46)}$$

$$\text{M-RX PWM Skew} = T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_RX\_RMMI}} - T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_RX}} \quad \text{(Equation 47)}$$

1097 Two new parameters are defined in this annex for discussing the LANE-to-LANE skew. The first parameter, $T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_TX\_RMMI}}$, is the LANE-to-LANE skew on the transmitting side of the SUB-LINK, and is defined as the time difference between the TX_SymbolClk at the M-TX RMMIs in a SUB-LINK. For the purposes of this annex, an M-TX RMMI is assumed to be a synchronous interface to the M-TX, and as such is considered the T0 reference plane. Any symbol skew accumulated before $T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_TX\_RMMI}}$ is not considered.

1098 $T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_RX\_RMMI}}$ is defined as the time difference between two RX_SymbolClk that qualify reference data points, e.g., MARKER0, on M-RX-DATA SAP of the M-RX RMMIs in a SUB-LINK. $T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_RX\_RMMI}}$ is a design parameter. The LANE management controller needs to respect $T_{\text{L2L\_SKEW\_RX\_RMMI}}$ for implementation of adequate LANE recomposition.

1099 ***Note:***

1100 *This document does not mandate a clock source synchronous system. In plesiochronous systems, the RX_SymbolClk at the M-RX RMMI cannot be assumed to show a constant phase relationship between any two LANEs of the same SUB-LINK.*

1101 LANE management controllers at M-RX RMMI and M-TX RMMI have the option to exercise the de-skew mechanism of multiple LANEs in a given SUB-LINK by using training sequences and offsetting the phase of the reference clock either at M-RX or at M-TX.

1102 ***Table 70*** shows the L2L skew parameter values for a galvanic-only interconnect, i.e., no OMCs in the LINE, in a tightly coupled use-case where latency requirements are stringent.

Table 70 L2L Skew Parameters for Tightly Coupled Use-case

Parameter	Value	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_TX}$	2 UI_{HS}	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_TX}$	2 * T_{PWM_TX}	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_RX}$	2 UI_{HS} + 33 ps	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_RX}$	2 * T_{PWM_TX} + 33 ps	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_RX\_RMMI}$	HS-MODE	5 UI_{HS}
	PWM-MODE	5 * T_{PWM_RX}

1103 In order to ensure interoperability between an M-PORT and a LANE management controller, the LANE management controller should be able to de-skew by at least ±1 SI at the M-RX RMMI.

1104 In this first example, a short interconnect (≤ 10 cm) using galvanic LINEs on a FR4-class PCB, travel time is about $6\ \mathrm{ps/mm}$. From ***Table 70***, the skew interconnect margin is 33 ps, which provides about 5 mm of physical length mismatch ($33\ \mathrm{ps} \div 6\ \mathrm{ps/mm} \approx 5\ \mathrm{mm}$) over 10 cm, or about 5%, for a worst case interconnect. Interconnect skew parameters are GEAR independent. Note, the UI_{HS} values shown in ***Table 70*** apply for all modes of communication.

1105 ***Table 71*** shows the L2L skew parameter values for another galvanic-only interconnect in a nominally coupled use-case where latency requirements are less stringent than in the previous example.

Table 71 L2L Skew Parameters for Nominally Coupled Use-case

Parameter	Value	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_TX}$	10 UI_{HS}	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_G4\_TX}$	20 UI_{HS}	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_TX}$	10 T_{PWM_TX}	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_RX}$	30 UI_{HS}	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_HS\_G4\_RX}$	60 UI_{HS}	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_PWM\_RX}$	30 T_{PWM_TX}	
$T_{L2L\_SKEW\_RX\_RMMI}$	HS-MODE	40 UI_{HS} @ HS-G1, HS-G2, HS-G3
		80 UI_{HS} @ HS-G4
	PWM-MODE	40 T_{PWM_RX}

1106 In the second example, a long interconnect can use galvanic LINEs on a FR4-class PCB for LINEs not exceeding 30 cm, and even longer LINEs using OMCs and an optical wave guide.

1107 Using the same travel time approximation as in the previous example, a 30 cm interconnect with a 50 mm physical length mismatch has a corresponding interconnect skew of $50\ \text{mm} \times 6\ \text{ps/mm} = 300\ \text{ps}$.

1108 In the case where LANEs contain OMCs, the OMC contribution to LANE-to-LANE skew must also be considered. LANE-to-LANE skew analysis for an OMC includes all elements of the LINE between the M-TX PINs and M-RX PINs, including the O-TX, optical waveguide, O-RX, and galvanic interconnect to each end of the OMC. Therefore, in multi-LANE SUB-LINKs where OMCs are used, the OMC LANE-to-LANE skew should be used as the interconnect skew value.

1109 OMC LANE-to-LANE skew is due to propagation delay mismatches that are largely independent of HS-GEAR. Therefore, LANE-to-LANE skew (in UI_{HS}) increases for higher HS-GEARs. The scaling factor provided in ***Table 72*** is used to determine the OMC LANE-to-LANE skew based on the highest HS-GEAR supported.

1110 The first example, O1, assumes OMCs (electronics and optical waveguide) are independent components, i.e., multiple O-TX and O-RX circuits within a SUB-LINK are on separate silicon, and the optical waveguides for each LANE are independent, so part-to-part mismatch is considered. For this use-case, OMCs could come from different manufacturing lots, so process variation is considered; temperature and power supply voltage are assumed to be similar between OMCs.

1111 This use-case assumes that OMCs have the maximum allowable propagation delay ($T_{\text{OMC-PropDelay}}$) of 50 ns, which is equivalent to a waveguide length of about 10 m (speed of light in fiber is approximately $2 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}$).

1112 In the second example, O2, OMCs (electronics and optical waveguide) are also independent components, i.e., multiple O-TX and O-RX circuits within a SUB-LINK are on separate silicon, with shorter optical waveguide length (< 1 m), and therefore, reduced length mismatch.

1113 In the final example, O3, OMCs (electronics and optical waveguide) are “matched” modules, i.e., multiple O-TXs and O-RXs are integrated onto the same silicon, from the same manufacturing lot, or steps have been taken to limit the maximum LANE-to-LANE skew. The matching of the optical waveguide length is also optimized for this case.

1114 Note:

1115 *Each of these use-cases assumes OMCs within a SUB-LINK come from the same manufacturer.*

1116 The LANE-to-LANE skew parameters for the three OMC use-cases are of the order shown in ***Table 72***.

Table 72 L2L Skew Parameters Optical Media Use-cases

Example Use-case	**$SKEW_{L2L\_OMC}$[1]**		
	HS-G1 ($SKEW_{OMC-G1}$)	**HS-G2**	**HS-G3**
O1 (Easily Achievable)	2.21 UI_{HS}	4.42 UI_{HS}	8.84 UI_{HS}
O2 (“Typical”)	1.48 UI_{HS}	2.96 UI_{HS}	5.92 UI_{HS}
O3 (“Optimized”)	0.68 UI_{HS}	1.36 UI_{HS}	2.72 UI_{HS}

1. *Skew values are scaled per HS-GEAR using $SKEW_{L2L\_OMC} = SKEW_{OMC-G1} * 2^{(HS\text{-}GEAR - 1)}$*

1117 In the case of PWM-MODE, Example Case O1 results in OMC skew of $2 \times T_{PWM\_RX}$ for PWM-G6 and PWM-G7, while an OMC skew value of T_{PWM_RX} can be used for GEARs PWM-G5 and below. An OMC skew of T_{PWM_RX} can be used for all PWM GEARs in example use-cases O2 and O3.

1118 Regardless of which OMC example case is considered, the implementer should confirm $SKEW_{L2L\_OMC}$ values with the OMC vendor in order to verify that the required LANE-to-LANE skew is supported.

Annex F Guidance for Protocols on Managing ADAPT Sub-State and RX Equalization (informative)

1119 The purpose of the ADAPT sequence is to train an M-RX equalizer to adapt its filter characteristics to the channel. The properties of a channel depend predominantly on the material characteristics of the printed circuit board, the package and bonding material, the line length, and potential connectors involved. In addition to these mostly time-invariant properties, the channel characteristics may be influenced by temperature and voltage variations.

F.1 When to Use ADAPT

1120 The specification does not mandate the use of ADAPT sequences. A protocol running on top of M-PHY should implement provisions to initiate the ADAPT sub-state, but should not enforce the use of ADAPT.

1121 In general, a long length Initial ADAPT sequence is intended only for the first M-RX calibration after power up, to train the M-RX equalizer onto the channel and M-TX characteristics. The Initial ADAPT sequence can also be used by the protocol when handling fatal Link error recovery.

1122 A Refresh ADAPT sequence is much shorter than an Initial ADAPT sequence. Refresh ADAPT is intended to compensate for temperature and voltage drifts in the channel by incrementally adjusting the equalizer settings. However, a protocol may not always need to do this, particularly under the following conditions:

1123 • The M-RX implementation can guarantee signal reception under worst-case channel conditions, specifically when an application uses a low-loss channel.

1124 • Temperature and voltage drifts are compensated sufficiently by the implementation.

1125 An embedded application may not require an Initial ADAPT training sequence. For example, if the optimal equalizer settings are determined during laboratory bring-up and restored using vendor-specific sideband programming any time the Link enters operation in HS-G4.

1126 At the expense of additional power consumption, an M-RX may not need Refresh ADAPT training. It may continuously or periodically re-adapt its equalizer using information from toggling activities during an HS-BURST.

1127 There is no requirement to initiate ADAPT after HIBERN8 exit, as the equalizer settings are retained during HIBERN8. However, a Refresh ADAPT can be required after a lengthy HIBERN8 due to temperature and voltage drift.

1128 A protocol should initiate ADAPT after a change, which affects the signal waveform, e.g., the M-TX equalizer settings, the M-TX amplitude setting, or a HS RATE series change.

F.2 Detecting the Need for ADAPT

1129 The M-PHY ADAPT sequence is an open-loop training. This specification does not define a means for an M-TX to detect if the M-RX equalizer training is successful. It is assumed that an M-RX receives data with the defined *BER* at the end of an ADAPT sequence. However, the protocol needs to ensure that channel degradations are monitored at the M-RX and that this information may be used by the peer M-TX to trigger an ADAPT sequence.

F.3 ADAPT Sequences in Lower HS-GEARS

1130 This specification defines ADAPT for use in the HS-G4 RATE series A and B only.

F.4: See Errata 01, Item 1

Participants

The list below includes those persons who participated in the Working Group that developed this Specification and who consented to appear on this list.

Radha Atukula, NVIDIA

Seok-Keun Choi, Keysight Technologies Inc.

Ralf Gaisbauer, Toshiba Corporation

Abdelaziz Goulahsen, STMicroelectronics

Ramesh Hanchinal, Synopsys, Inc.

Henrik Icking, Intel Corporation

Ofir Michaeli, Cadence Design Systems, Inc.

Raj Kumar Nagpal, Synopsys, Inc.

Victor Sanchez-Rico, BitifEye Digital Test Solutions GmbH

Bill Simms, NVIDIA

Jurgen Urban, Toshiba Corporation

The list below includes those persons who participated in the Working Group that developed this Specification up to version 4.0 and who consented to appear on this list.

Ahmed Aboulella, Mixel, Inc.

Bhupendra Ahuja, NVIDIA

Radha Atukula, NVIDIA

Andrew Baldman, UNH-IOL

Johannes Baston, Renesas Electronics Corporation

Paul E Berg, MCCI Corporation

Cedric Bertholom, STMicroelectronics

Gerrit den Besten, NXP Semiconductors

George Brocklehurst, Mindspeed Technologies, Inc.

Thierry Campiche, LeCroy Corporation

Mara Carvalho, Synopsys, Inc.

Ninous Davoudi, Mixel, Inc.

Kirill Dimitrov, SanDisk Corporation

Dan Draper, Mindspeed Technologies, Inc.

Ken Drottar, Intel Corporation

Mahmoud El-Banna, Mixel, Inc.

Michael Fleischer-Reumann, Keysight Technologies, Inc.

Ralf Gaisbauer, Toshiba Corporation

Joaquim Gomes, Synopsys, Inc.

Will Harris, Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.

Ols Hidri, Silicon Line GmbH

Michael Herz, Research in Motion Ltd

Henrik Icking, Intel Corporation

James Jaussi, Intel Corporation

Robert C Johnson, IEEE-ISTO (staff)

Anant Shankar Kamath, Texas Instruments Incorporated

Marcin Kowalewski, Synopsys, Inc.

Luke Lai, NVIDIA

Michal Lewandowski, Synopsys, Inc.

Jiri Macku, Silicon Line GmbH

Thomas Marik, BitifEye Digital Test Solutions, GmbH

Patrick Mone, Texas Instruments Incorporated

Marcus Muller, Nokia Corporation

Raj Kumar Nagpal, Synopsys, Inc.

Long Nguyen, Mixel, Inc.

Berndt Pilgram, Intel Corporation

Vipul Raithatha, Texas Instruments Incorporated

Parthasarathy Raju, Tektronix, Inc.

Juha Rakkola, Nokia Corporation

P.E. Ramesh, Tektronix, Inc.

James Rippie, IEEE-ISTO (staff)

Jose Sarmento, Synopsys, Inc.

Roland Scherzinger, Keysight Technologies, Inc.

Marcus Schorpp, Nokia Corporation

Sridhar Shashidharan, Arasan Chip Systems, Inc.

Sergio Silva, Synopsys, Inc.

Bill Simms, NVIDIA

Vikas Sinha, Texas Instruments Incorporated

Bob Trocke, Motorola Mobility, Inc.

Jurgen Urban, Toshiba Corporation

Aravind Vijayakumar, Cadence Design Systems, Inc.

Martti Voutilainen, Nokia Corporation

Manuel Weber, Toshiba Corporation

Heiner Wiese, Toshiba Corporation

Victor Wilkerson, Skyworks Solutions, Inc.

Richard Williams, Texas Instruments Incorporated